PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification [6] :
C07D 487/04, A61K 31/55 // (C07D 487/04, 243:00, 209:00) (C07D 487/04, 243:00, 231:00)

A1

(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/49707

(43) International Publication Date: 31 December 1997 (31.12.97)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/10736

(22) International Filing Date: 20 June 1997 (20.06.97)

(30) Priority Data:
08/672,150 27 June 1996 (27.06.96) US

(71) Applicant: AMERICAN CYANAMID COMPANY [US/US]; Five Giralda Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US).

(72) Inventors: ALBRIGHT, Jay, Donald; 5 Clifford Court, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US). VENKATESAN, Aranapakam, Mudumbai; Apartment 9K, 97-07 63rd Road, Rego Park, NY 11374 (US). DUSZA, John, Paul; 24 Convent Road, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US). SUM, Fuk-Wah; 16 Chamberlain Court, Pomona, NY 10970 (US).

(74) Agents: ALICE, Ronald, W.; American Home Products Corporation, Five Giralda Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US) et al.

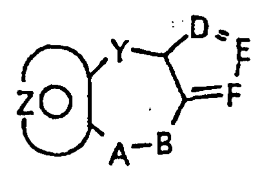
(81) Designated States: AL, AU, BA, BB, BG, BR, CA, CN, CU, CZ, EE, GE, GH, HU, IL, IS, JP, KP, KR, LC, LK, LR, LT, LV, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SG, SI, SK, SL, TR, TT, UA, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published
With international search report.
Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.

(54) Title: TRICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS

(57) Abstract

Tricyclic compound of general Formula (I), as defined herein which exhibit antagonist activity at V_1 and/or V_2 receptors and exhibit *in vivo* vasopressin antagonist activity, methods for using such compounds in treating diseases characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water, and process for preparing such compounds.



(I)

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

Title: TRICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS

This case is a continuation-in-part of Serial No. 08/373,132, filed January 17, 1995.

1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to new tricyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists which are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

2. Background of the Invention

Vasopressin is released from the posterior pituitary either in response to increased plasma osmolarity detected by brain osmoreceptors or decreased blood volume and blood pressure sensed by low-pressure volume receptors and arterial baroreceptors. The hormone exerts its action through two well defined receptor subtypes: vascular V_1 and renal epithelial V_2 receptors. Vasopressin-induced antidiuresis, mediated by renal epithelial V_2 receptors, helps to maintain normal plasma osmolarity, blood volume and blood pressure.

Vasopressin is involved in some cases of congestive heart failure where peripheral resistance is

increased. V_1 antagonists may decrease systemic vascular resistance, increase cardiac output and prevent vasopressin induced coronary vasoconstriction. Thus, in conditions with vasopressin induce increases in total peripheral resistance and altered local blood flow, V_1-antagonists may be therapeutic agents. V_1 antagonists may decrease blood pressure, induced hypotensive effects and thus be therapeutically useful in treatment of some types of hypertension.

The blockage of V_2 receptors is useful in treating diseases characterized by excess renal reabsorption of free water. Antidiuresis is regulated by the hypothalamic release of vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone) which binds to specific receptors on renal collecting tubule cells. This binding stimulates adenylyl cyclase and promotes the cAMP-mediated incorporation of water pores into the luminal surface of these cells. V_2 antagonists may correct the fluid retention in congestive heart failure, liver cirrhosis, nephritic syndrome, central nervous system injuries, lung disease and hyponatremia.

Elevated vasopressin levels occur in congestive heart failure which is more common in older patients with chronic heart failure. In patients with hyponatremic congestive heart failure and elevated vasopressin levels, a V_2 antagonist may be beneficial in promoting free water excretion by antagonizing the action of antidiuretic hormone, On the basis of biochemical and pharmacological effects of the hormone, antagonists of vasopressin are expected to be therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral

hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

The following prior art references describe peptide vasopressin antagonists: M. Manning et al., J. Med. Chem., 35, 382(1992); M. Manning et al., J. Med. Chem., 35, 3895(1992); H. Gavras and B. Lammek, U.S. Patent 5,070,187 (1991); M. Manning and W.H. Sawyer, U.S. Patent 5,055,448(1991) F.E. Ali, U.S. Patent 4,766,108(1988); R.R. Ruffolo et al., Drug News and Perspective, 4(4), 217, (May)(1991). P.D. Williams et al., have reported on potent hexapeptide oxytocin antagonists [J. Med. Chem., 35, 3905(1992)] which also exhibit weak vasopressin antagonist activity in binding to V_1 and V_2 receptors. Peptide vasopressin antagonists suffer from a lack of oral activity and many of these peptides are not selective antagonists since they also exhibit partial agonist activity.

Non-peptide vasopressin antagonists have recently been disclosed, Y. Yamamura et al., Science, 252, 579(1991); Y. Yamamura et al., Br. J. Pharmacol, 105, 787(1992); Ogawa et al., (Otsuka Pharm Co., LTD.) EP 0514667-A1; EPO 382185-A2; WO9105549 and U.S.5,258,510; WO 9404525 Yamanouchi Pharm.Co.,Ltd., WO 9420473; WO 9412476; WO 9414796; Fujisawa Co. Ltd., EP 620216-A1 Ogawa et al, (Otsuka Pharm. Co.) EP 470514A disclose carbostyril derivatives and pharmaceutical compositions containing the same. Non-peptide oxytocin and vasopressin antagonist have been disclosed by Merck and Co.; M.G. Bock and P.D. Williams, EP 0533242A; M.G. Bock et al., EP 0533244A; J.M. Erb, D.F. Verber, P.D. Williams, EP 0533240A; K. Gilbert et al., EP 0533243A.

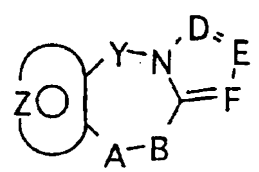
Premature birth can cause infant health problems and mortality and a key mediator in the mechanism of labor is the peptide hormone oxytocin. On the basis of the pharmacological action of oxytocin, antagonists of this hormone are useful in the prevention

of preterm labor, B.E. Evans et al., J. Med. Chem. 35, 3919(1992), J. Med. Chem., 36, 3993(1993) and references therein. The compounds of this invention are antagonists of the peptide hormone oxytocin and are useful in the control of premature birth.

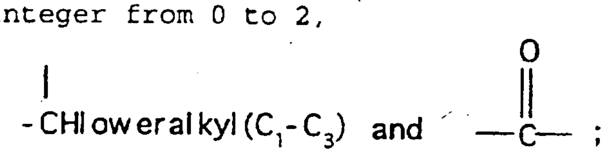
The present invention relates to novel tricyclic derivatives which exhibit antagonist activity at V_1 and/or V_2 receptors and exhibit *in vivo* vasopressin antagonist activity. The compounds also exhibit antagonist activity at oxytocin receptors.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

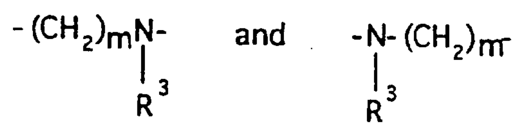
This invention relates to new compounds selected from those of the general formula I:



wherein Y is a moiety selected from; $-(CH_2)_n-$ wherein n is an integer from 0 to 2,



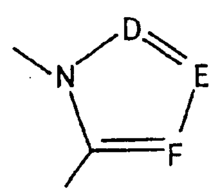
A-B is a moiety selected from



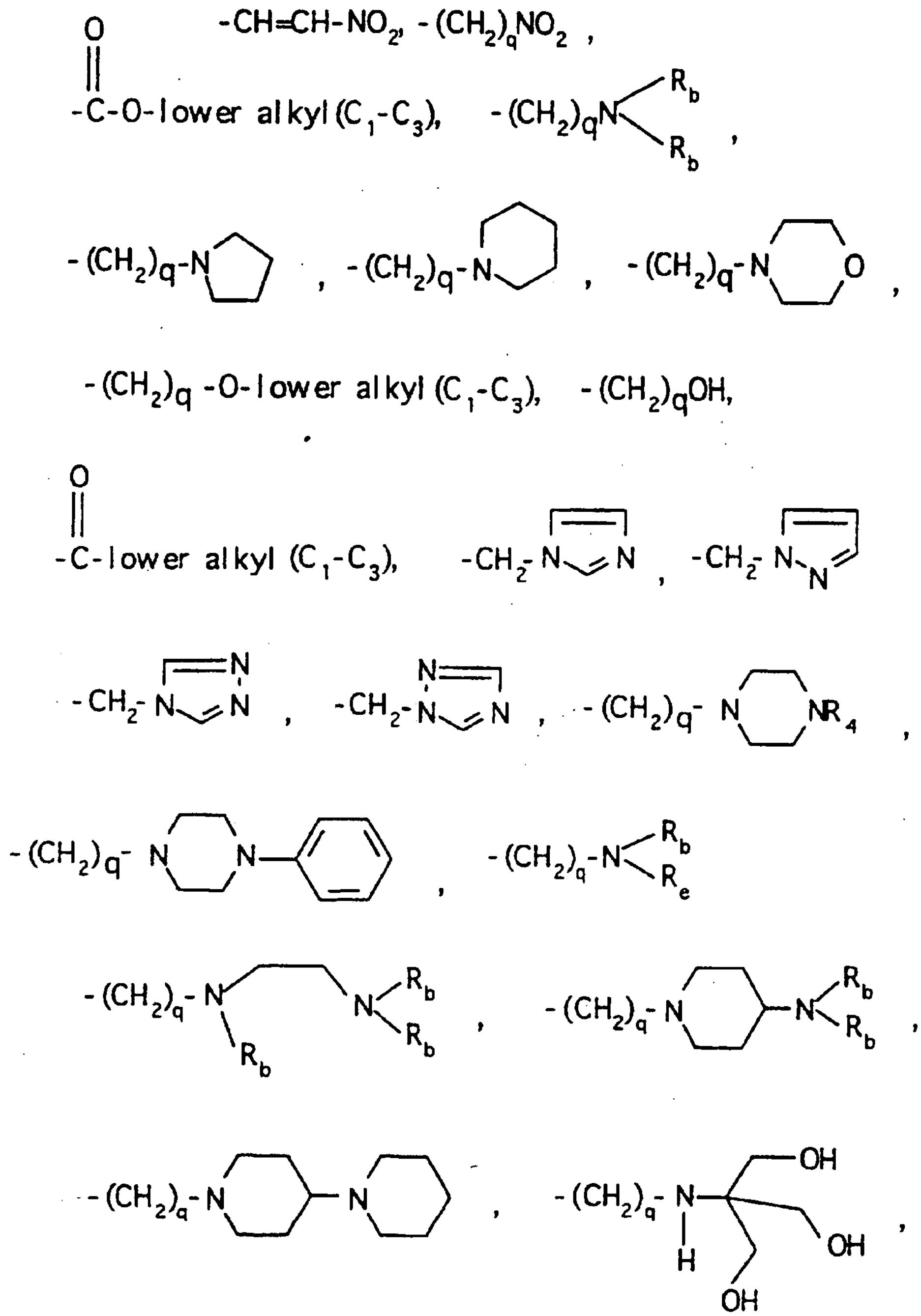
wherein m is an integer from 1 to 2 provided that when Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is 2, m may also be zero and when n is zero, m may also be three, provided also that when Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is 2, m may not be two;
and the moiety:

represents: (1) phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom; (4) a 5 or 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen atoms; (5) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen or (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy;

the moiety:

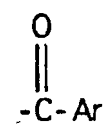


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are selected from carbon and nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

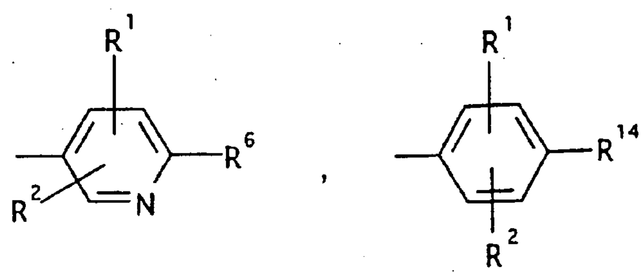


-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower

alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$; q is one or two; R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;
R^{50} is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



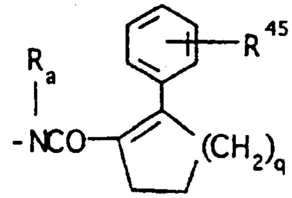
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of



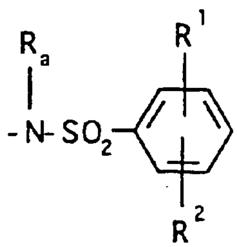
wherein R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -CO lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

$-N(R_a)COAr'$, $-N(R_a)COCH_2Ar'$, $-N(R_a)CON(R_b)Ar'$,

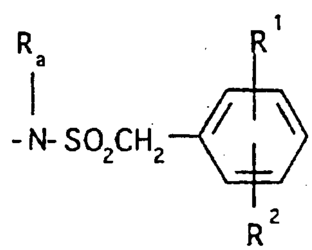
$-N(R_a)CO-(CH_2)_n$-cycloalkyl ,



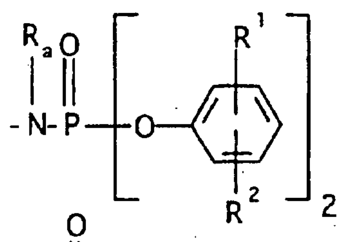
,



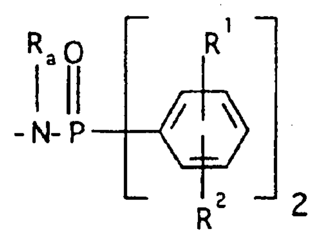
,



,



,



,

$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

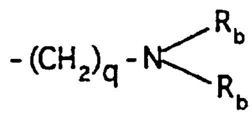
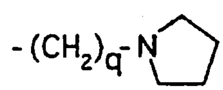
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

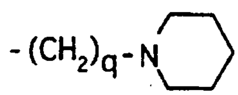
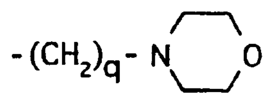
$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NHSO_2-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

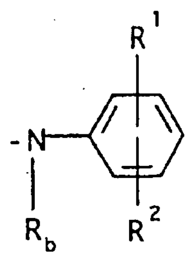
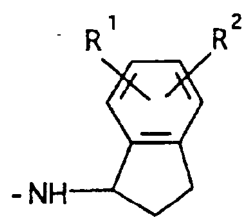
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3-C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

 ,  ,

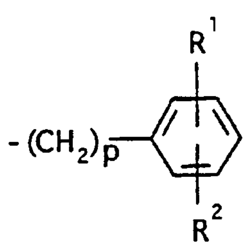
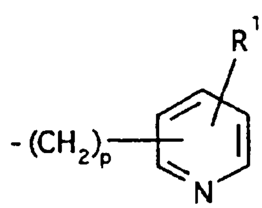
 ,  ,

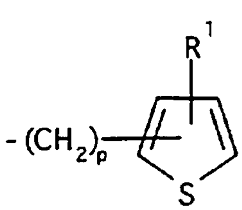
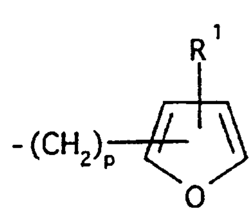
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

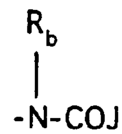
$-X-R^7$,  , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

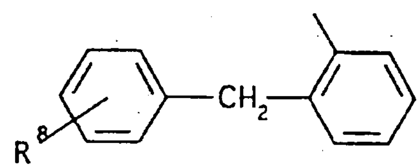
 ,  ,

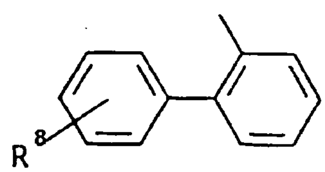
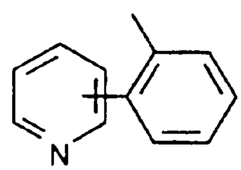
 , 

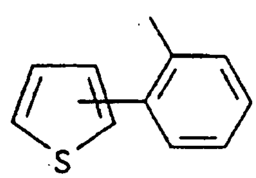
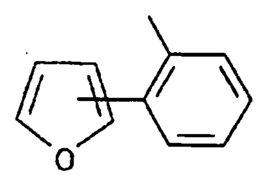
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



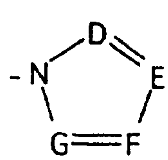
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:


,


,

,

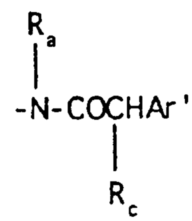

,


or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



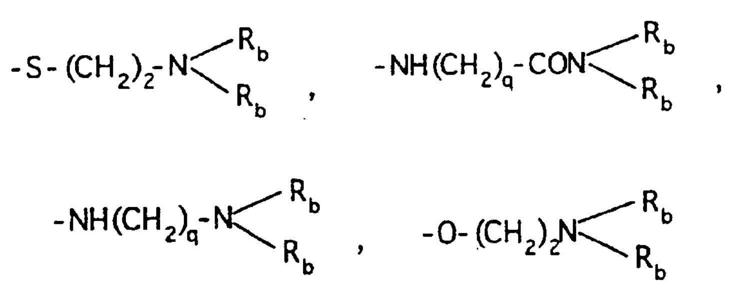
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

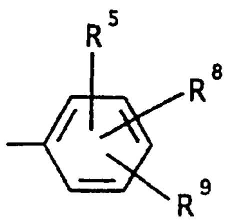
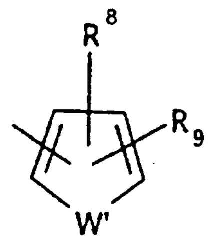
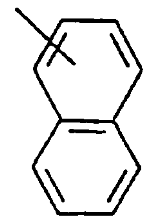


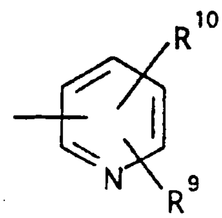
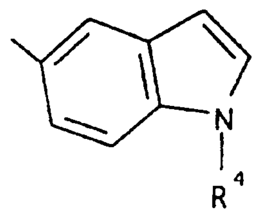
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

$-O-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)$, -S-lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)$,



wherein R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined and Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

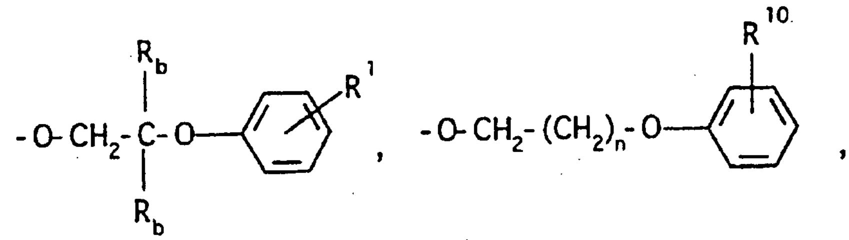
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]2, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

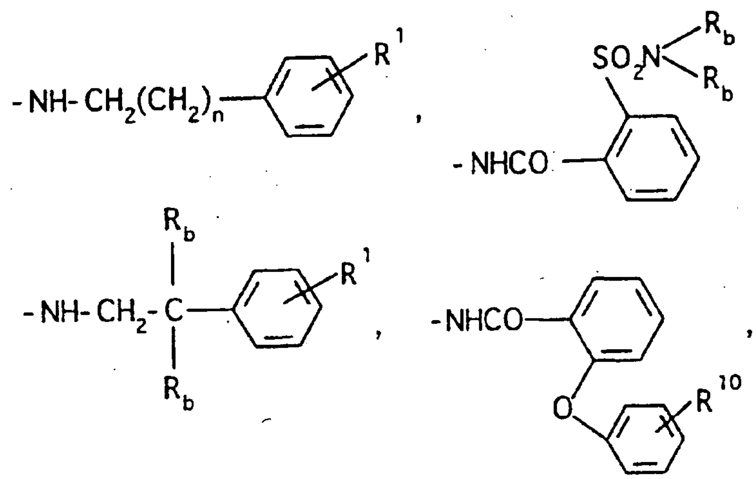
$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

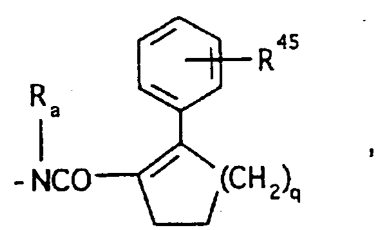
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); R^{14} is

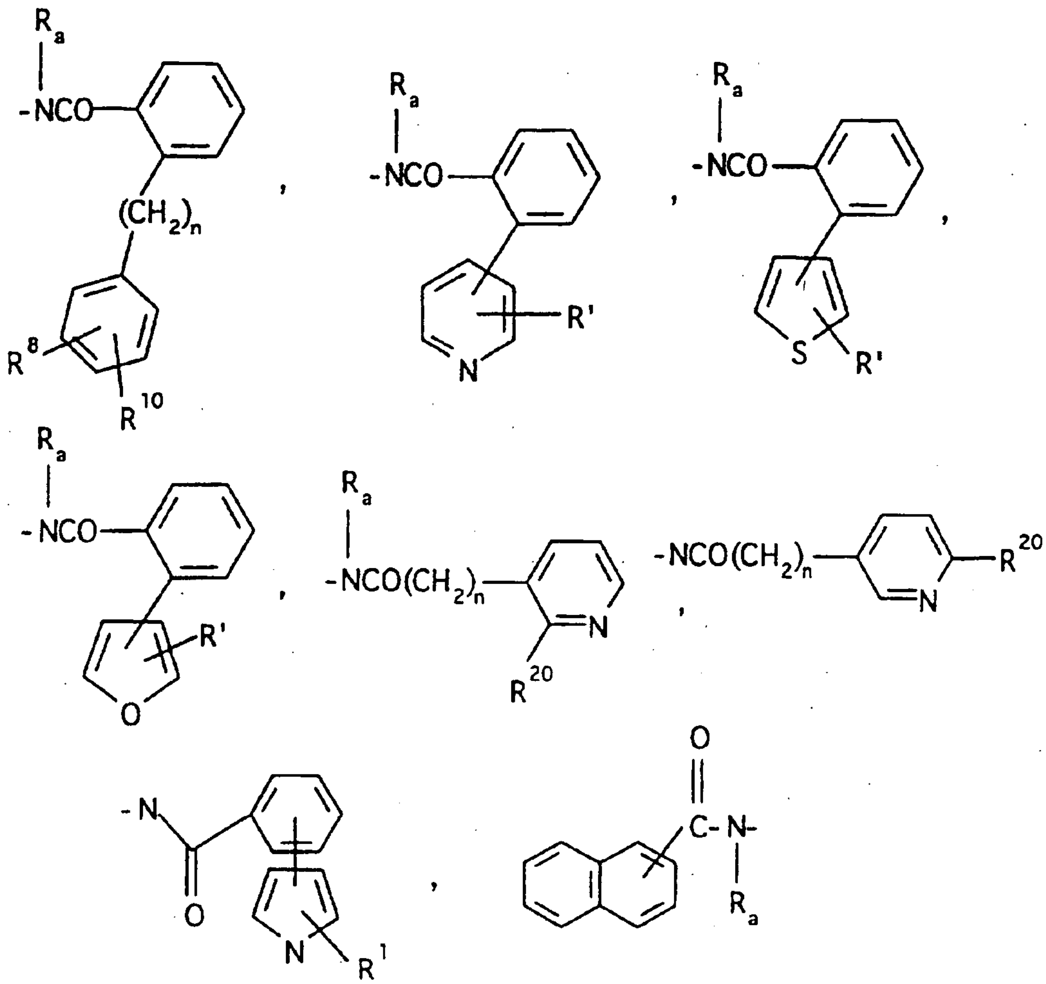
- O- lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched ,



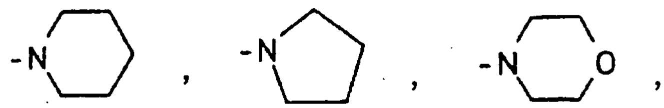
- NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched ,

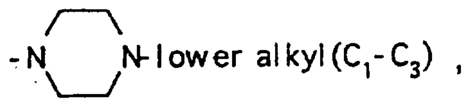






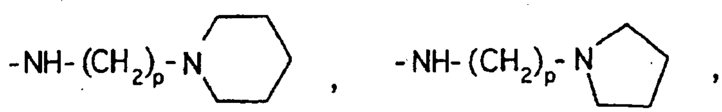
wherein n is 0 or 1; q is 1 or 2; R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)-lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$.

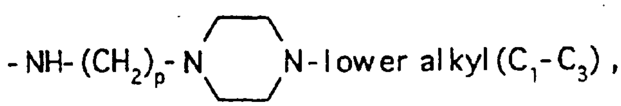


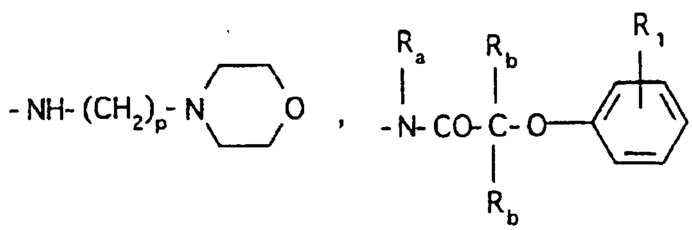


$-NH-(CH_2)_p-NH$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$







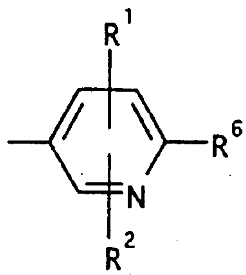
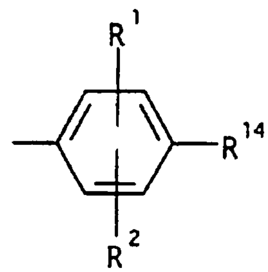
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Within the group of the compounds defined by Formula I, certain subgroups of compounds are broadly preferred. Broadly preferred are those compounds wherein R3 is the moiety:

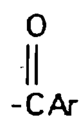
$$-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}Ar$$

and Ar is selected from the moieties:

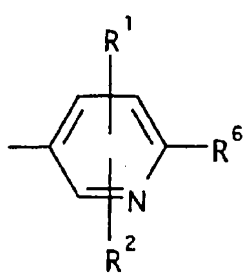
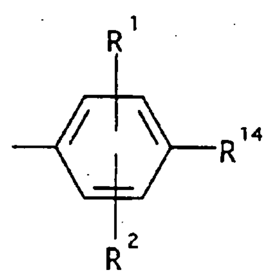
 , 

Y is $(CH_2)_n$ and n is one or zero;
wherein R^1, R^2, R^4, R^5, R^6 and R^{14} are as hereinbefore defined.

Especially preferred are compunds wherein R^3 is the moiety:

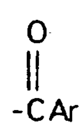
 and

Ar is selected from the moieties:

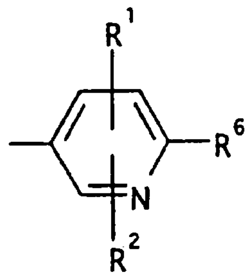
 , 

Y is $-(CH_2)_n$ and n is one and m is one;
wherein R^1, R^2, R^4, R^6 and R^{14} are as hereinbefore defined.

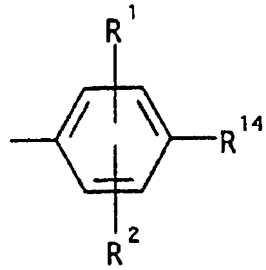
Especially preferred are compounds wherein R^3 is the moiety:

 and

Ar is selected from the moieties:

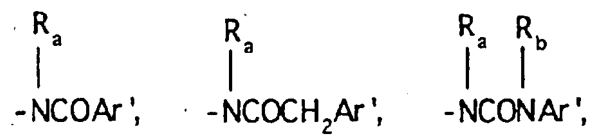


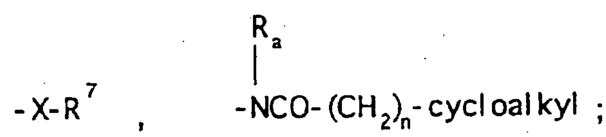
,



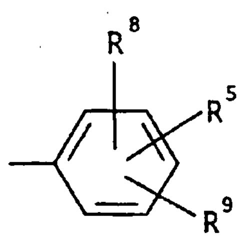
Y is $-(CH_2)_n$ and n is one or zero;

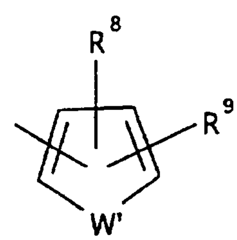
R^6 is





wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3-C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and wherein X, R_a, R_b and R^{14} are as hereinbefore defined; and Ar' is selected from the moieties:



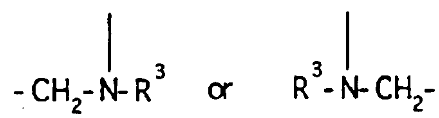


wherein R^8, R^9 and W' are as hereinbefore defined.

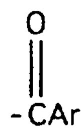
Also especially preferred are compounds wherein Y in Formula I is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is zero or one; A-B is

and R^1, R^2, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8, R^9, R^{10} and R^{14} are as hereinbefore defined; and m is an integer from 1-2.

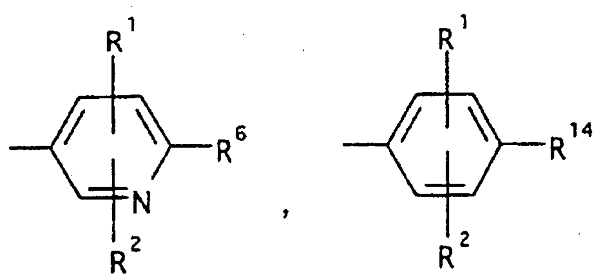
The most preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is one; A-B is:



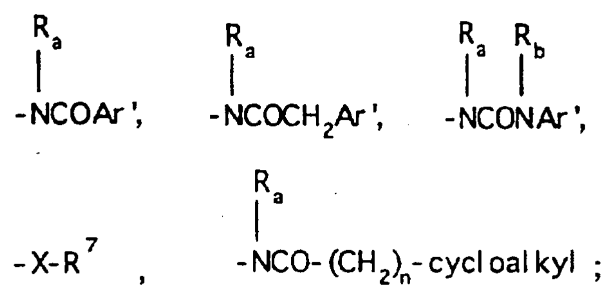
R_3 is the moiety:



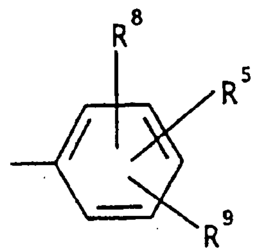
Ar is selected from the moieties:



R^6 is



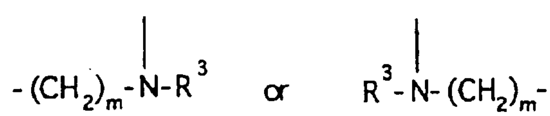
$(CH_2)_n$-cycloalkyl wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3-C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; wherein X, R_a, R_b and R^{14} are as hereinbefore defined;
and Ar' is:



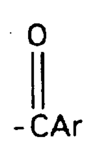
wherein R^5, R^8 and R^9 are as previously defined.

The most highly broadly preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is zero or one; wherein the moiety:

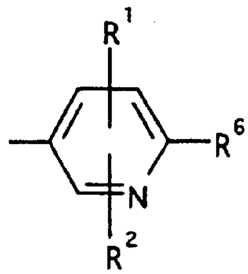
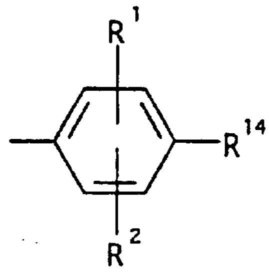
is a phenyl, substituted phenyl, thiophene, furan, pyrrole or pyridine ring;
A-B is:



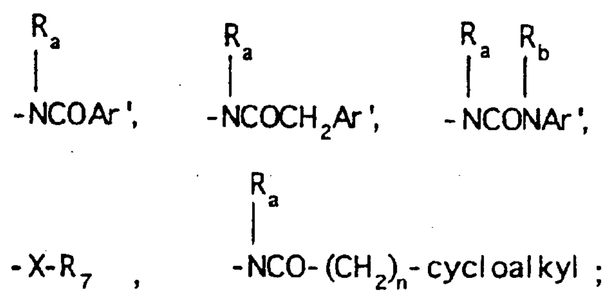
m is one when n is one and m is two when n is zero; D, E, F, R^1, R^2, R^4, R^5, R^7, R^8, R^9, R^{10} are as previously defined;
R_3 is the moiety:



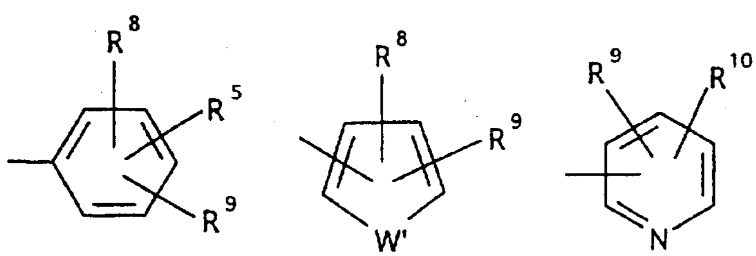
wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:

,


and R_6 is selected from the group:

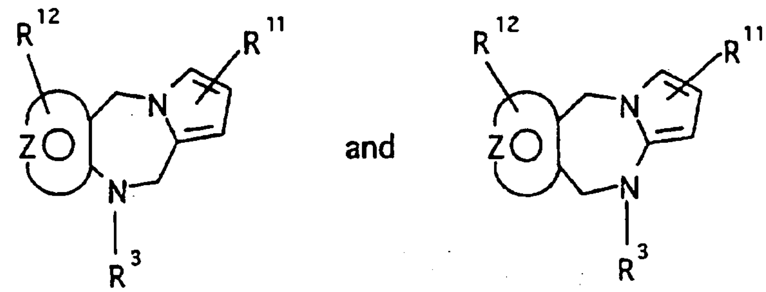


where Ar' is selected from the group:



and R^{14}, X, W', R_a, R_b and cycloalkyl are as previously described.

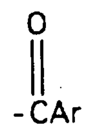
More particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:



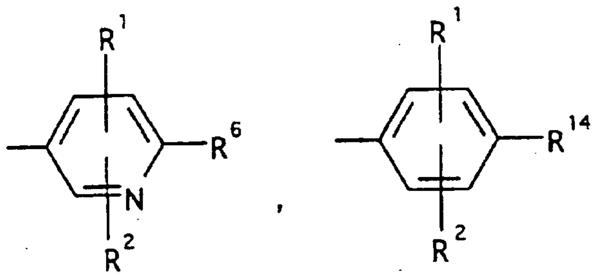
wherein the moiety:

is selected from a phenyl, thiophene, furan, pyrrole, or pyridine ring;

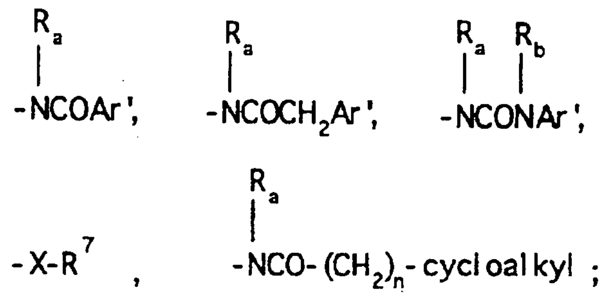
R^3 is the moiety:



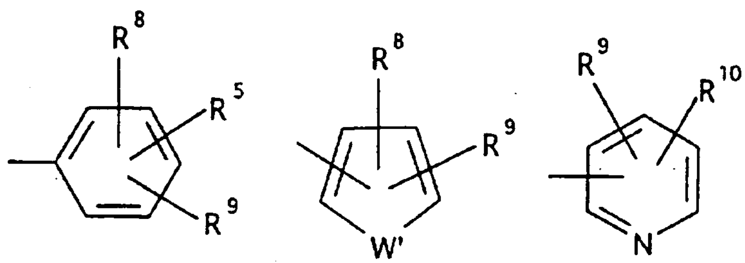
wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:



R^6 is

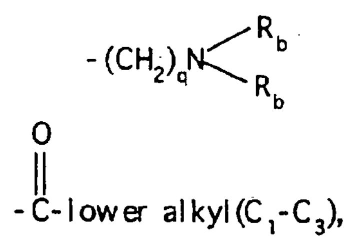


and Ar' is selected from the moieties:



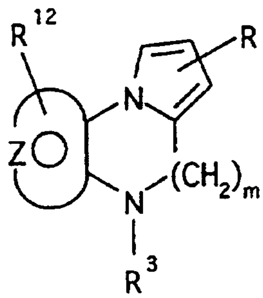
wherein X, R_a, R_b, R^5, R^7, R^8, R^9, R^{14}, cycloalkyl and W' are as hereinbefore described;

R^{11} is selected from hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, hydroxy,

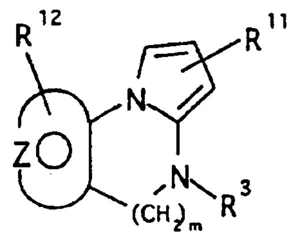


-CHO, and (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen and (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:



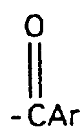
and



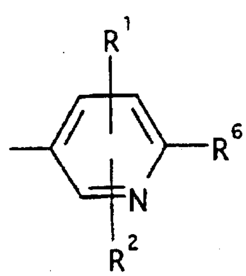
wherein m is one or two;
the moiety:

is selected from a phenyl, thiophene, furan, pyrrole or pyridine ring;

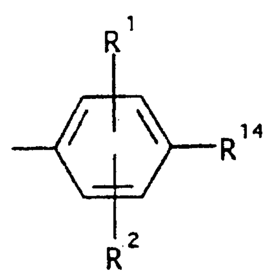
R^3 is the moiety:



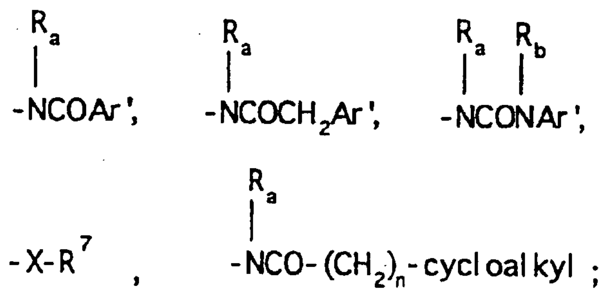
wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:



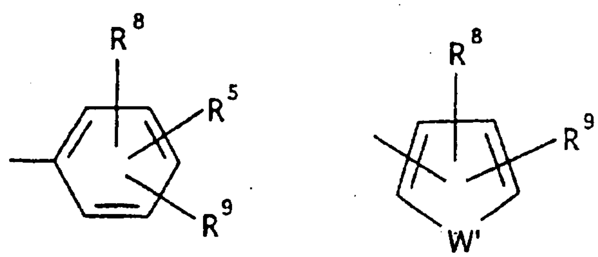
,



R^6 is

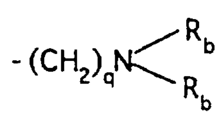


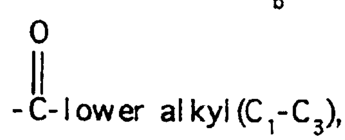
$(CH_2)_n$ cycloalkyl; Ar' is selected from the moieties:



wherein X, R_a, R_b, R^5, R^6, R^8, R^9, R^{14}, cycloalkyl and W' are as hereinbefore defined;

R^{11} is selected from hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, hydroxy,

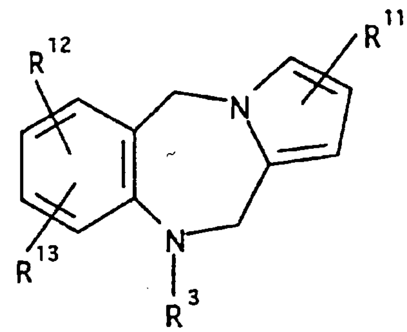




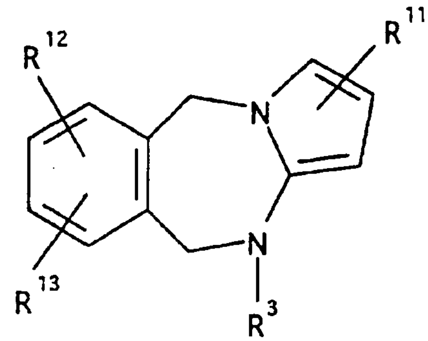
-CHO, and (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy; and

R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen and (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy.

More particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:



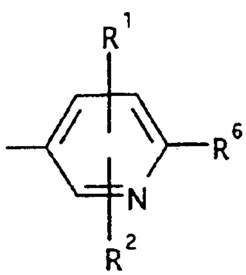
and



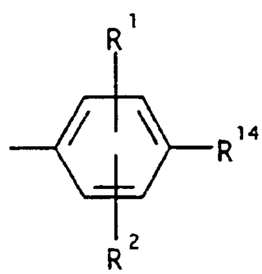
R^3 is the moiety:

$$-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}Ar$$

wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:



,

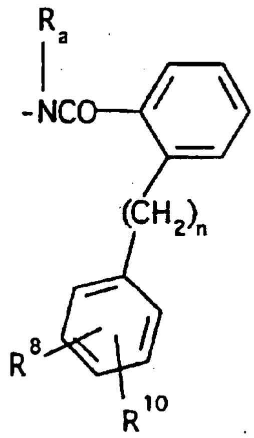
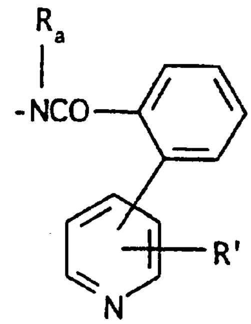


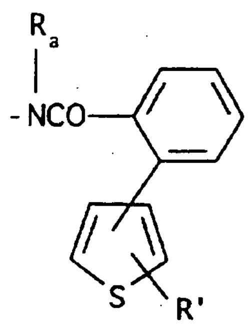
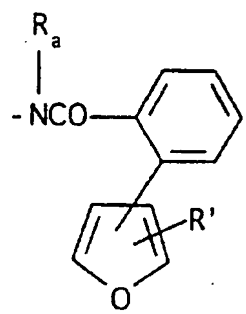
R^6 is

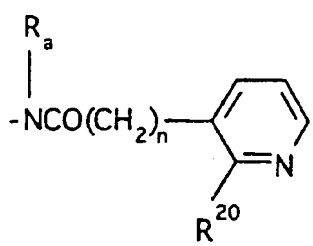
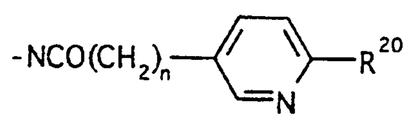
$$\underset{}{-\overset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}COAr'},\qquad -\overset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}COCH_2Ar',\qquad -\overset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}CO\overset{\displaystyle R_b}{\overset{|}{N}}Ar',$$

$$-X\text{-}R^7\quad,\qquad -\overset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}CO\text{-}(CH_2)_n\text{-}cycloalkyl\ ;$$

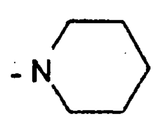
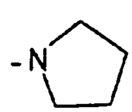
R^{14} is

,
,

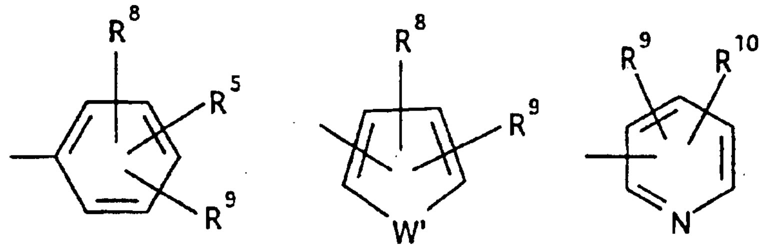
,
,

,


wherein n is 0 or 1; R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

,
,

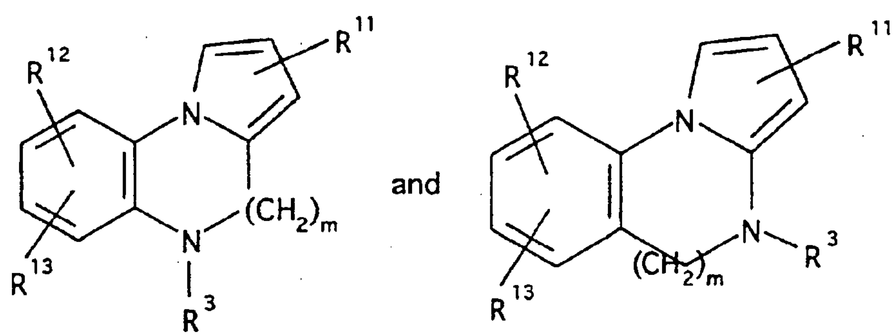
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3-C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_b is hydrogen; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$ or $-(CH_2)_qN(CH_3)_2$; Ar' is selected from the moieties:



wherein q, X, R_a, R_b, R^5, R^7, R^8, R^9, R^{10}, R^{11} and W' are as hereinbefore described;

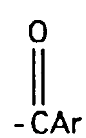
R^{12} and R^{13} are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3) lower alkylamino.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:

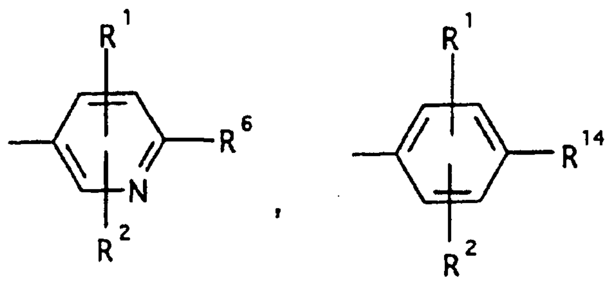


wherein m is one or two;

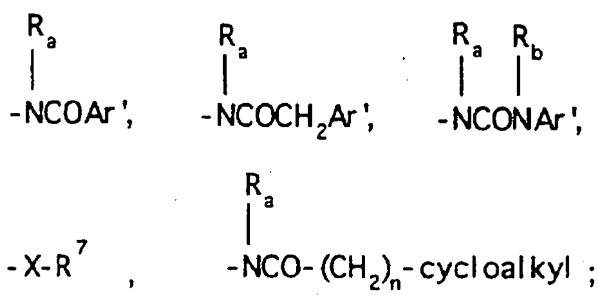
R^3 is the moiety:



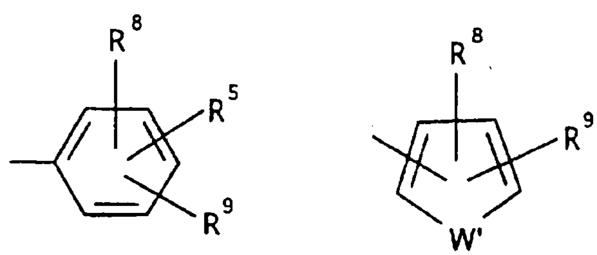
wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:



R^6 is

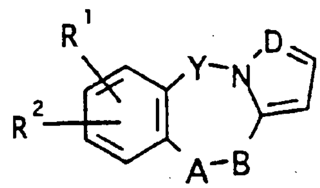


wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3-C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_b is hydrogen; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$ or $-(CH_2)_qN(CH_3)_2$; and Ar' is selected from the moieties:



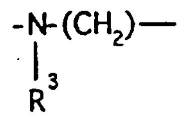
wherein q, X, R_a, R_b, R^5, R^7, R^8, R^9, R^{11}, R^{14} and W' are as hereinbefore defined;
R^{12} and R^{13} are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3) lower alkylamino.

The most highly broadly preferred of the compounds are those of the formula:



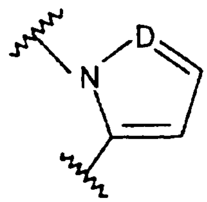
wherein Y is a moiety $-(CH_2)-$;

A-B is a moiety:



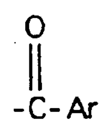
;

the moiety:

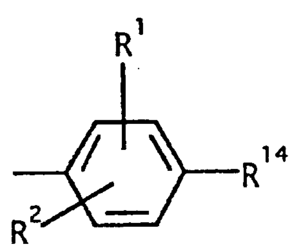


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring optionally substituted by halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, and $-(CH_2)_q-N(R_b)_2$ wherein D is carbon; q is 1 or 2; R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, and C_2H_5;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

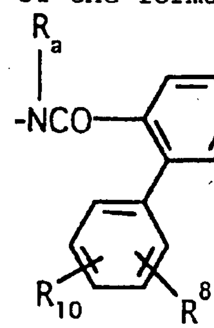


wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of



;

R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{14} is selected from a moiety of the formula:

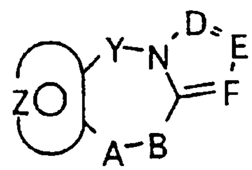


wherein R_a is hydrogen; R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen, and (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl; R^8 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CF_3, and

$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{||}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\ ;$$

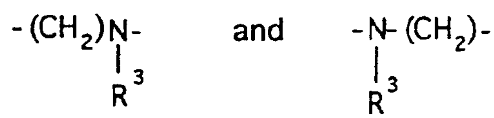
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

Preferred group I. Among the more preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

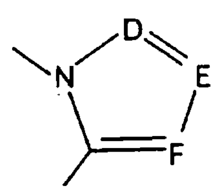
A-B is a moiety selected from



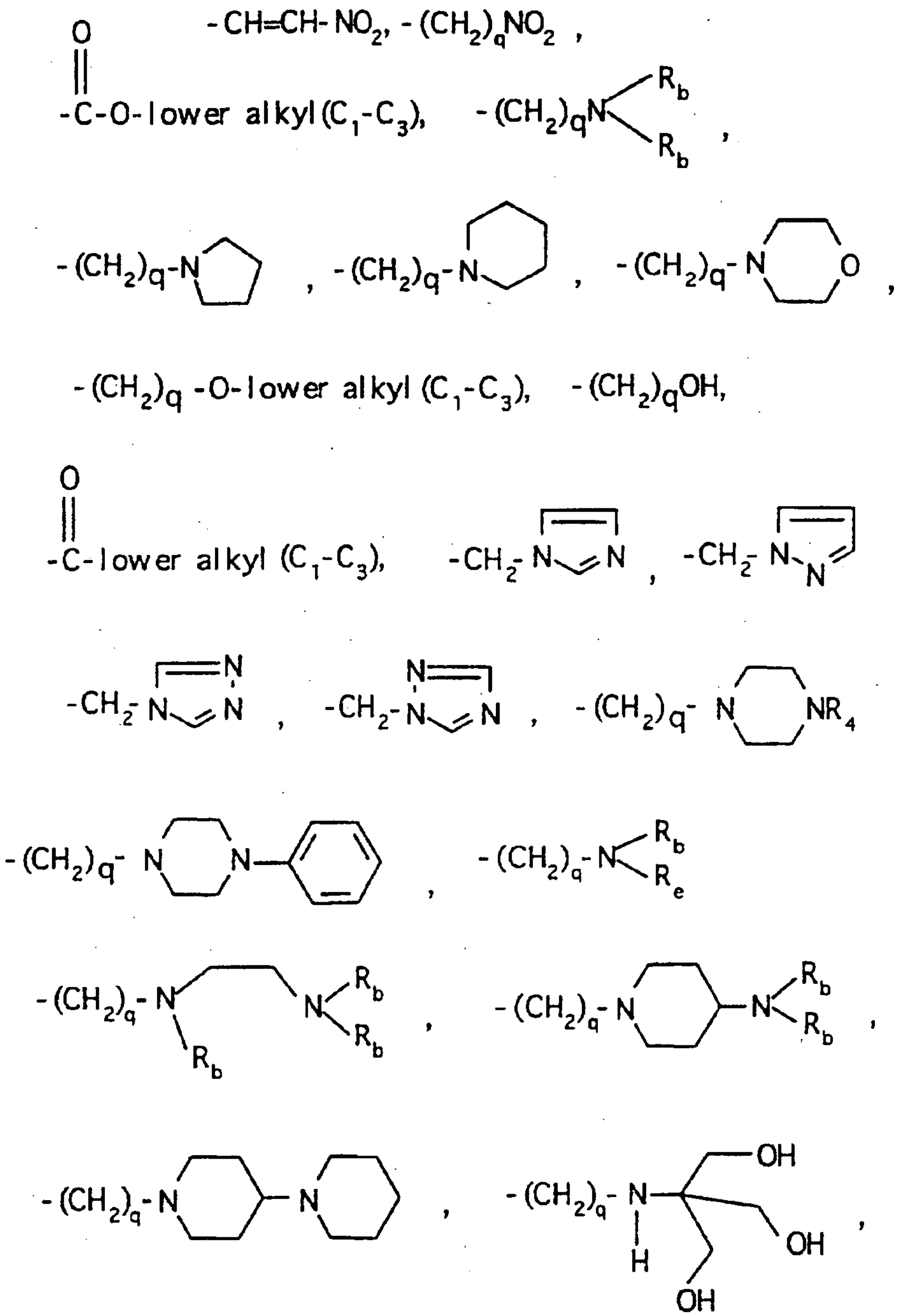
and the moiety:

represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

the moiety:

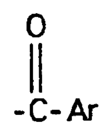


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are selected from carbon and nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

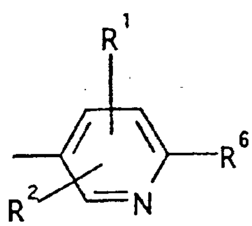
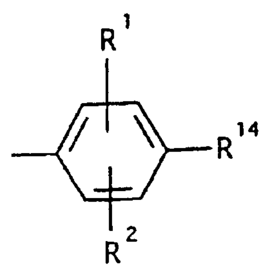


-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$; q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;
R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



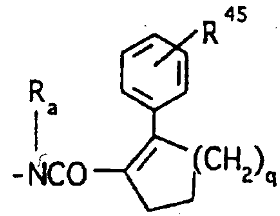
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

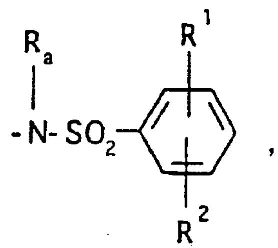
 , 

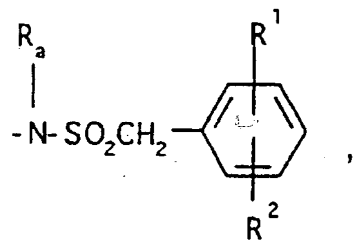
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

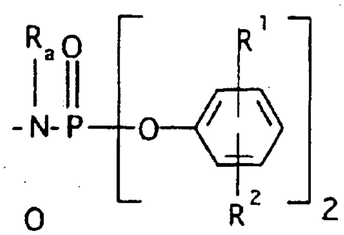
$-N(R_a)COAr'$, $-N(R_a)COCH_2Ar'$, $-N(R_a)CON(R_b)Ar'$,

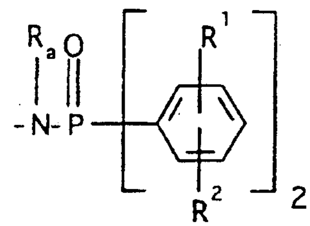
$-N(R_a)CO-(CH_2)_n-$cycloalkyl ,



 ,

 ,

 ,

 ,

$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

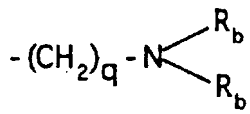
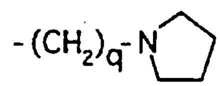
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

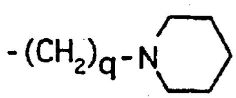
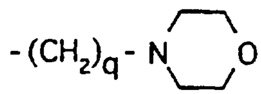
$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NHSO_2-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

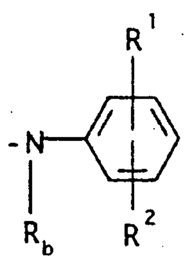
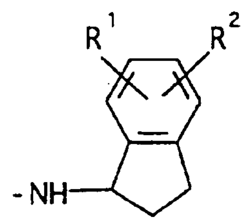
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

 ,  ,

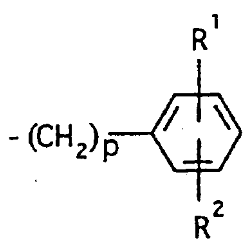
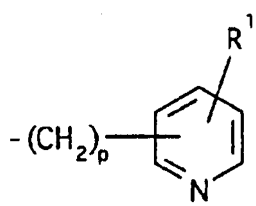
 ,  ,

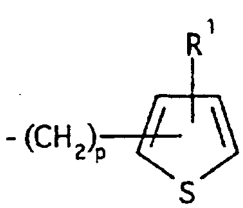
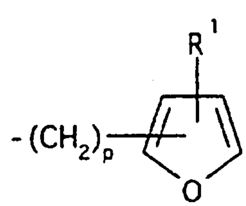
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

$-X-R^7$,  , 

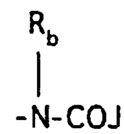
wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

 ,  ,

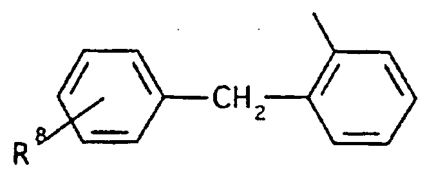
 , 

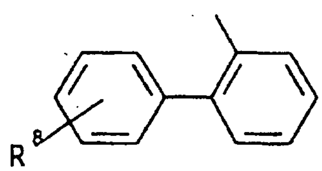
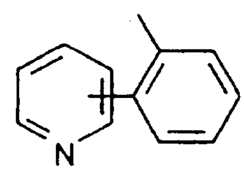
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined;

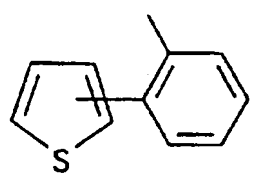
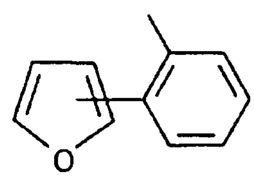
(c) a moiety of the formula:



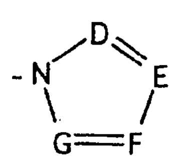
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:

 ,

 ,  ,

 , 

or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, -CO_2-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$-\underset{\displaystyle |}{\overset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}}\text{-CO}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle R_c}{|}}{\text{CH}}\text{Ar}'$$

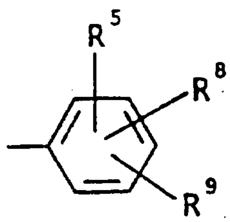
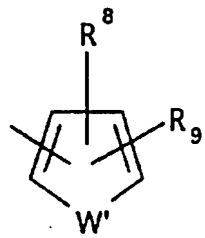
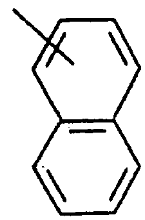
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

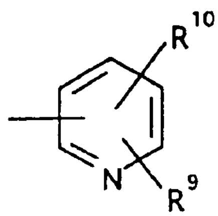
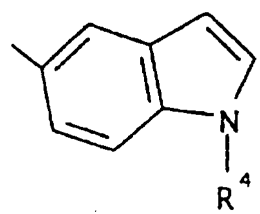
$$-\text{O-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{\text{C}}\text{-lower alkyl}(C_1\text{-}C_3),\ \text{-S-lower alkyl}(C_1\text{-}C_3),$$

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix}, \quad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix},$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix}, \quad -O-(CH_2)_2N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

,
,
,

, and


wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]2, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

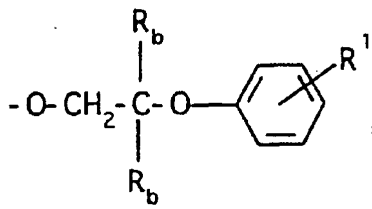
$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

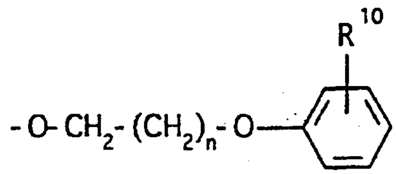
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^{14} is

-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

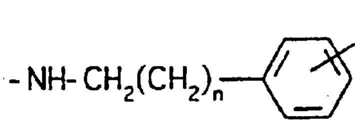


,

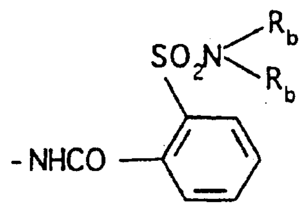


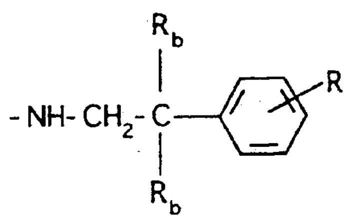
,

-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

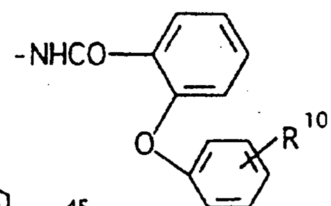


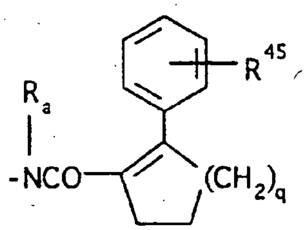
,



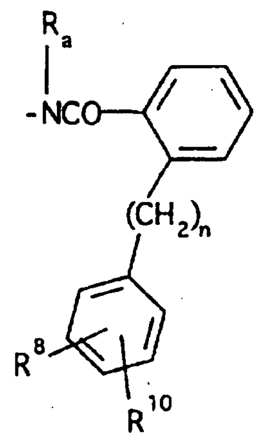
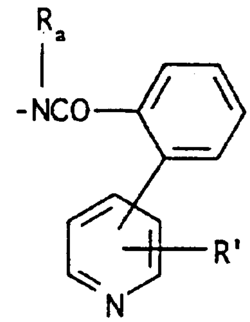


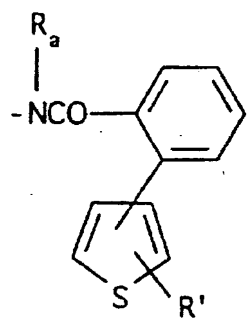
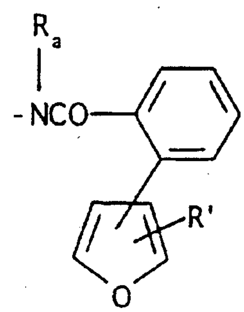
,

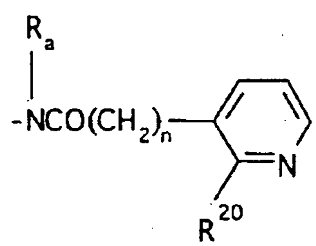
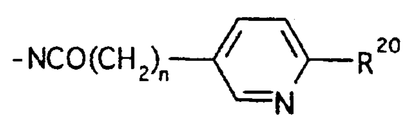


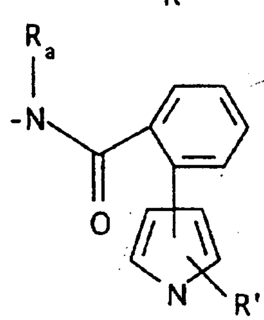
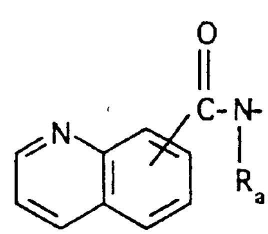


,


,

,


,

,

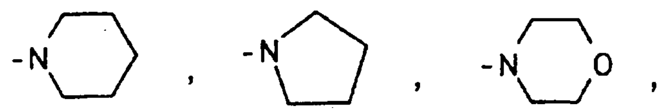

,


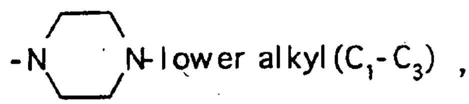


;

q is 1 or 2;

wherein n is 0 or 1;

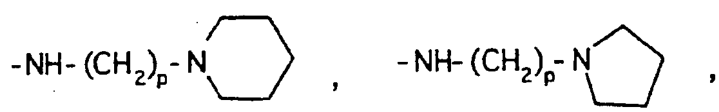
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

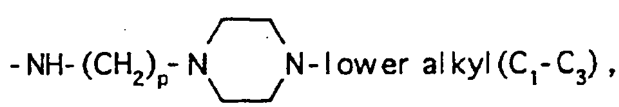


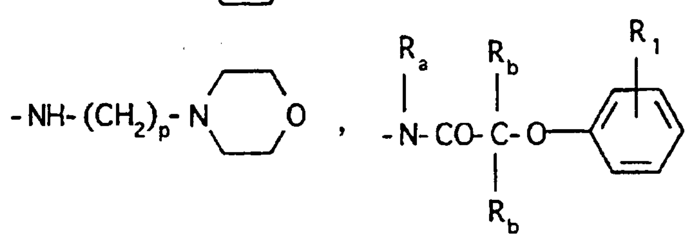


$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$N[lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,



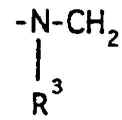




and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

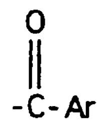
Within preferred group I above are the following preferred sub-groups 1, 2 and 3 of compounds:

1. wherein the moiety A-B is:

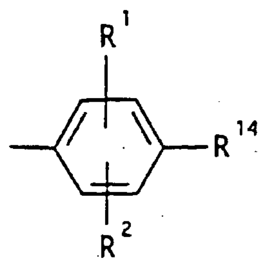


wherein R^3 is as defined in preferred group I above;

2. wherein R^3 is the moiety:

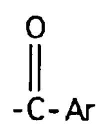


and Ar is

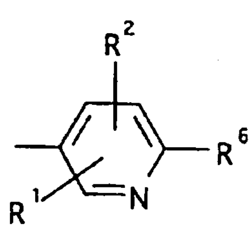


wherein R^1, R^2 and R^{14} are as defined in preferred group I above;

3. wherein R^3 is the moiety:

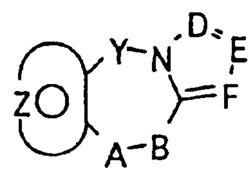


and Ar is



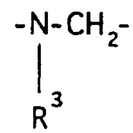
wherein R^1, R^2, and R^6 are as defined in preferred group I above.

Preferred group II. Among the most preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

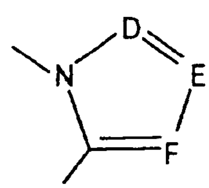
A-B is a moiety selected from



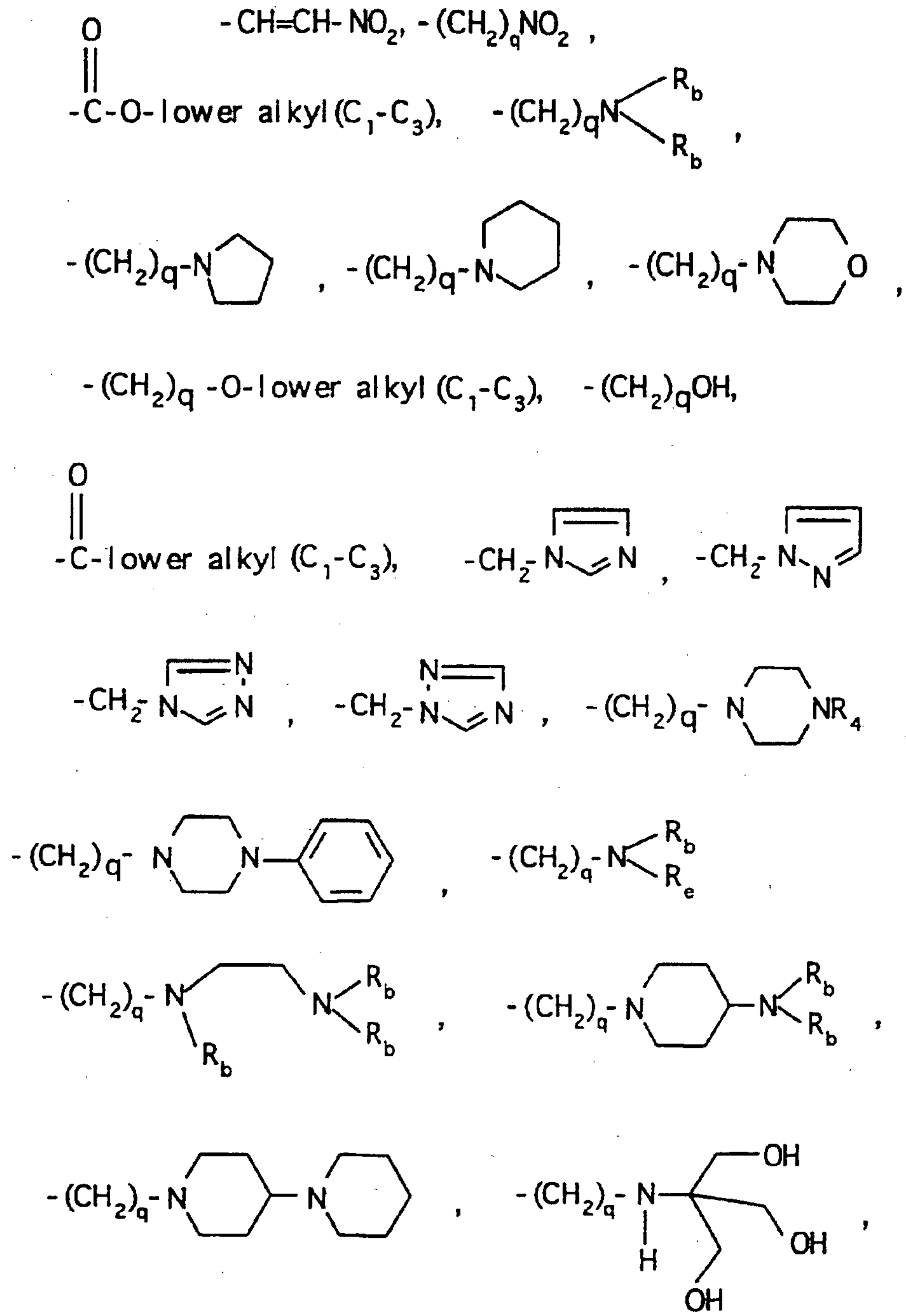
and the moiety:

represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

the moiety:

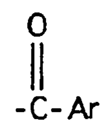


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

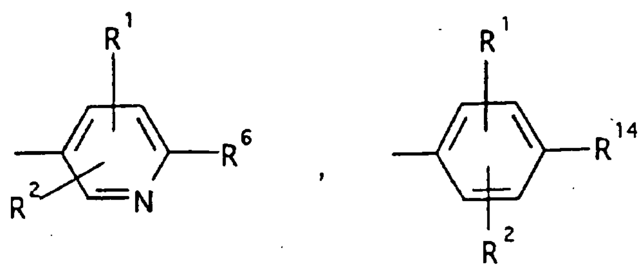


-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$; q is one or two;

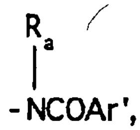
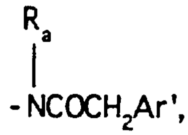
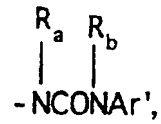
R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;
R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

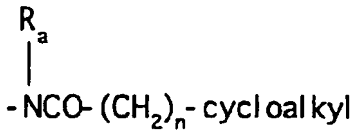
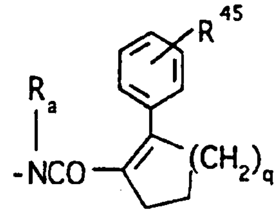


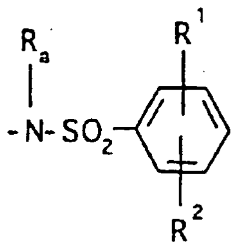
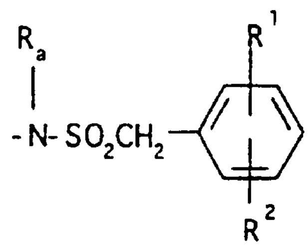
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

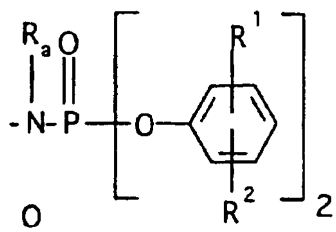
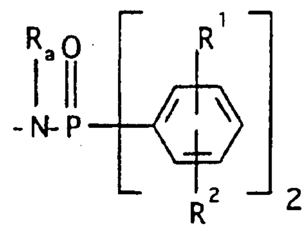


R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

-NH-C(=O)-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

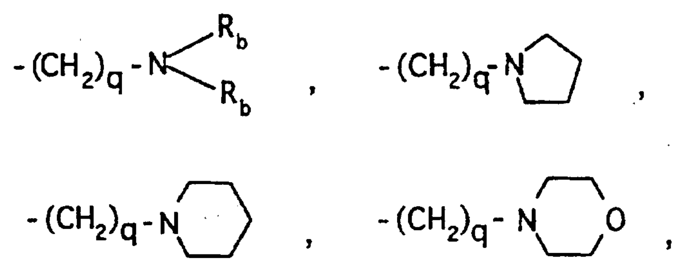
-NHSO$_2$-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-O-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

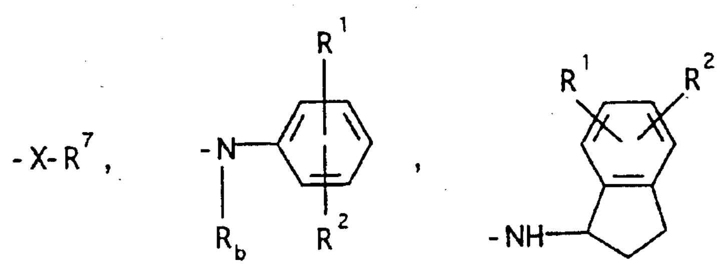
-NHSO$_2$-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

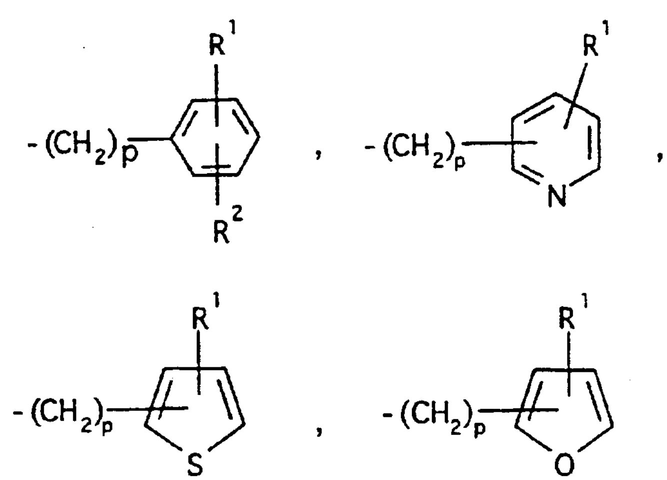


$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

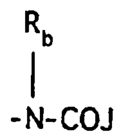
(b) moieties of the formula:



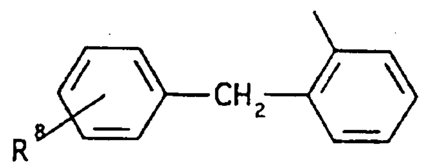
wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

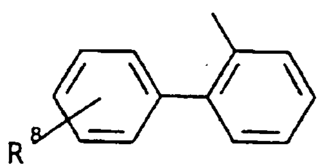
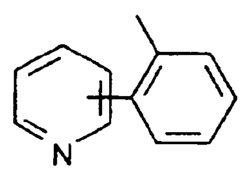


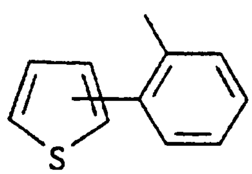
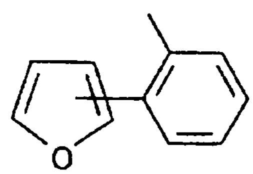
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined;
(c) a moiety of the formula:



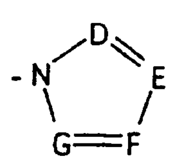
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:


,


,

,

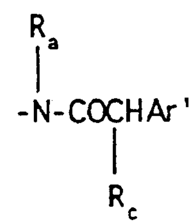

,


or -CH_2-K' wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



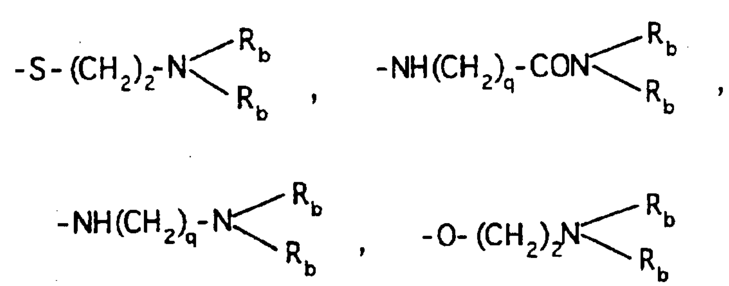
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

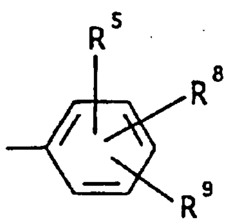
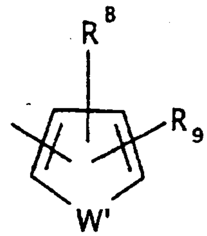
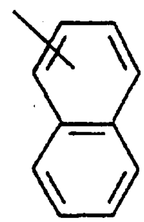


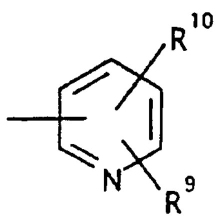
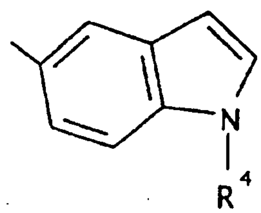
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

$-O-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)$, -S-lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)$,



and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:


, 
, 
,


, and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

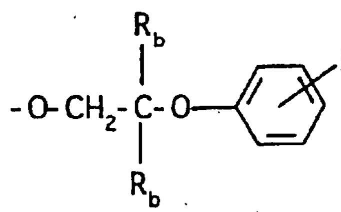
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]2, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

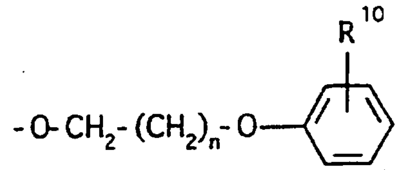
$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\quad,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); R^{14} is

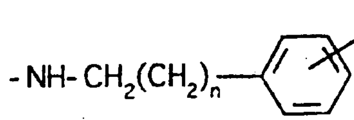
-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

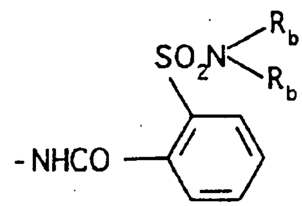


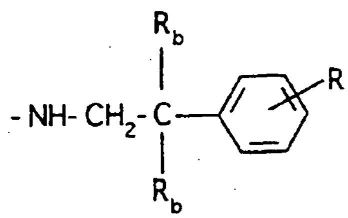
,


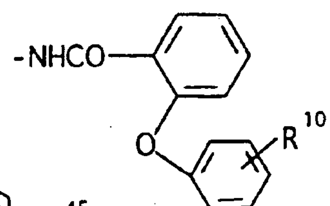
,

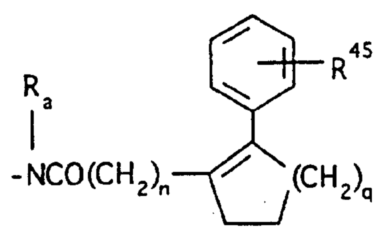
-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,



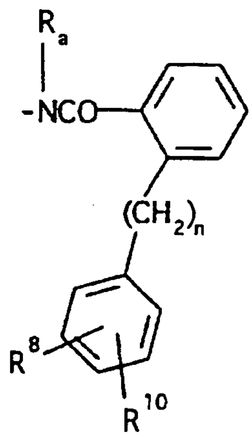
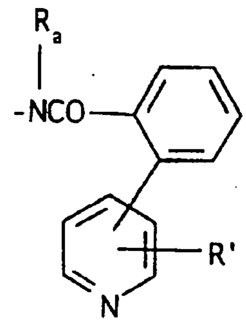
,


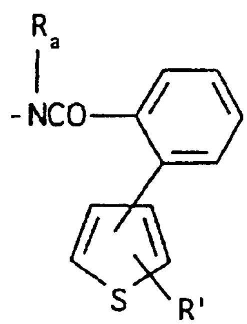
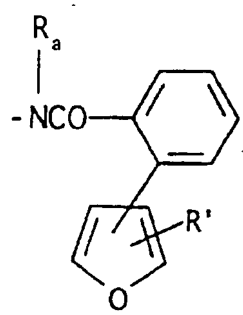


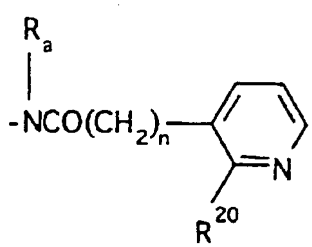
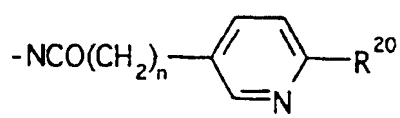
,


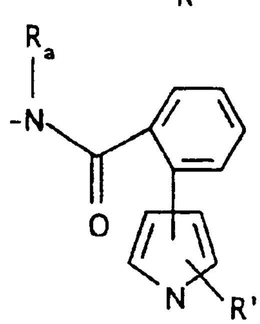
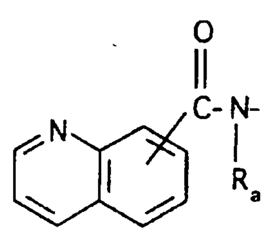


,


,

,

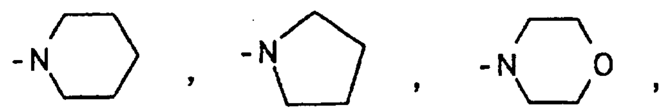

,

,

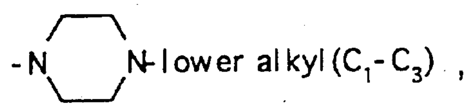

,




;

q is 1 or 2;
wherein n is 0 or 1;

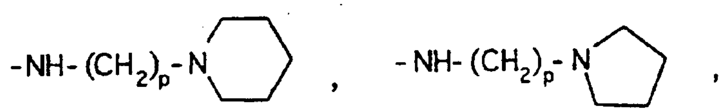
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

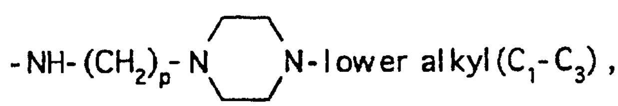


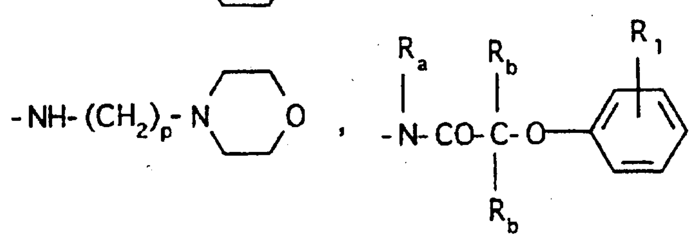


$-NH-(CH_2)_p-NH$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,



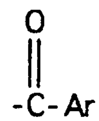




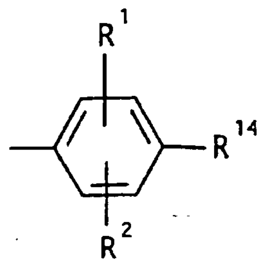
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

Within preferred group II above are the following preferred sub-groups 1 and 2 of compounds:

1. wherein R^3 is the moiety:

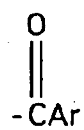


and Ar is

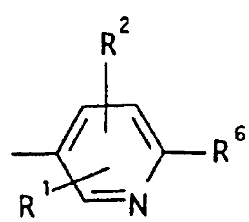


wherein R^1, R^2 and R^{14} are as defined in preferred group II above;

2. wherein R^3 is the moiety:

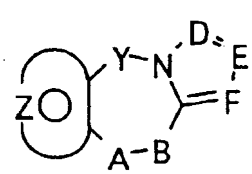


and Ar is



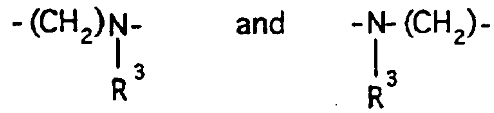
wherein R^1, R^2 and R^6 are as defined in in preferred group II above.

Preferred group III. Among the preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from those of the formulae:



wherein Y is CH_2;

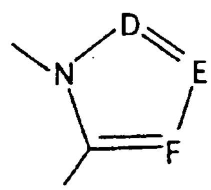
A-B is a moiety selected from



and the moiety:

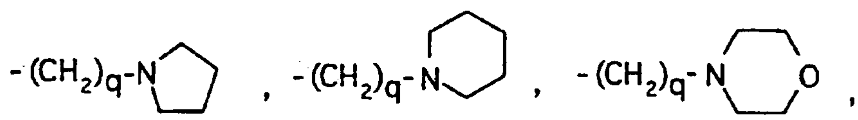
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from $(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl, halogen, amino, $(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkoxy or $(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkylamino;

the moiety:



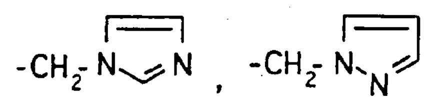
is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, $(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

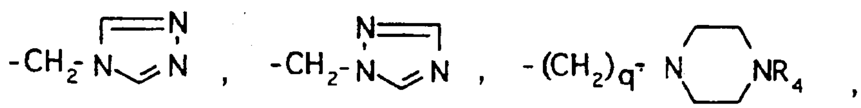
$-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), $-CH=CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,

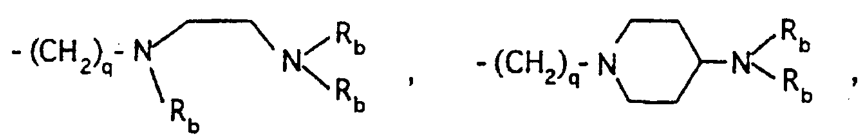


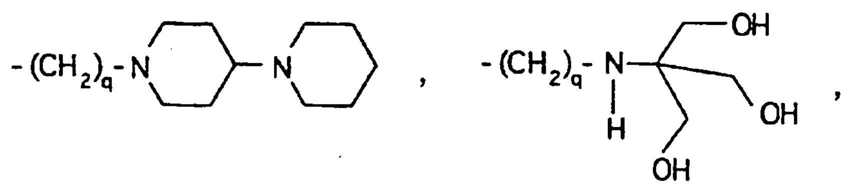
$-(CH_2)_q-O-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-(CH_2)_qOH$,

$-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3),









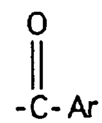
-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$; q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

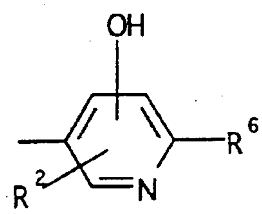
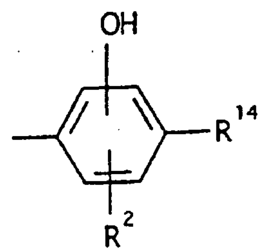
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;

R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



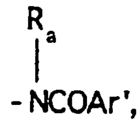
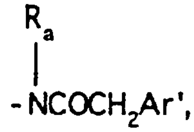
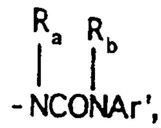
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

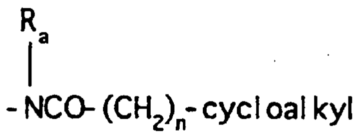
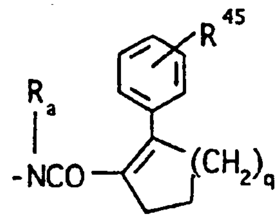
 , 

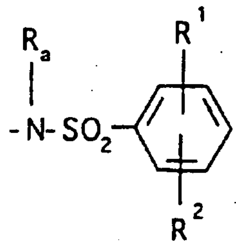
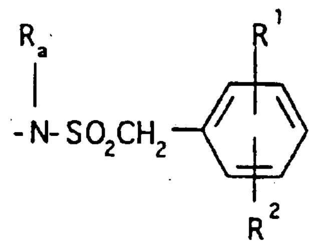
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

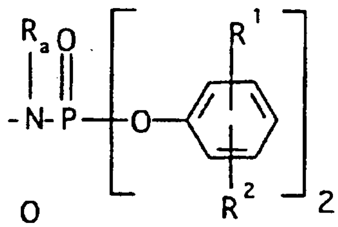
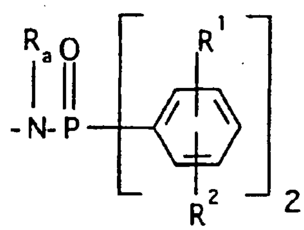
R^2 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

, , ,

, 

, ,

, ,

$-NH-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-O-$lower alkyl ($C_3$-$C_8$) straight or branched,

$-NH-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-$lower alkyl ($C_3$-$C_8$) straight or branched,

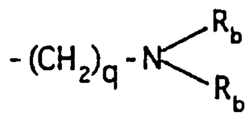
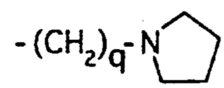
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

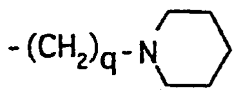
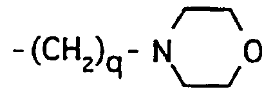
$-NH-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-O-$lower alkenyl ($C_3$-$C_8$) straight or branched,

$-NH-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-$lower alkenyl ($C_3$-$C_8$) straight or branched,

$-NHSO_2-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

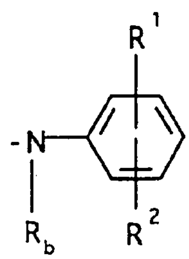
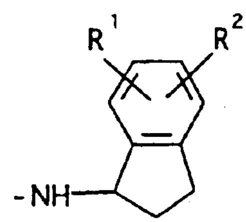
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

 ,  ,

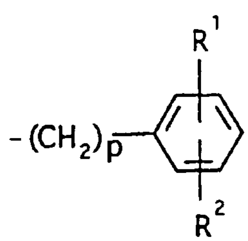
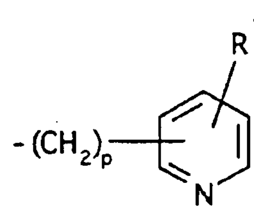
 ,  ,

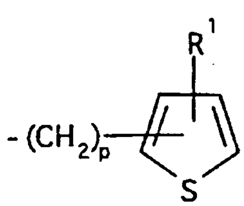
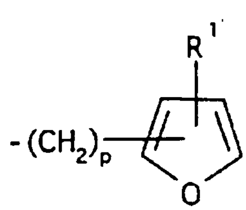
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

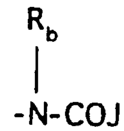
$-X-R^7$,  , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

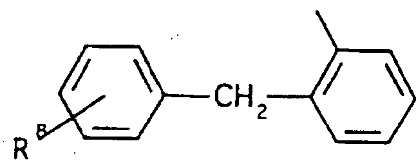
 ,  ,

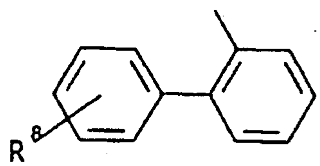
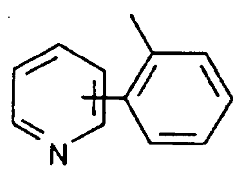
 , 

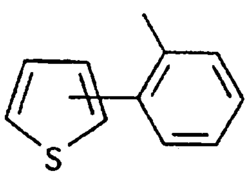
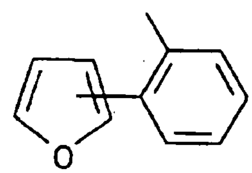
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined;
(c) a moiety of the formula:



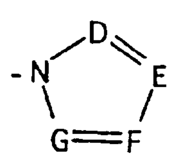
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:

,

, ,

, 

or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2$-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$-\underset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}\!\!\!\!\!-CO\underset{\displaystyle R_c}{\underset{|}{C}}HAr'$$

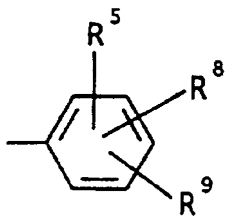
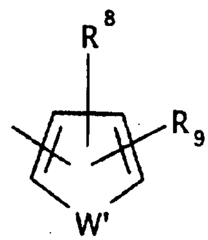
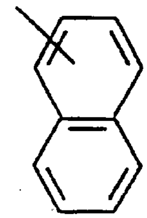
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

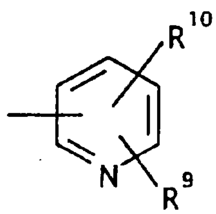
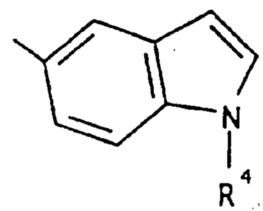
$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),\ -S-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),$$

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix},\quad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix},$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix},\quad -O-(CH_2)_2N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

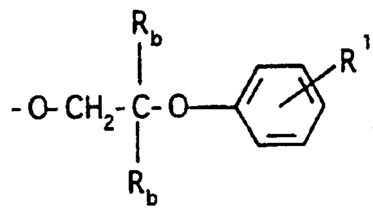
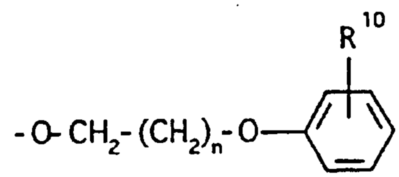
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

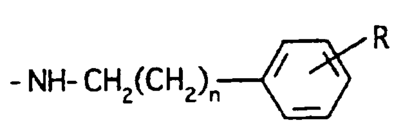
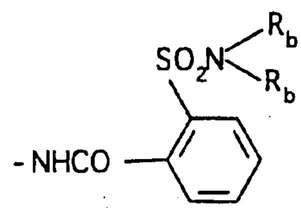
$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

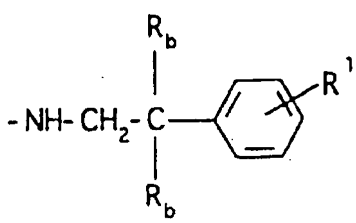
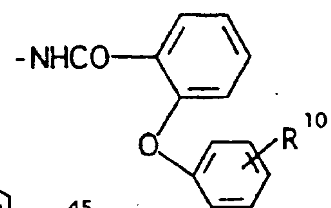
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); R^{14} is

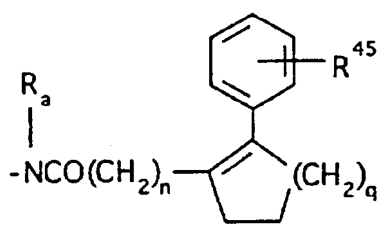
-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

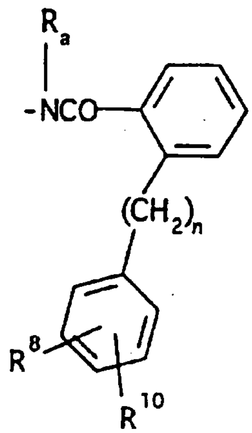

,

,

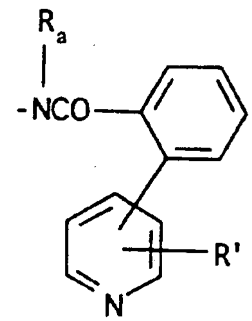
-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

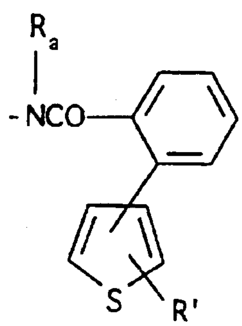

,


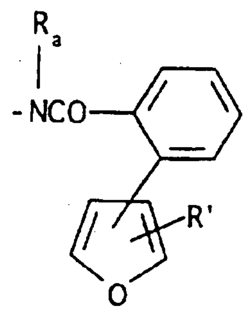

,


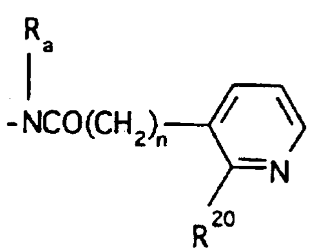

,

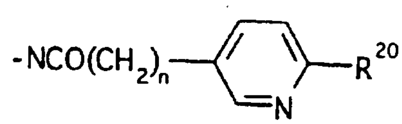
 ,

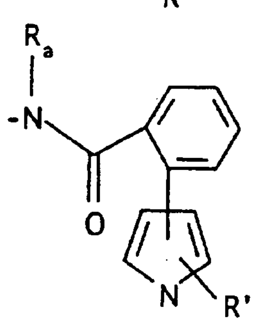
 ,

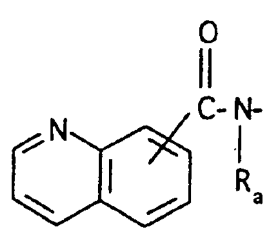
 ,

 ,

 ,





 ;

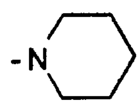
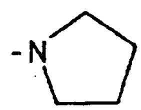
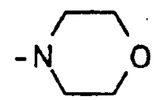
q is 1 or 2;

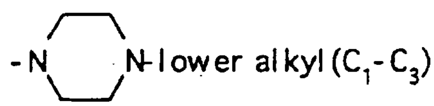
wherein n is 0 or 1;

R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

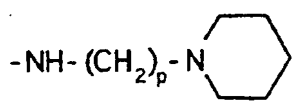
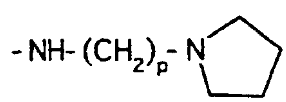
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

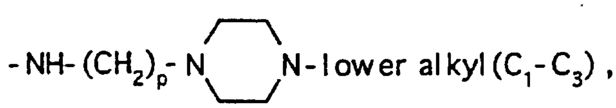
 ,  ,  ,

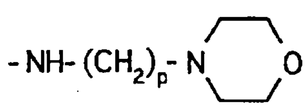
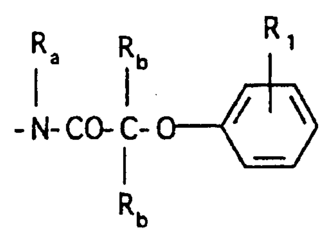
 ,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,

 ,  ,

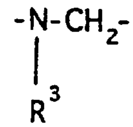
 ,

 , 

and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

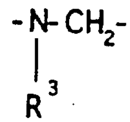
Within the preferred group III above are the following preferred sub-groups 1, 2 and 3 of compounds:

1. wherein A-B is a moiety:

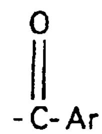


where R^3 is as defined in preferred group III above;

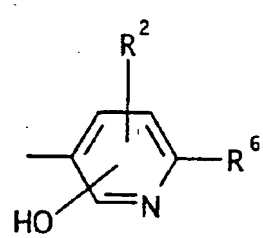
2. wherein A-B is the moiety:


;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

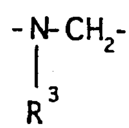


wherein Ar is:

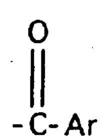


wherein R^2 and R^6 are defined in in preferred group III above;

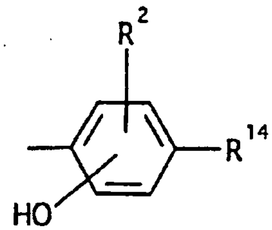
3. wherein A-B is the moiety:


;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

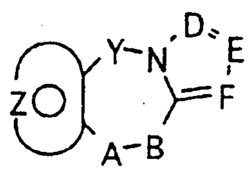


wherein Ar is:



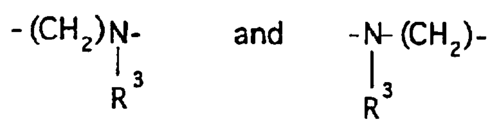
wherein R^2 and R^{14} are defined in preferred group III above.

Preferred group IV. Among the preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

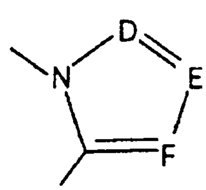
A-B is a moiety selected from



and the moiety:

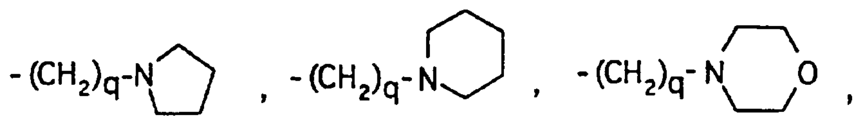
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from $(C_1\text{-}C_3)$lower alkyl, halogen, amino, $(C_1\text{-}C_3)$lower alkoxy or $(C_1\text{-}C_3)$lower alkylamino;

the moiety:



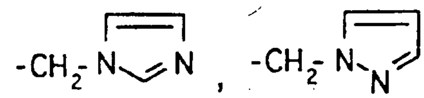
is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring where D is carbon and E and F are selected from carbon and nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

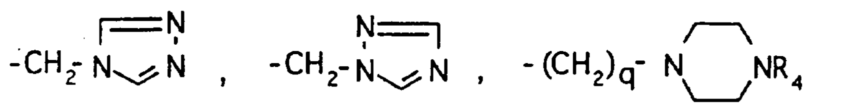
$-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), $-CH=CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,

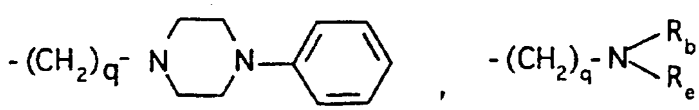


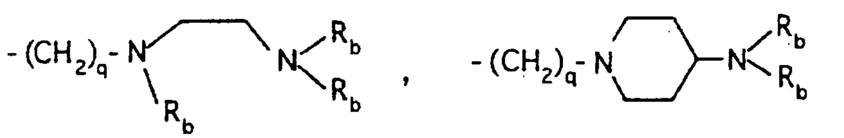
$-(CH_2)_q-O-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-(CH_2)_qOH$,

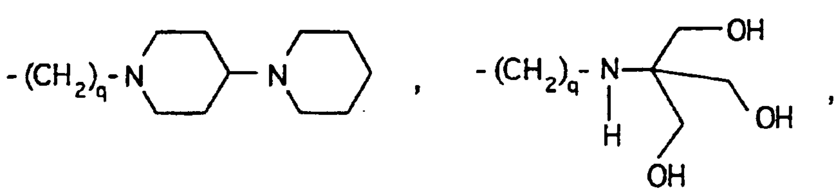
$-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3),











-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$; q is one or two;

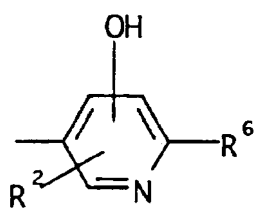
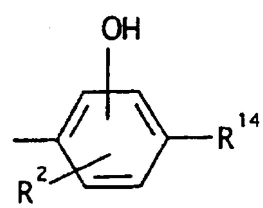
R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;

R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

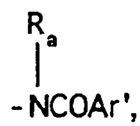
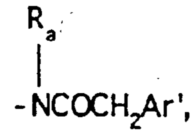
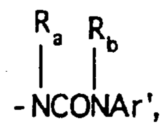
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

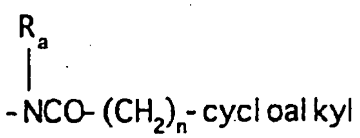
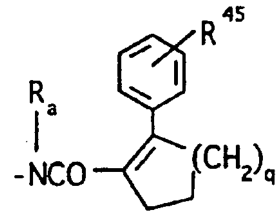
 , 

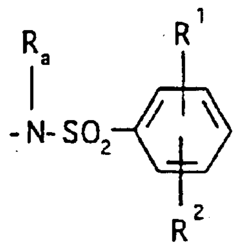
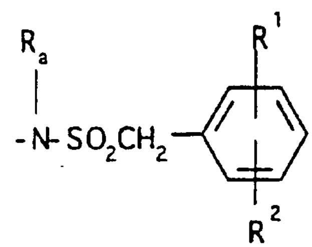
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

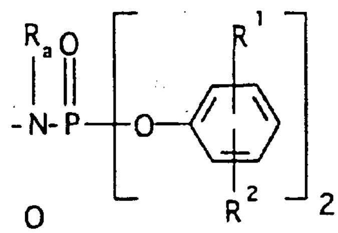
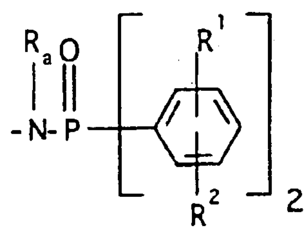
R^2 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

, , ,

, 

, ,

, ,

$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

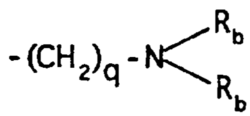
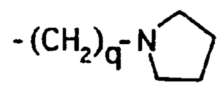
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

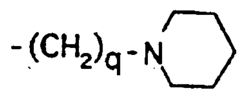
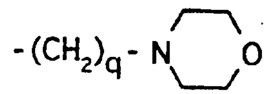
$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NHSO_2-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

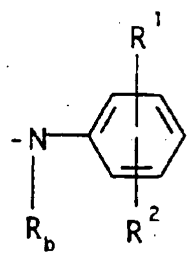
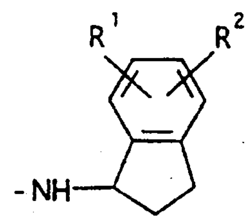
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

, ,

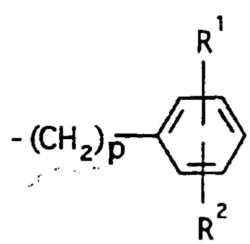
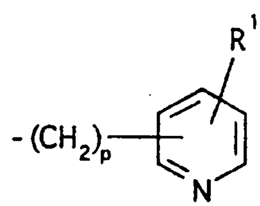
, ,

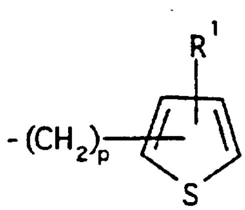
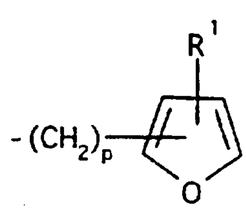
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

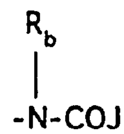
$-X-R^7$, , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

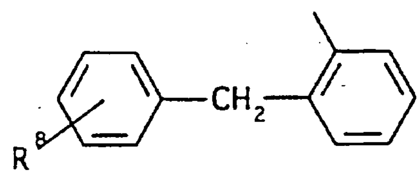
, ,

, 

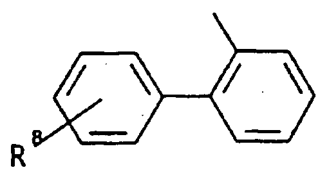
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



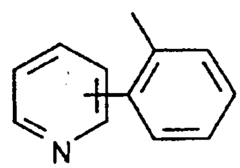
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:



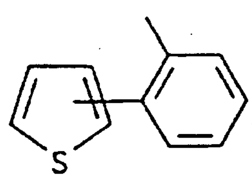
,



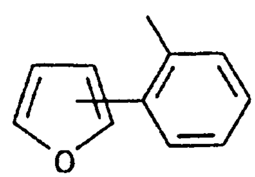
,



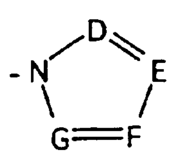
,



,



or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$-\underset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}\!-CO\underset{\displaystyle R_c}{\underset{|}{C}}HAr'$$

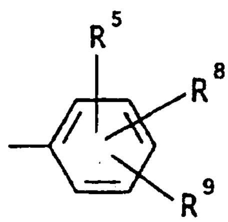
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

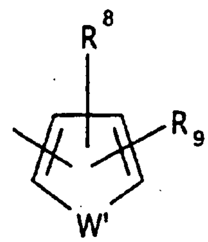
$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),\ -S-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),$$

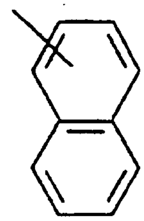
$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ ,\quad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ ,$$

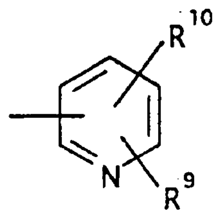
$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ ,\quad -O-(CH_2)_2N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}$$

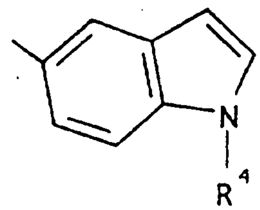
and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



, 

, 
,



, and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]2, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

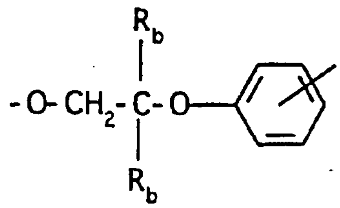
$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

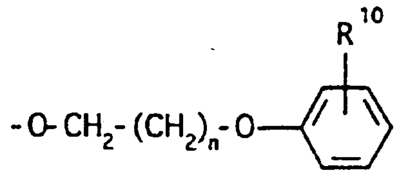
$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); R^{14} is

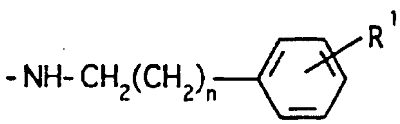
g

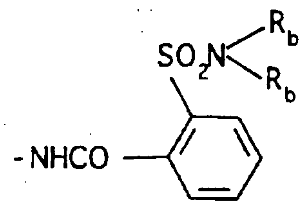
-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

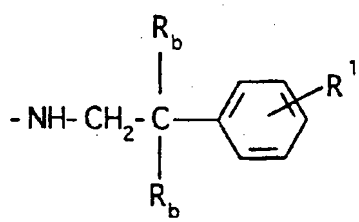
 ,

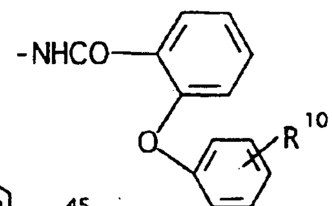
 ,

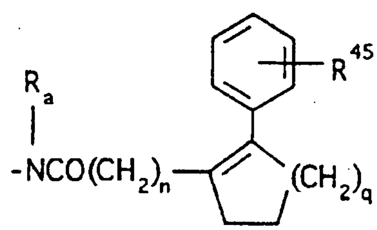
-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

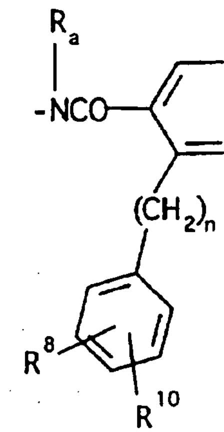
 ,



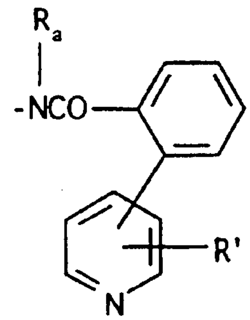
 ,



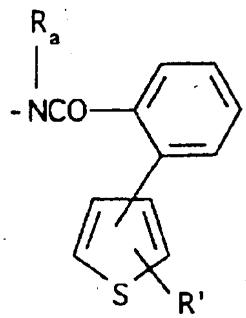
 ,



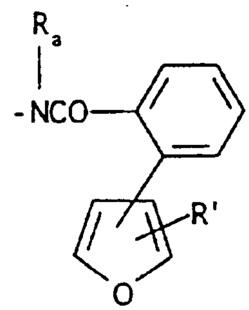
,



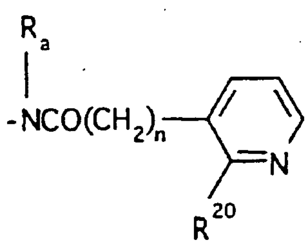
,



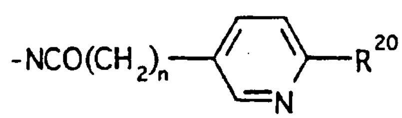
,

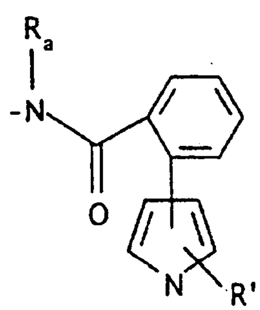


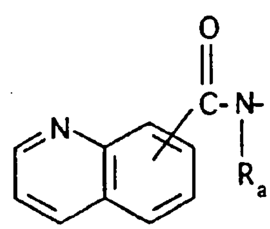
,



,



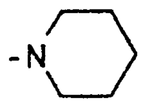
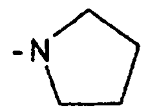
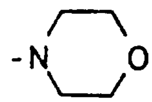


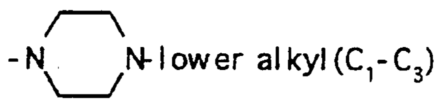


q is 1 or 2;

wherein n is 0 or 1;

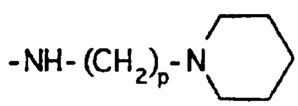
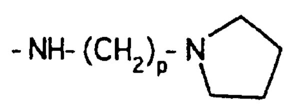
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

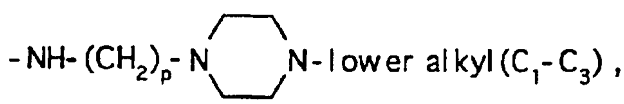
 ,  ,  ,

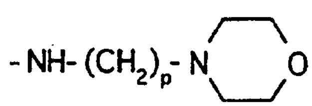
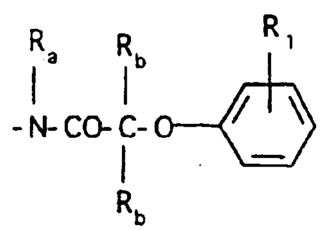
 ,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$N[lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,

 ,  ,

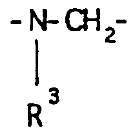
 ,

 , 

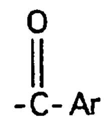
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

Within the preferred group IV above are the following preferred sub-groups 1 and 2 of compounds:.

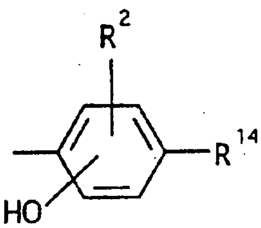
1. wherein A-B is the moiety:

 ;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

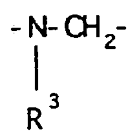


wherein Ar is:

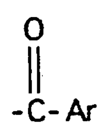


wherein R^2 and R^{14} are defined in preferred group IV above;

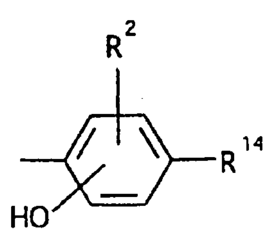
2. wherein A-B is the moiety:

 ;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

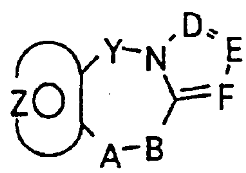


wherein Ar is:



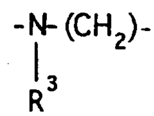
wherein R^2 and R^{14} are defined in preferred group IV above.

Preferred group V. Among the more preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

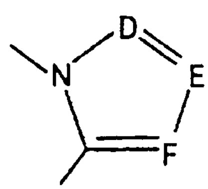
A-B is



and the moiety:

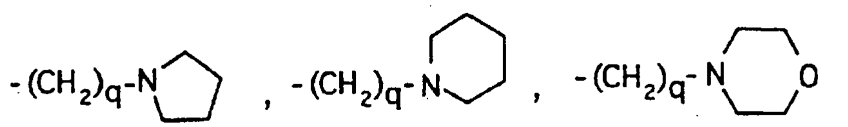
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

the moiety:

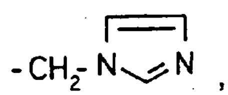


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from

$-CH{=}CH{-}NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R_b)R_b$,



$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl $(C_1$-$C_3)$, $-(CH_2)_qOH$,



-CHO, and $(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkylamino;

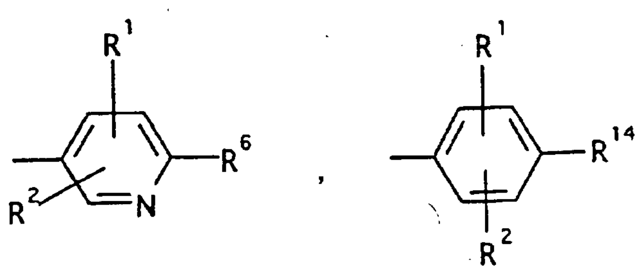
q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

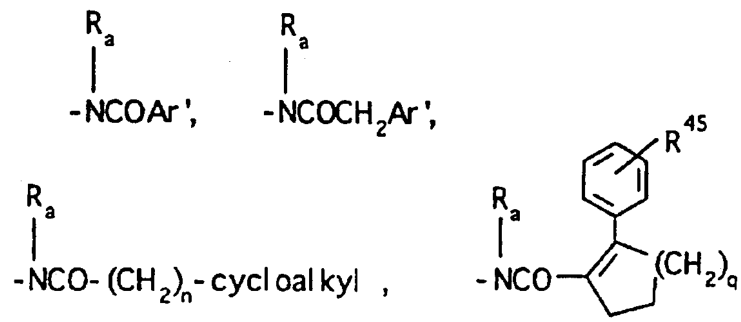
$$-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-Ar$$

wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

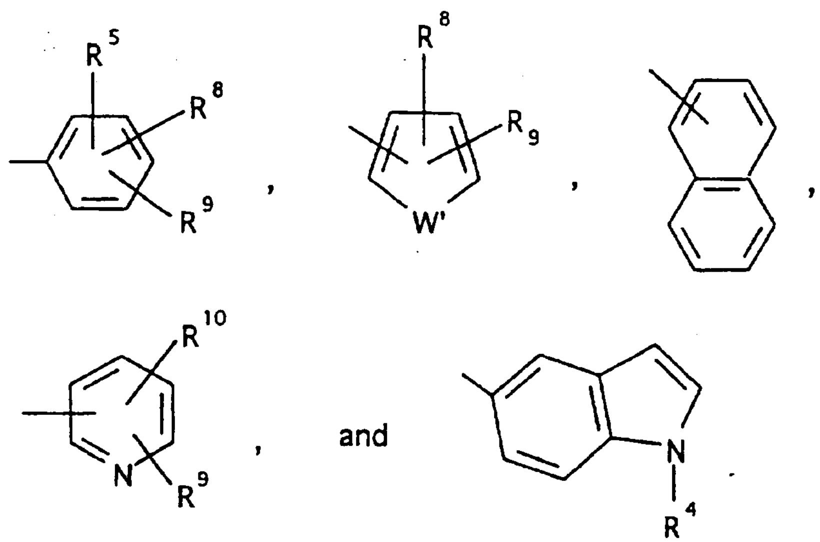


R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl$(C_1$-$C_3)$; -CO-lower alkyl$(C_1$-$C_3)$;

R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

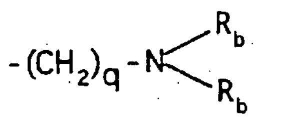
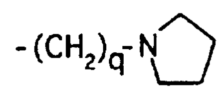
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

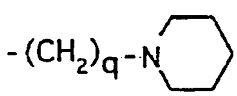
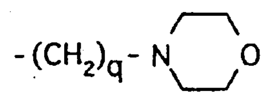
$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3)$,

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

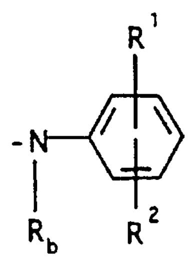
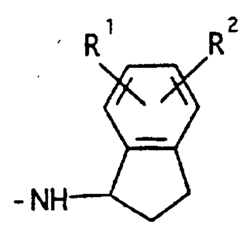
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

 ,  ,

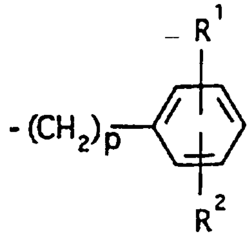
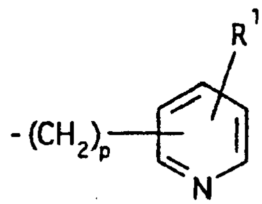
 ,  ,

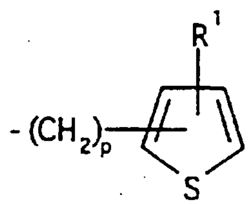
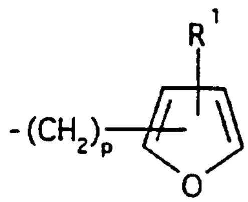
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

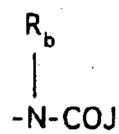
$-X-R^7$,  , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

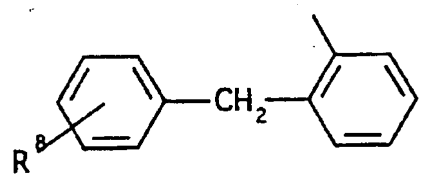
 ,  ,

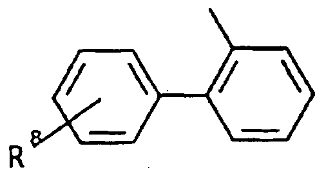
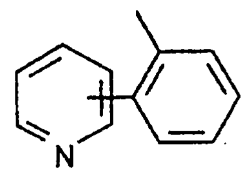
 , 

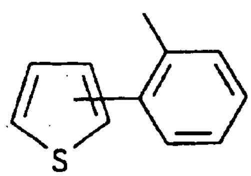
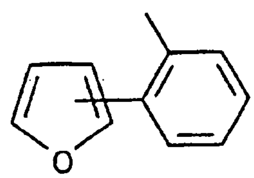
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



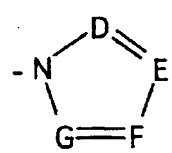
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:

 ,

 ,  ,

 , 

or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$\begin{array}{l} \;\;R_a \\ \;\;| \\ -N-COCHAr' \\ \qquad\quad\;| \\ \qquad\quad\;R_c \end{array}$$

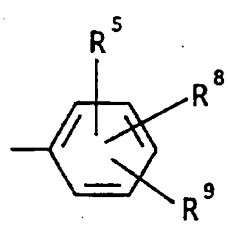
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

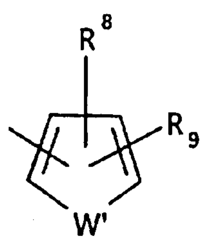
$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),\ -S-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),$$

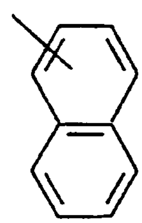
$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ , \qquad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ ,$$

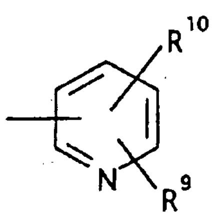
$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ , \qquad -O-(CH_2)_2N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}$$

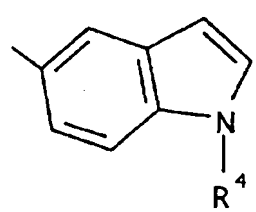
and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;



,


,

,



, and


wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

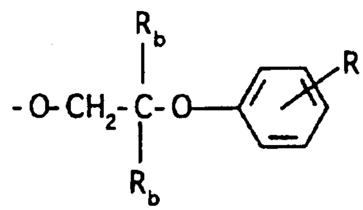
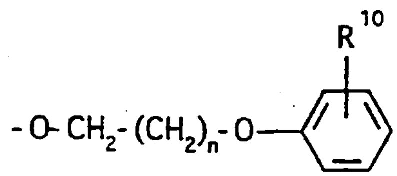
$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3) \quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

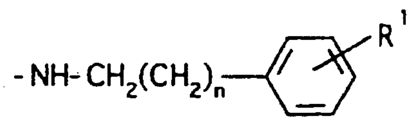
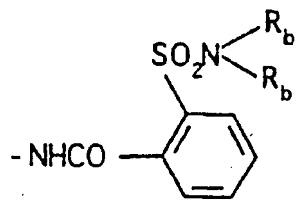
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

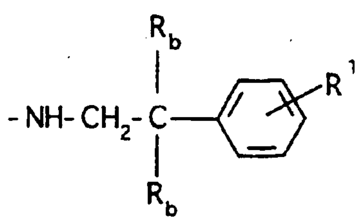
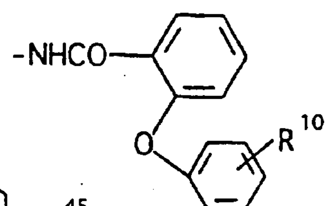
R^{14} is

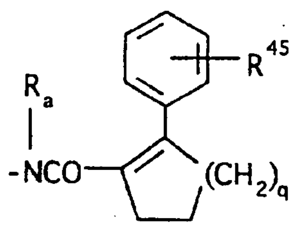
-O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

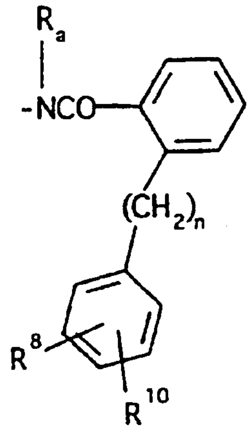
,
,

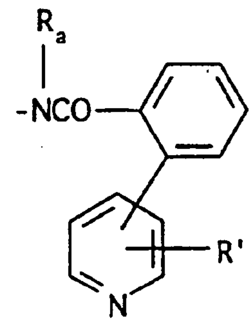
-NH lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

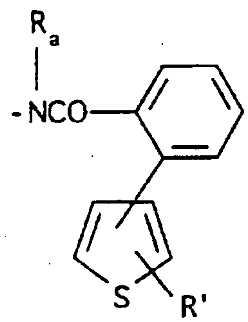
,


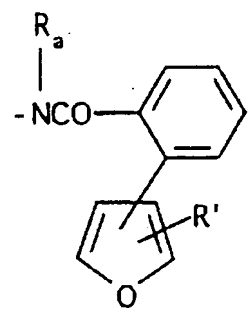
,


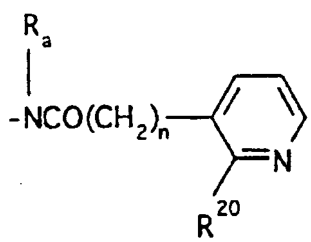
,

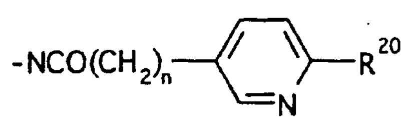
 ,

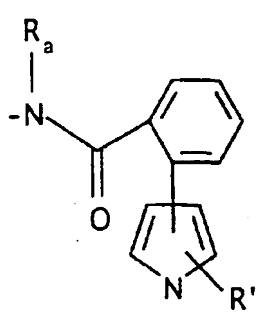
 ,

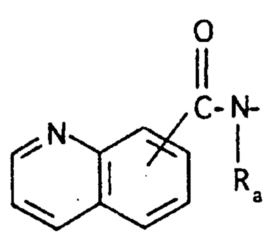
 ,

 ,

 ,

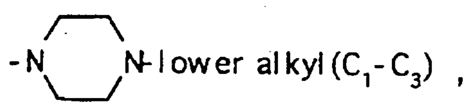






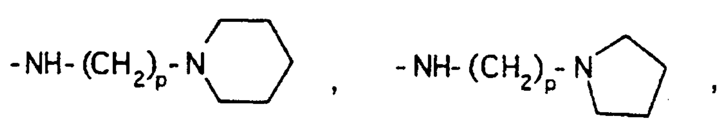
q is 1 or 2;

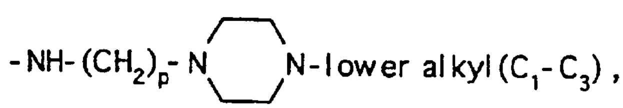
wherein n is 0 or 1;
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

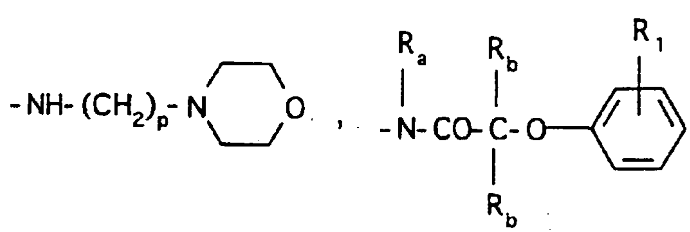


$-NH-(CH_2)_p-NH$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,



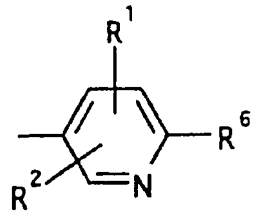




and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

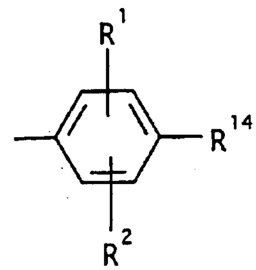
Within preferred group V above are the following preferred sub-groups 1 and 2 of compounds:

1. wherein Ar is:



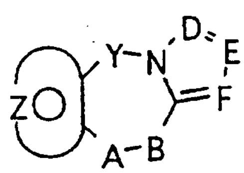
wherein R^1, R^2 and R^6 are defined in preferred group V above;

2. wherein Ar is:



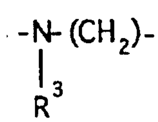
wherein R^1, R^2 and R^{14} are defined in preferred group V above.

Preferred group VI. Among the preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

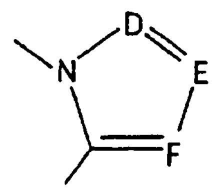
A-B is



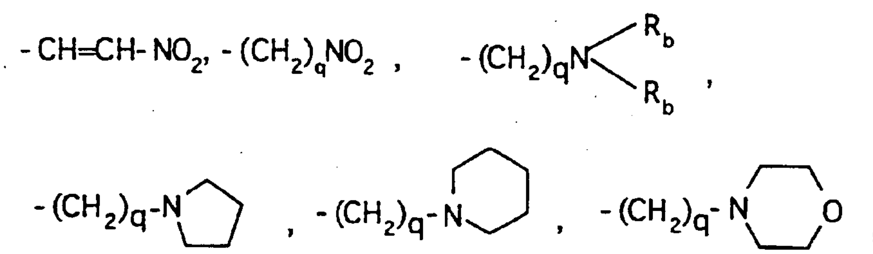
and the moiety:

represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

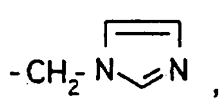
the moiety:



is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from



$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-(CH_2)_qOH$,

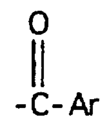


-CHO, and (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

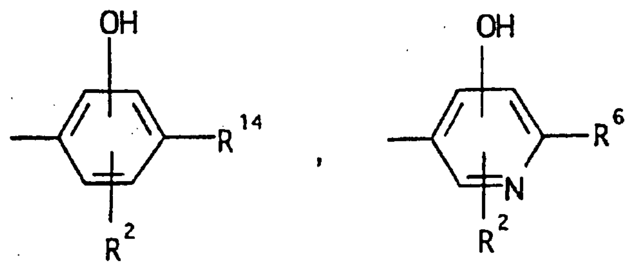
q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

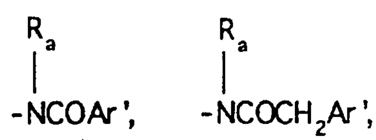
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

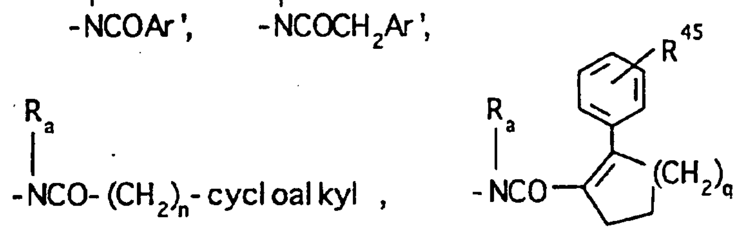


wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

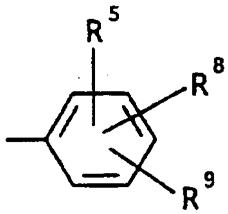
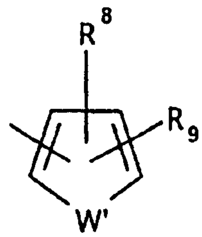
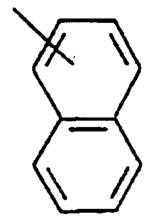


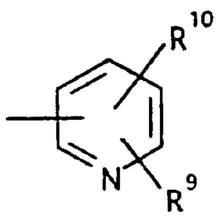
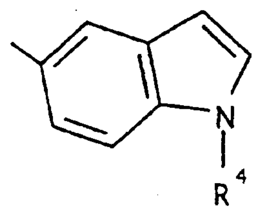
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:





Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

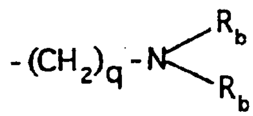
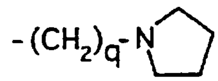
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]2, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

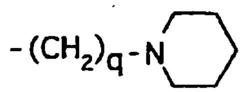
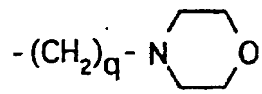
$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3) \quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

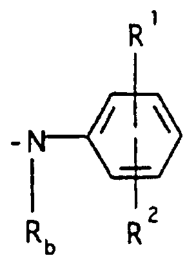
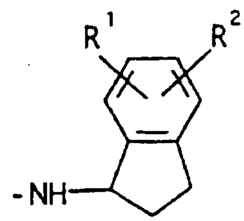
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

 ,  ,

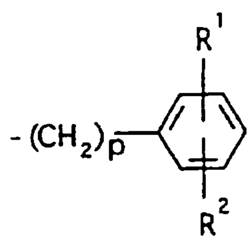
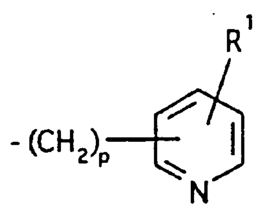
 ,  ,

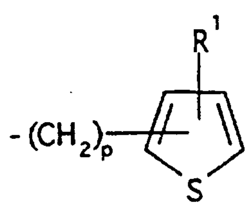
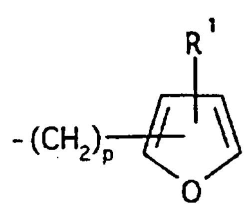
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

-X-R^7,  , 

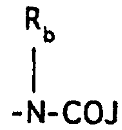
wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

 ,  ,

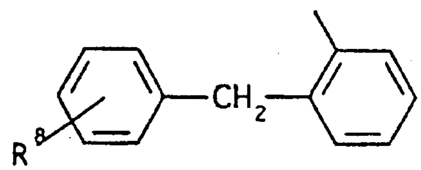
 , 

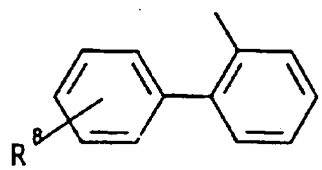
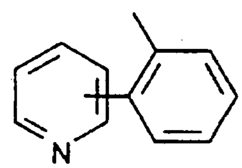
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined;

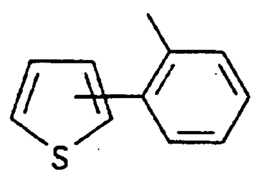
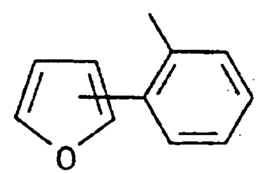
(c) a moiety of the formula:



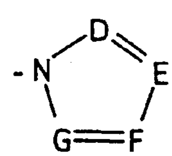
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:

 ,

 ,  ,

 , 

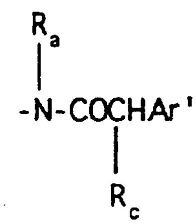
or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy,

-CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, -CO_2-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



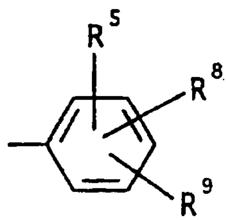
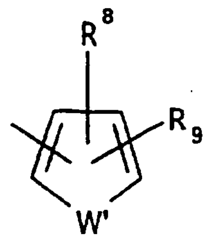
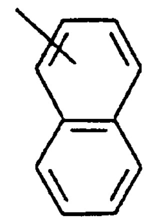
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

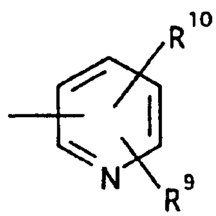
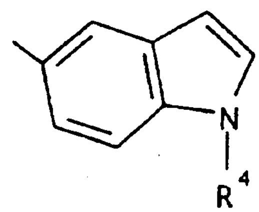
-O-C(=O)-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-S-(CH_2)_2-N(R_b)(R_b)$, $-NH(CH_2)_q-CON(R_b)(R_b)$,

$-NH(CH_2)_q-N(R_b)(R_b)$, $-O-(CH_2)_2N(R_b)(R_b)$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

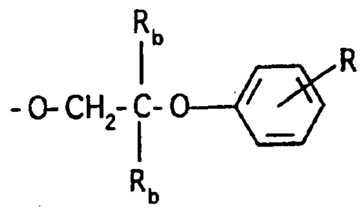
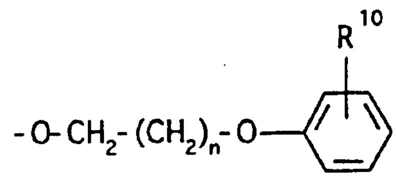
$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

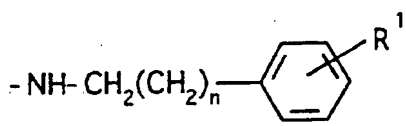
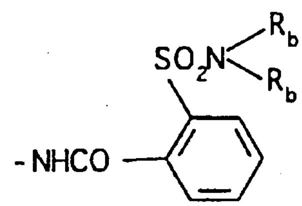
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

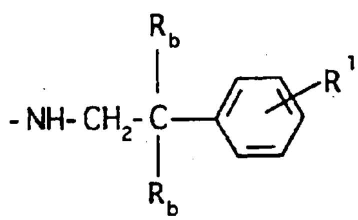
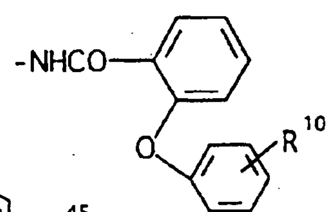
R^{14} is

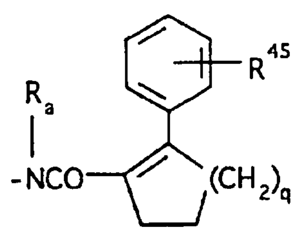
-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

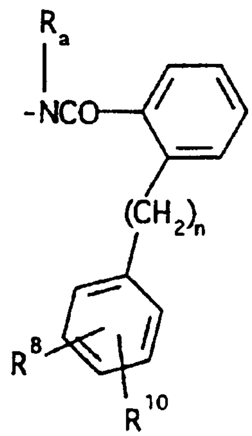
 ,  ,

-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

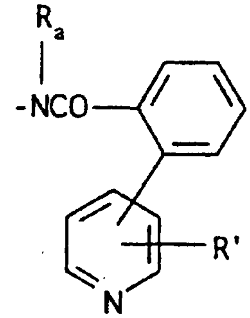
 , 

 , 

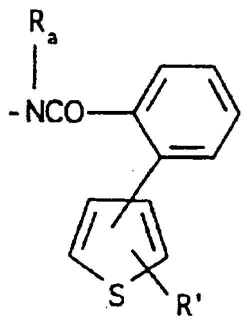
 ,



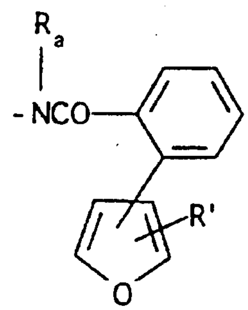
,



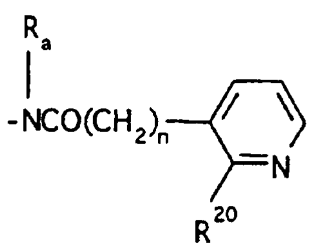
,



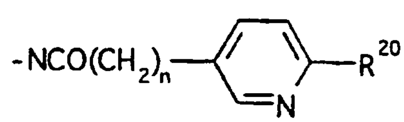
,

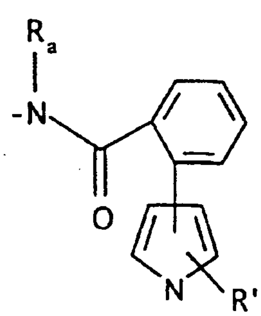


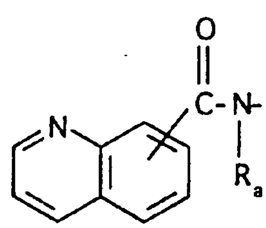
,



,

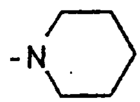
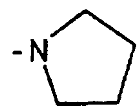
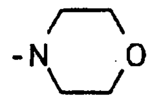


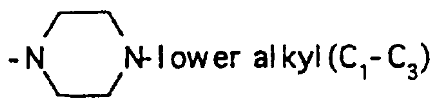




q is 1 or 2;

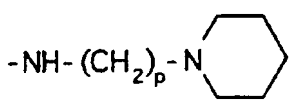
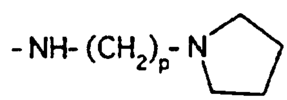
wherein n is 0 or 1;
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, -NH(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, -N-[(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl]$_2$,

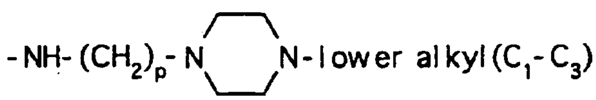
 ,  ,  ,

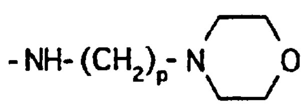
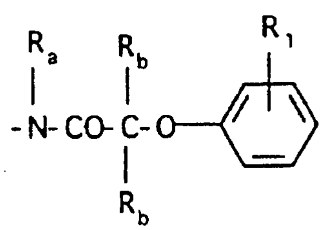
 ,

-NH-$(CH_2)_p$-NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

-NH-$(CH_2)_p$-N[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$,

 ,  ,

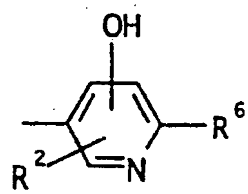
 ,

 , 

and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

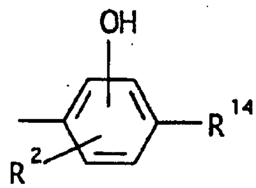
Within preferred group VI above are the following preferred sub-groups 1 and 2 of compounds:

1. wherein Ar is:



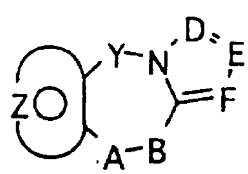
and R^2 and R^6 are defined in preferred group VI above;

2. wherein Ar is:



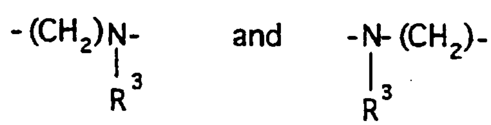
and R^2 and R^{14} are as defined in preferred group VI above.

Preferred group VII. Among the preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

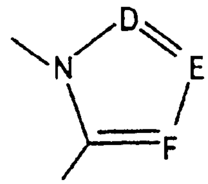
A-B is a moiety selected from



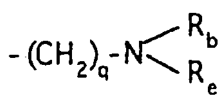
and the moiety:

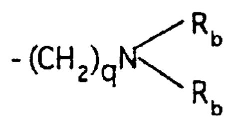
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

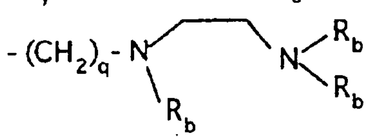
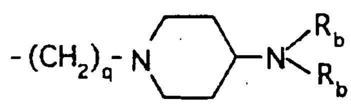
the moiety:

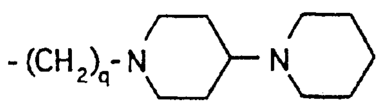
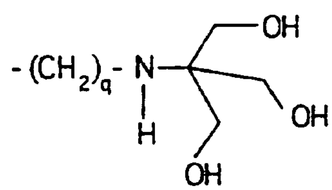


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from ,
$-CH=CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,



 ,

,  ,  ,

 ,  ;

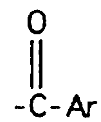
q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

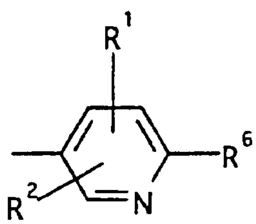
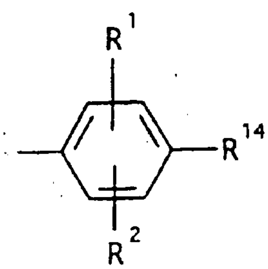
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;

R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



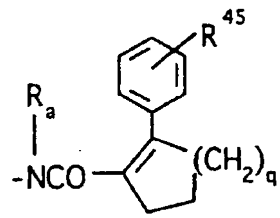
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

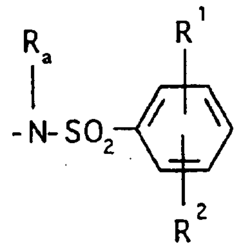
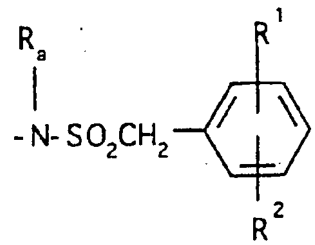
 , 

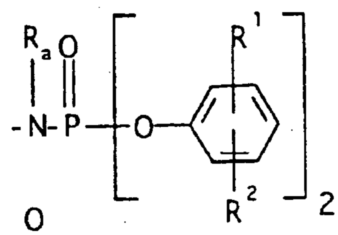
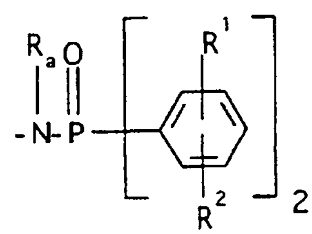
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

$-N(R_a)COAr'$, $-N(R_a)COCH_2Ar'$, $-N(R_a)CON(R_b)Ar'$,

$-N(R_a)CO-(CH_2)_n$-cycloalkyl ,




,

,


,

,

$-NH-C(=O)-O$-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)$-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

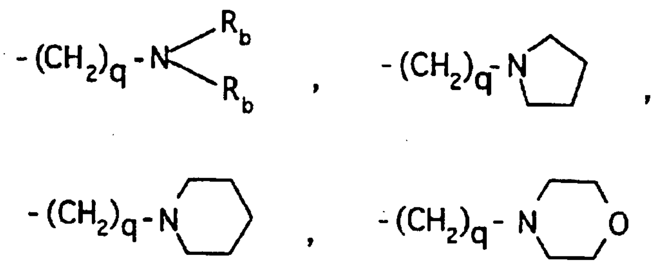
$-NHSO_2$-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-O$-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

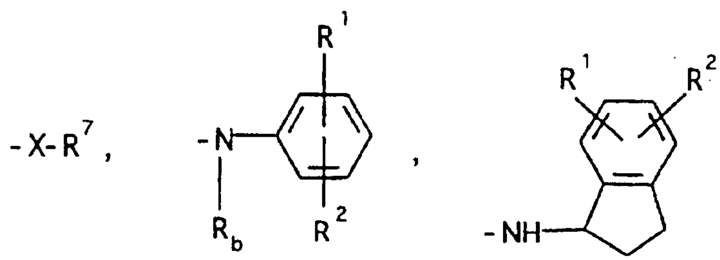
$-NH-C(=O)$-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NHSO_2$-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

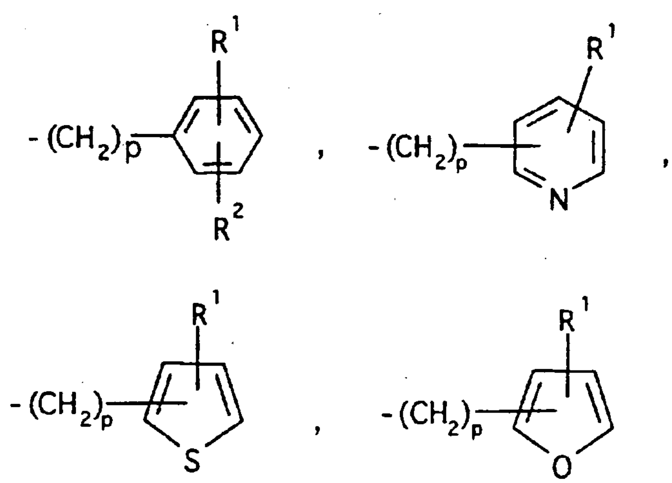
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,



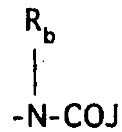
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;
(b) moieties of the formula:



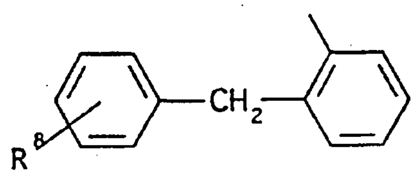
wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

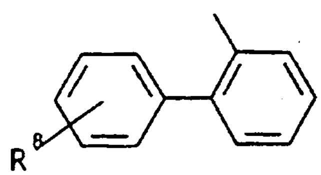
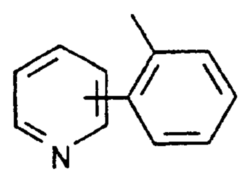


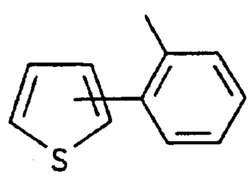
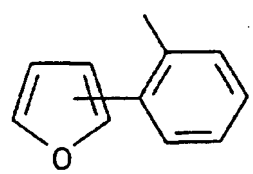
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined;
(c) a moiety of the formula:



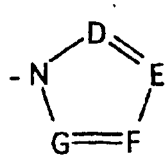
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:

 ,

 ,  ,

 , 

or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$\begin{array}{l} R_a \\ | \\ -N-COCHAr' \\ \quad\quad\;\; | \\ \quad\quad\;\; R_c \end{array}$$

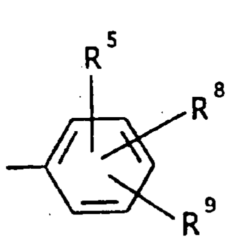
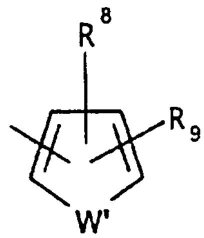
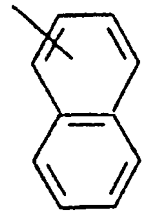
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

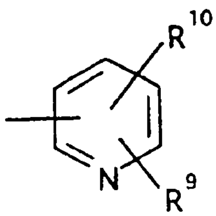
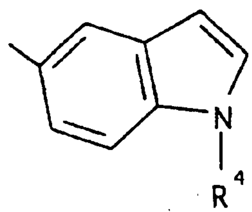
$$\begin{array}{l} \quad\;\; O \\ \quad\;\; \| \\ -O-C-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3) \end{array}, \quad -S-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),$$

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix}, \quad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix},$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix}, \quad -O-(CH_2)_2N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

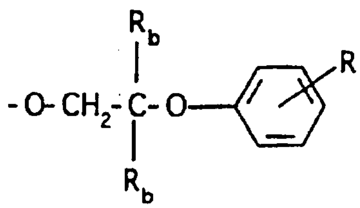
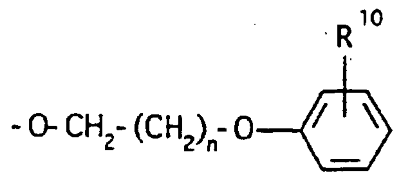
$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

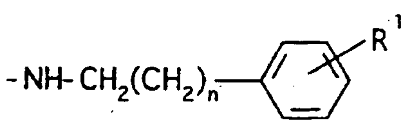
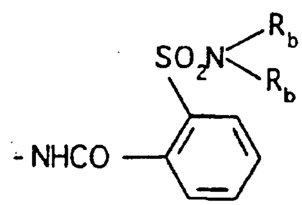
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

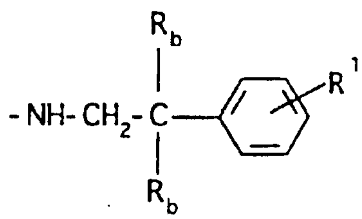
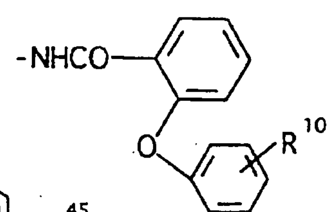
R^{14} is

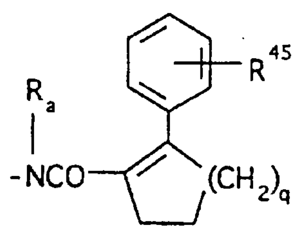
-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

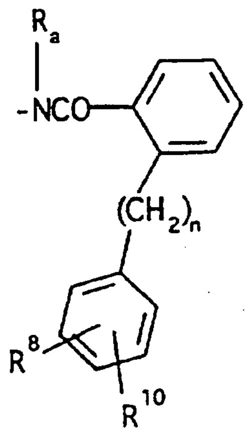
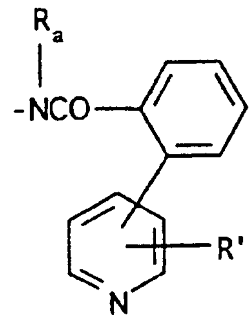
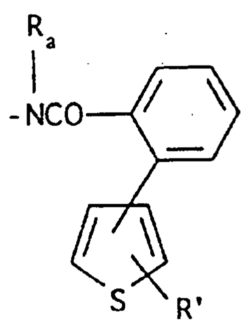
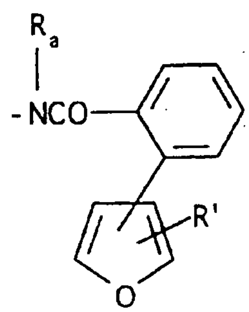
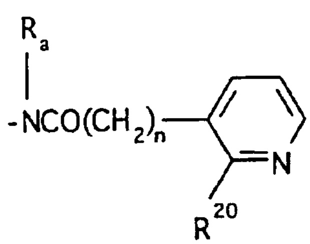
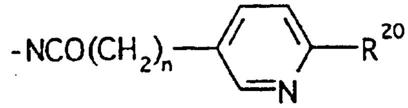

,

,

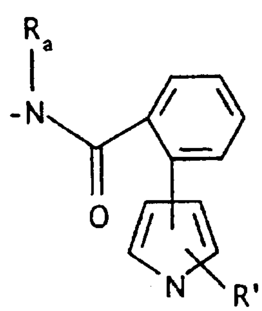
-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

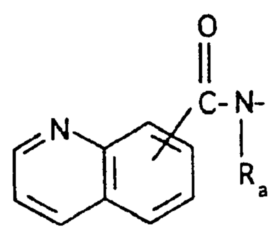

,



,



,


,

,

,

,

,


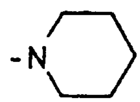
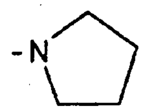
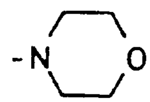


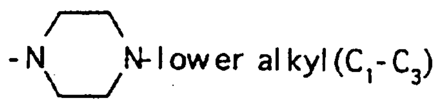

;

q is 1 or 2;

wherein n is 0 or 1;

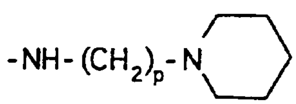
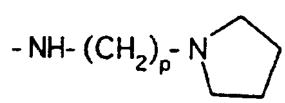
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1$-C_3)lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1$-C_3)lower alkyl$]_2$,

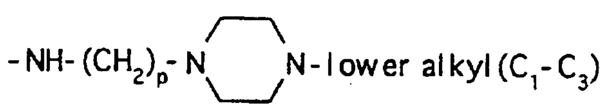
 ,  ,  ,

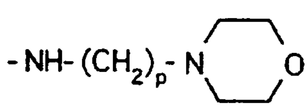
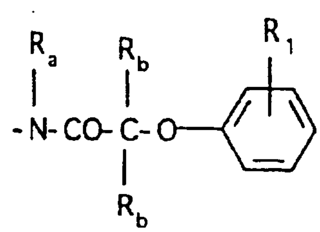
 ,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$N[lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,

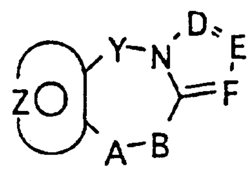
 ,  ,

 ,

 , 

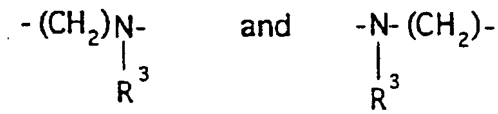
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

Preferred group VIII. Among the more preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

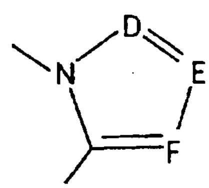
A-B is a moiety selected from



and the moiety:

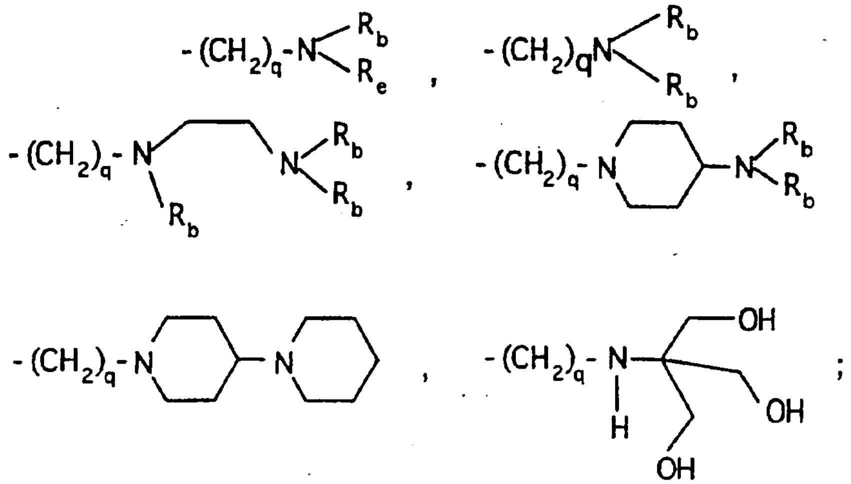
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from $(C_1\text{-}C_3)$lower alkyl, halogen, amino, $(C_1\text{-}C_3)$lower alkoxy or $(C_1\text{-}C_3)$lower alkylamino;

the moiety:



is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D,is carbon and E and F are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from

$-CH{=}CH{-}NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,



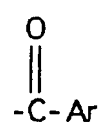
q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

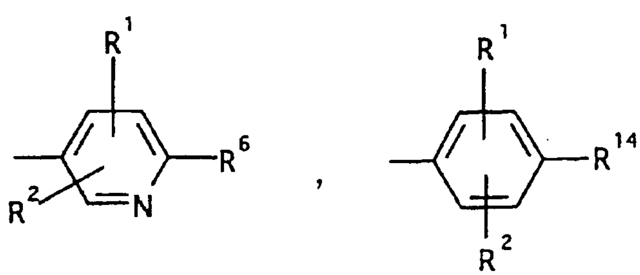
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;

R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);

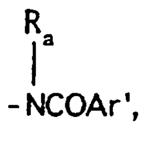
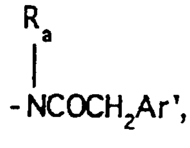
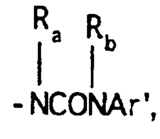
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

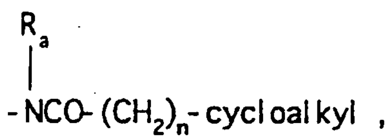
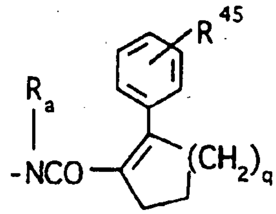


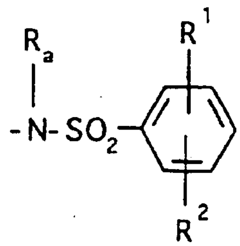
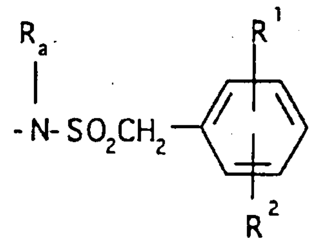
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

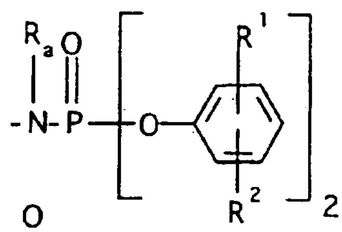
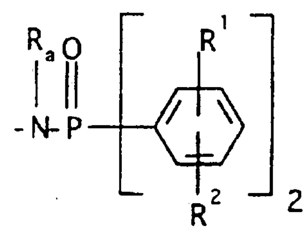


R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

,
,
,

,


,
,

,
,

-NH-C(=O)-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

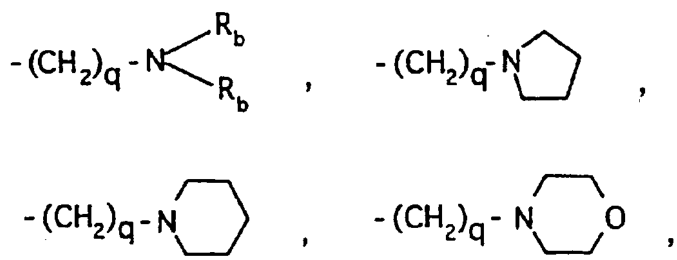
-$NHSO_2$-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-O-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

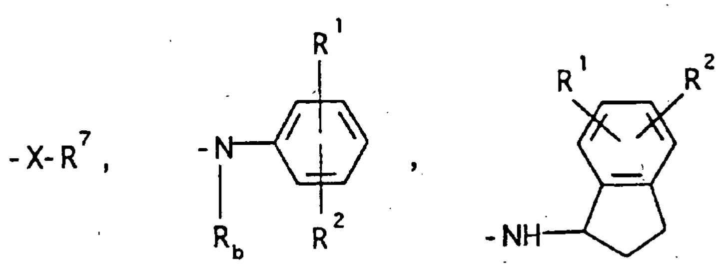
-$NHSO_2$-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

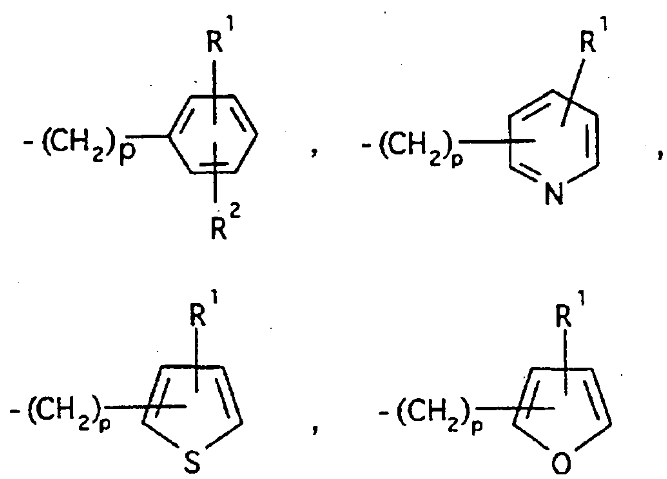


$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

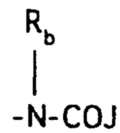
(b) moieties of the formula:



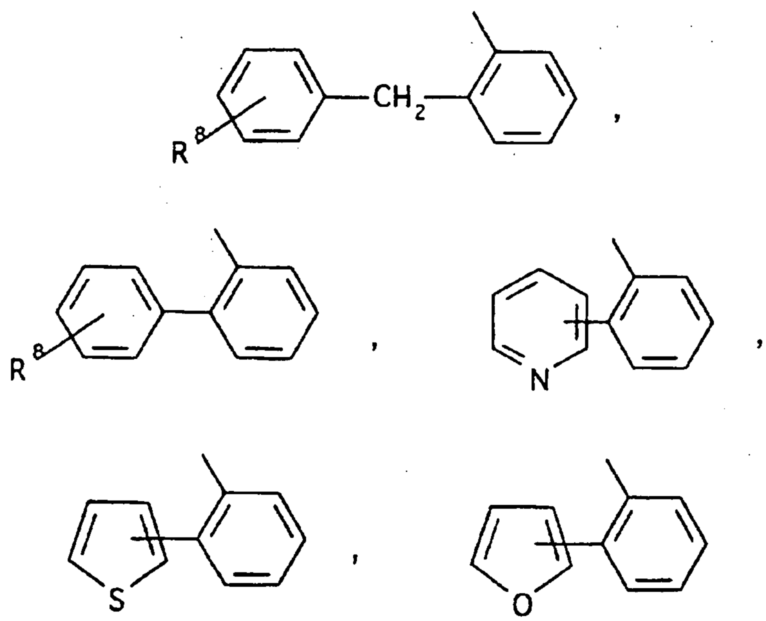
wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),



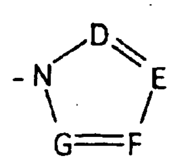
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:



or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$-N(R_a)-COCH(R_c)Ar'$$

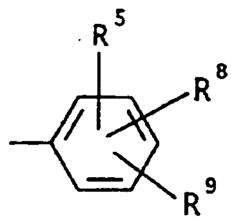
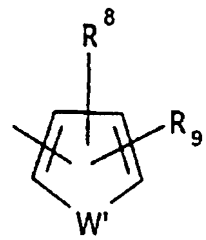
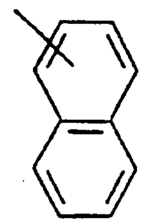
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

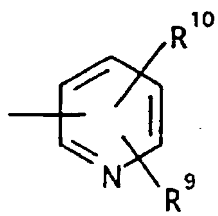
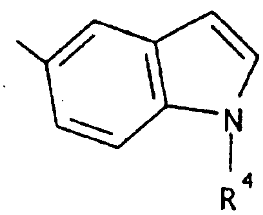
$$-O-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),\quad -S-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),$$

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix},\quad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix},$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix},\quad -O-(CH_2)_2N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

,
,
,

, and


wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

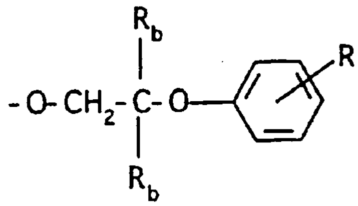
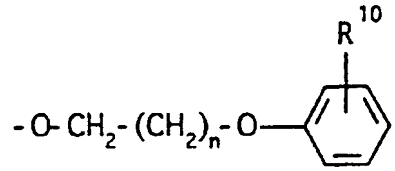
$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

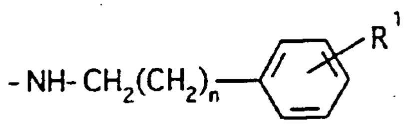
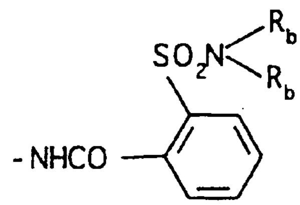
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

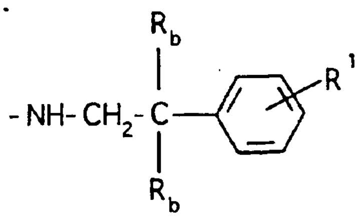
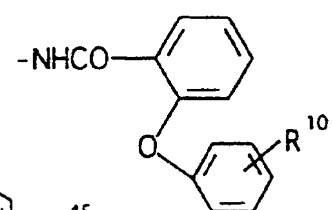
R^{14} is

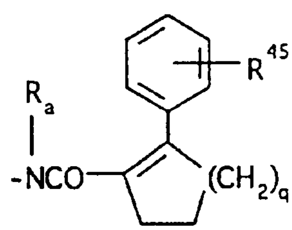
-O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

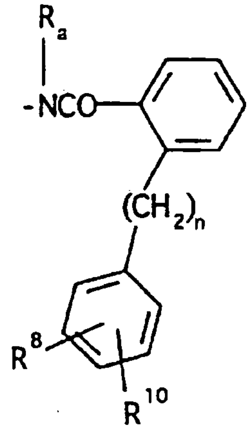
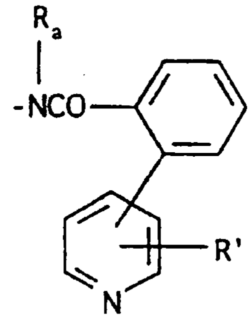
,
,

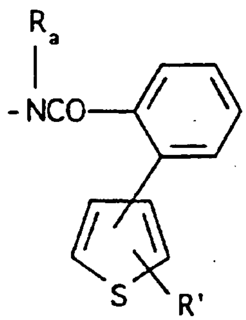
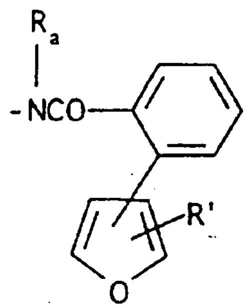
-NH lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

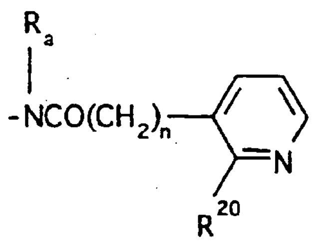
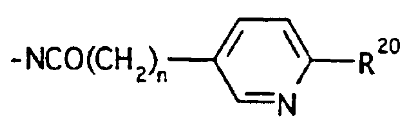
,


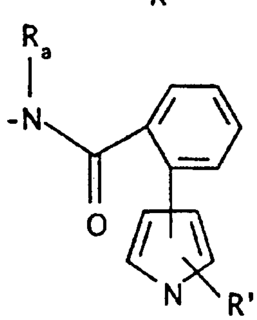
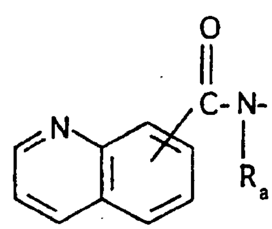
,


,

 ,  ,

 ,  ,

 , 

  ;

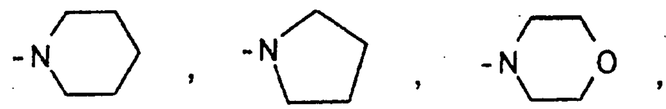
q is 1 or 2;

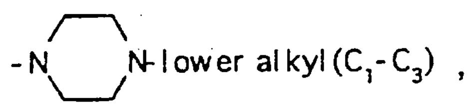
wherein n is 0 or 1;

R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

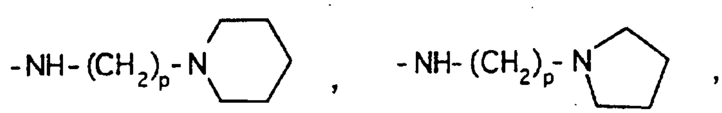
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, -NH(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, -N-[(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl]$_2$,

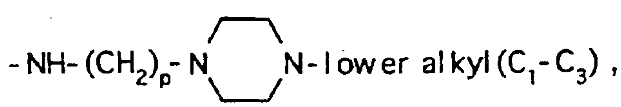


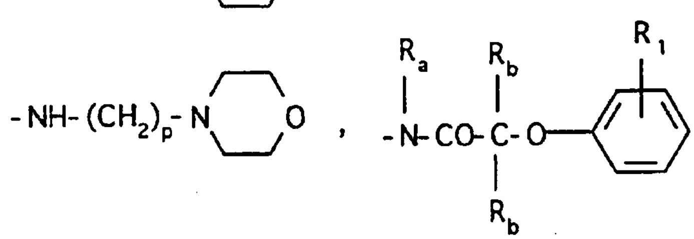


-NH-$(CH_2)_p$-NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

-NH-$(CH_2)_p$-N[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$,







and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

Among the more preferred compounds of this invention are those selected from:
[4-(3-Dimethylaminomethyl-3-hydroxy-5H,11H-pyrrolo [2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

[4-(3-[1,4']Bipiperidinyl-1'-ylmethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-chloro-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

(3-Chloro-4-(3-[(2-hydroxy-1,1-bis-hydroxymethyl-ethylamino)-methyl]-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzo-diazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl)-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

[3-chloro-4-(3-{[(2-dimethylamino-ethyl)-methyll-amino]-methyl}-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

(3-chloro-4-[3-(4-dimethylamino-piperidin-1-ylmethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

N-[3-Chloro-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzo-diazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyrrol-1-yl-benzamide.

Quinoline-8-carboxylic acid [4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-phenyl]-amide.

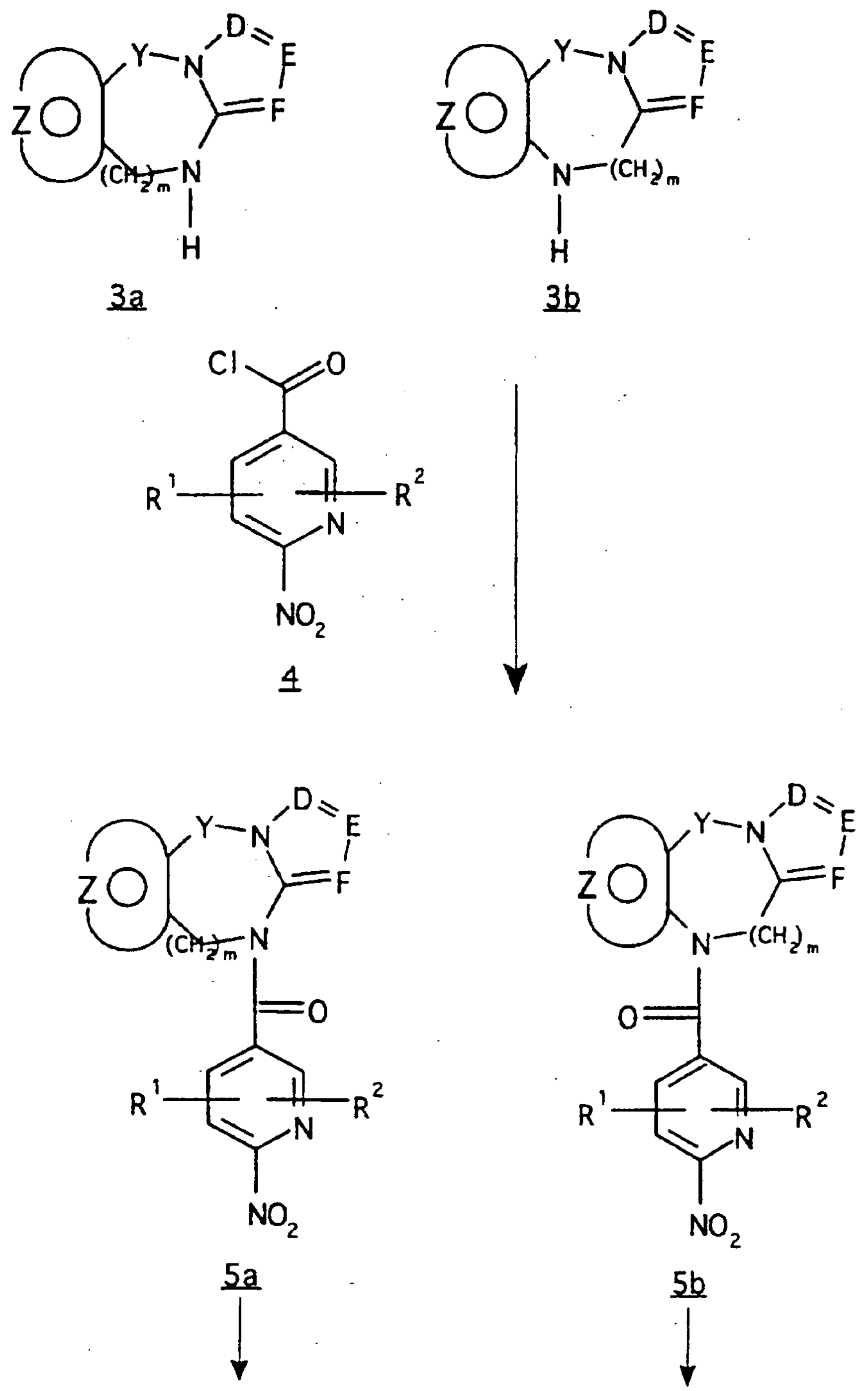
[3-Chloro-4-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarboxylic acid amide.

Biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid (3-chloro-4-[3-(2-nitro-ethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl)-amide.

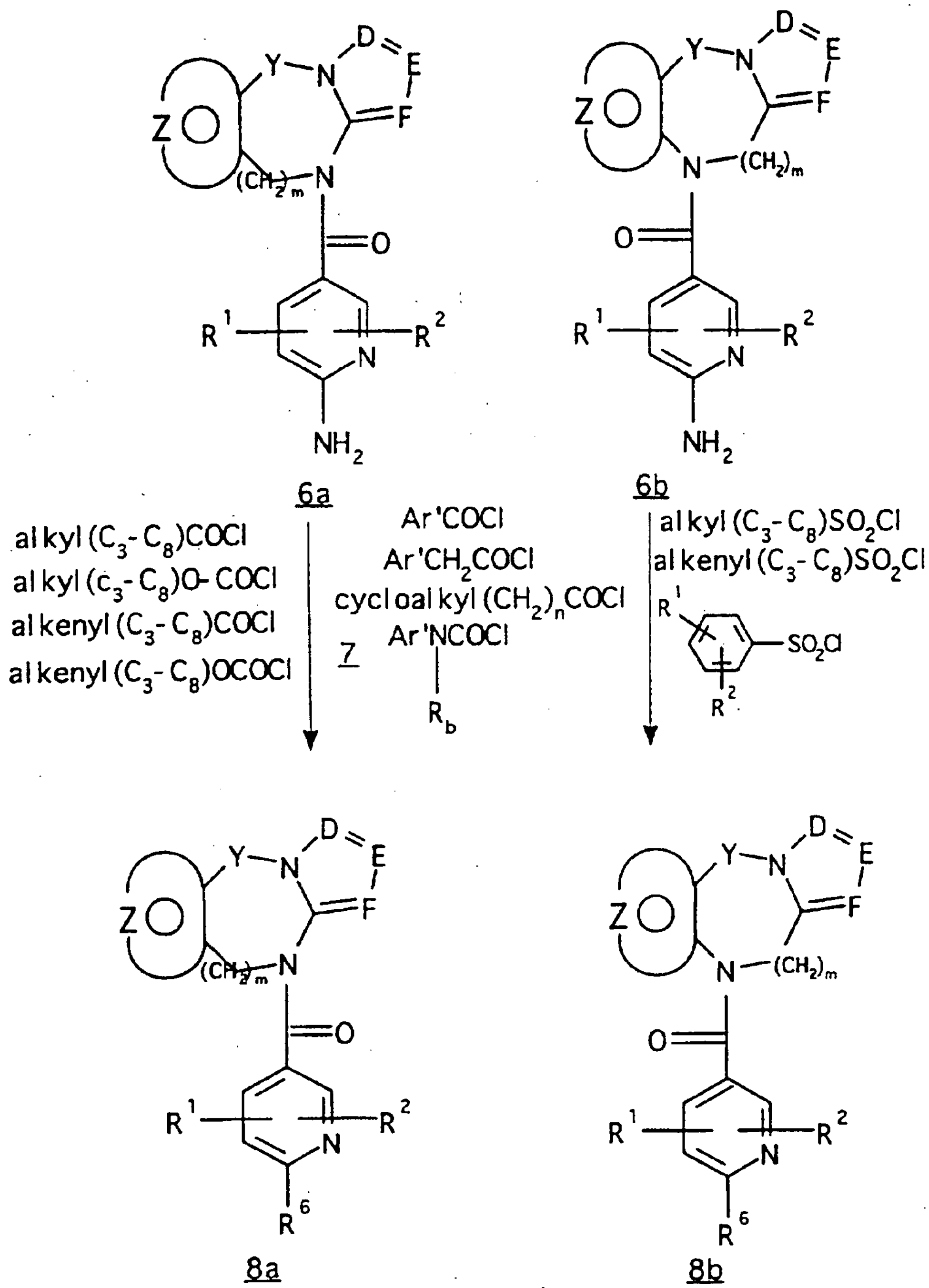
Compounds of this invention may be prepared as shown in Scheme I by reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 3a and 3b with a substituted or unsubstituted 6-nitropyridine-3-carbonyl chloride 4 to give the intermediates 5a and 5b. Reduction of the nitro group in intermediates 5a and 5b gives the 6-aminopyridine derivatives 6a and 6b. The reduction of the nitro group in intermediates 5a and 5b may be carried out under catalytic reduction conditions (hydrogen-Pd/C; Pd/C-hydrazine-ethanol) or under chemical reduction conditions ($SnCl_2$-ethanol; Zn-acetic acid $TiCl_3$) and related reduction conditions known in the art for converting a nitro group to an amino group. The conditions for conversion of the nitro group to the amino group are chosen on the basis of compatability with the preservation of other functional groups in the molecule.

Reaction of compounds of Formula 6a and 6b with aroyl chloride or related activated aryl carboxylic acids in solvents such as chloroform, dichloromethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, toluene and the like in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine and diisopropylethylamine or pyridine and the like, affords the compunds 8a and 8b which are vasopressin antagonists.

Scheme 1



Scheme 1 (cont'd)

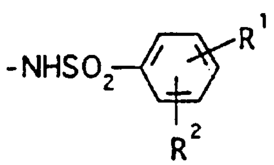


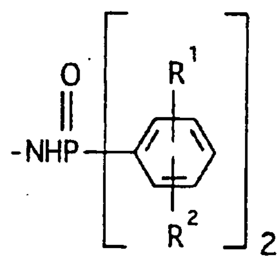
R_6 = NHCOAr'; $-NHCON(R_b)Ar'$; $-NHCO(CH_2)_n$cycloalkyl;

$-NHCOCH_2Ar'$, $-NHCO$alkyl(C_3-C_8), $-NHCO_2$alkyl(C_3-C_8),

$-NHCO$alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-NHCO_2$alkenyl(C_3-C_8),

$-NHSO_2$alkyl(C_3-C_8), $-NHSO_2$alkenyl(C_3-C_8),

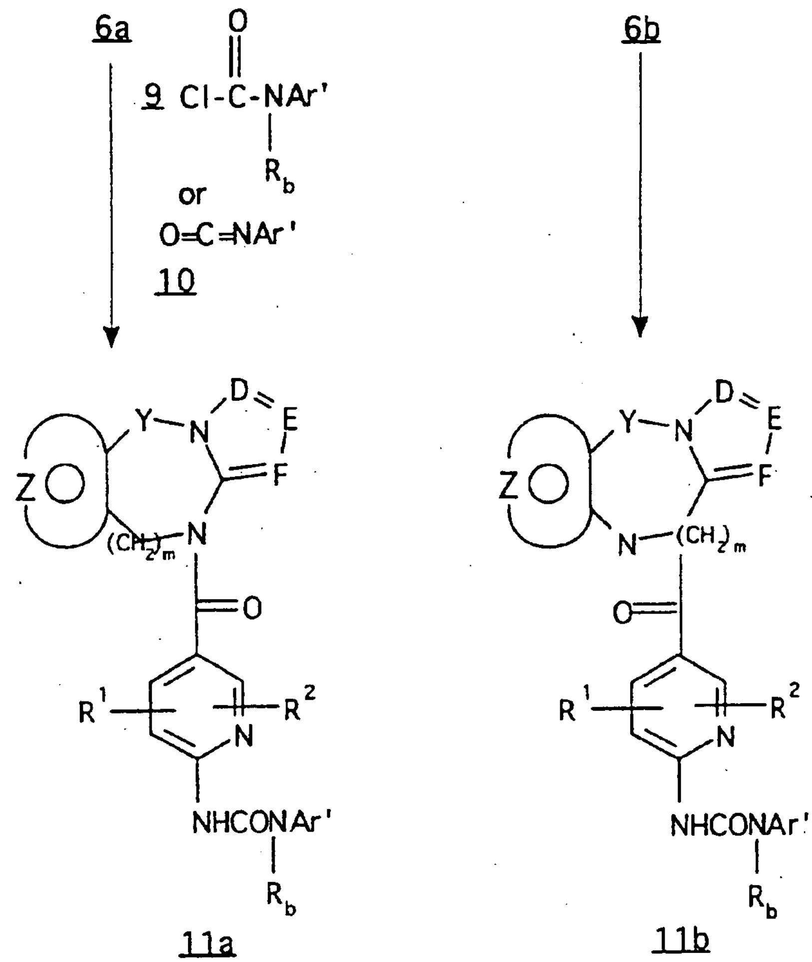


,


Reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 6a and 6b with either a carbamoyl derivative 9 or a isocyanate derivative 10 gives compounds (Scheme 2) of formula 11a and 11b which are vasopressin antagonists of Formula I wherein R^6 is

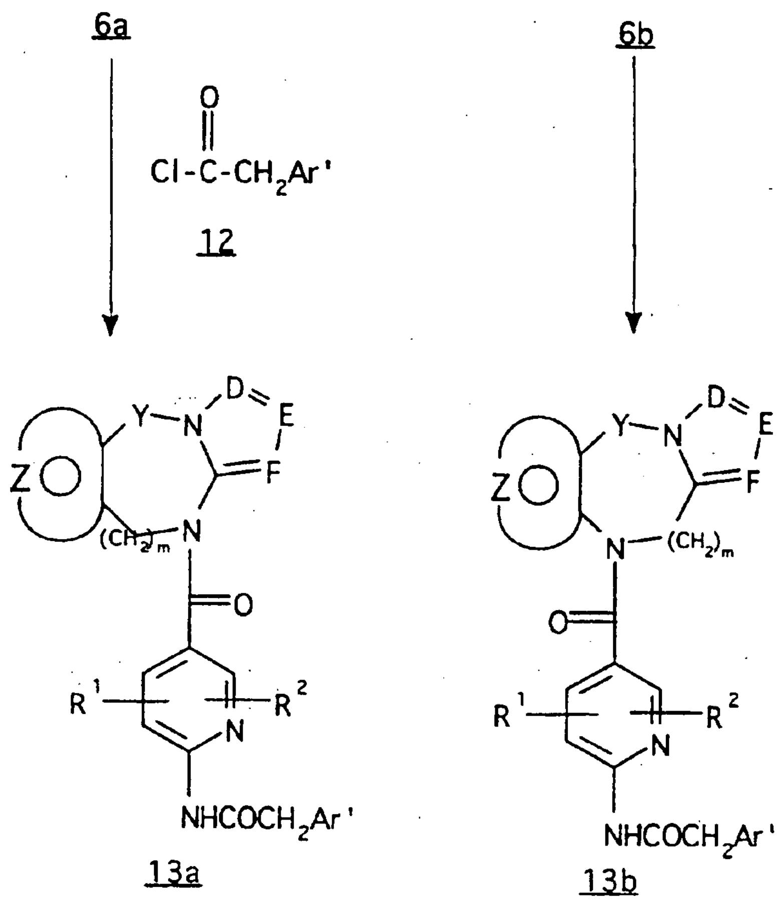
$-NHCON(R_b)Ar'$

Scheme 2

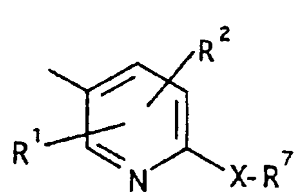


Reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 6a and 6b with arylacetic acids, activated as the acid chlorides 12, anhydrides, mixed anhydrides or activated with known activating reagents, gives compounds 13a and 13b (Scheme 3).

Scheme 3



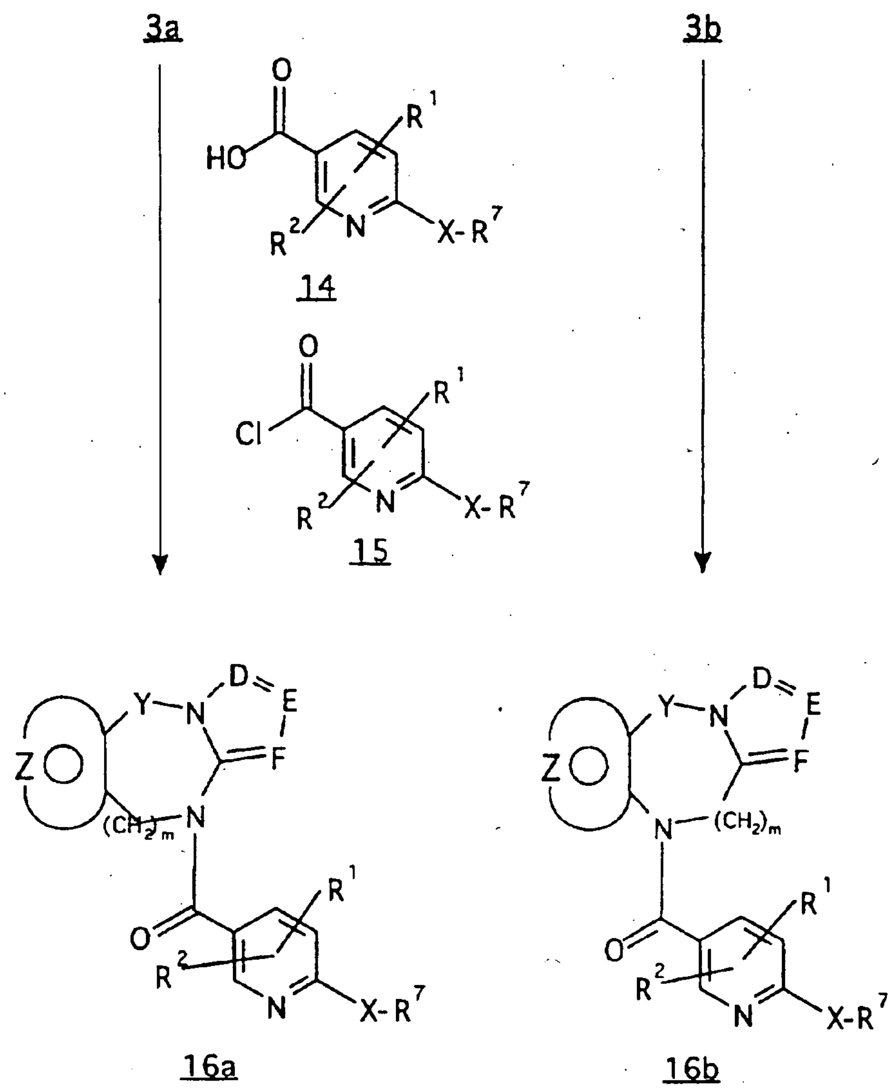
The compounds of Formula I wherein Y, A-B, Z, R^1, R^2 and R^3 are as defined and the Ar moiety of R^3 (-COAr) is



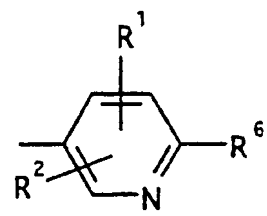
may be prepared, as shown in Scheme 4, by reacting an activated ester of the pyridine-3-carboxylic acid <u>14</u>

with tricyclic derivatives 3a and 3b. The pyridine-3-carboxylic acids 14 may be activated by preparing the anhydride, a mixed anhydride or reacting with diethyl cyanophosphonate, N,N-carbonyldiimidazole or related peptide coupling reagents. Alternatively, the acid chloride derivatives 15 may be prepared from the acid derivatives 14 and oxalyl chloride or thionyl chloride in an inert solvent. The solvent is removed and the derivative reacted with 3a or 3b at 0°C to 25°C in dichloromethane as solvent and a tertiary amine such as triethylamine as a base. The activating reagent for the pyridine-3-carboxylic acids 14 is chosen on the basis of its compatibility with other substituent groups and the reactivity of the activated derivative toward the tricyclic derivatives 3a and 3b to give the vasopressin antagonists 16a and 16b.

Scheme 4



Alternatively, the compounds of Formula I wherein Y, A-B, Z, R^1, R^2 and R^3 are as defined and the Ar moiety of R^3 (-COAr) is



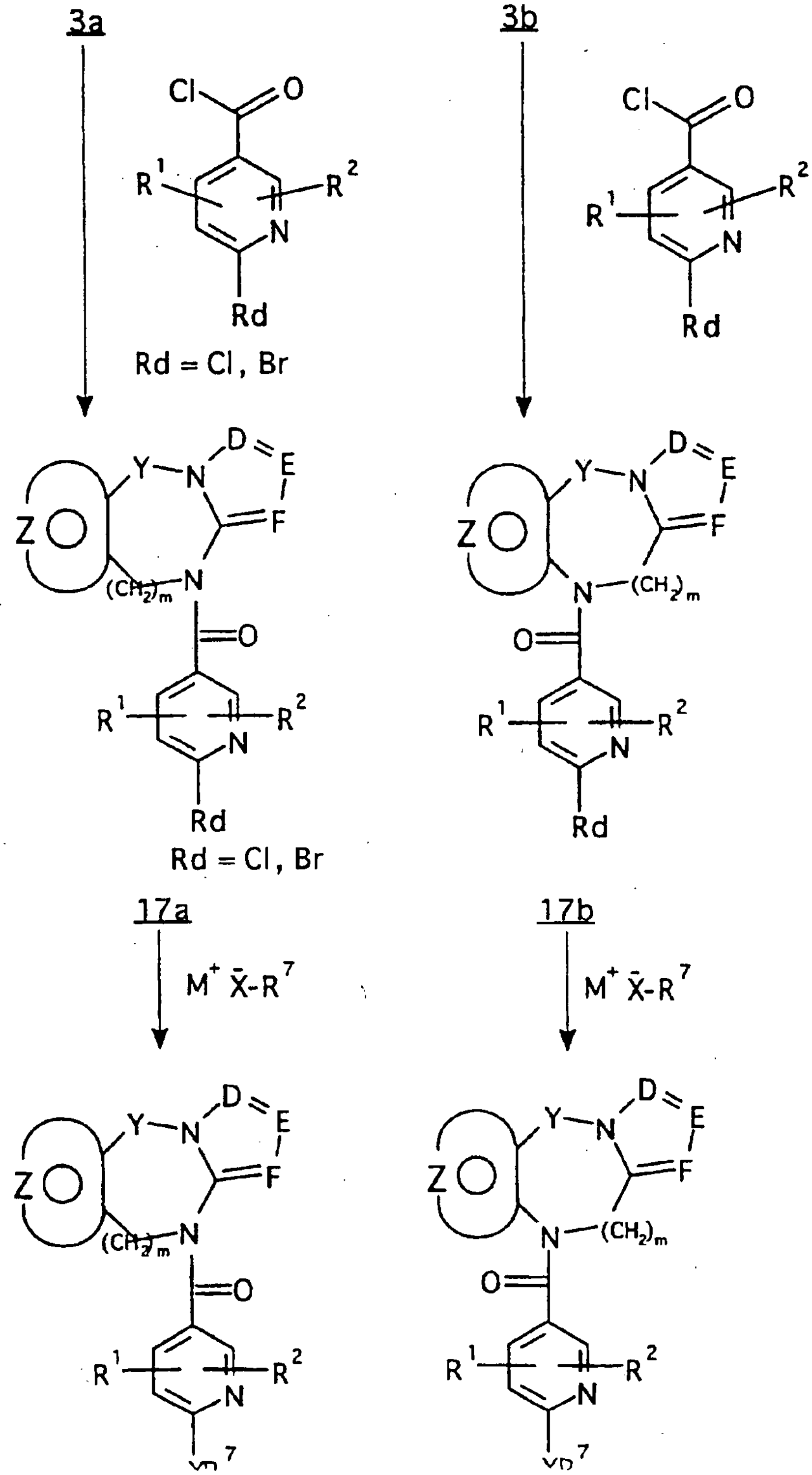
wherein R^6 is the moiety

$-X-R^7$ and X is S, NH, NCH_3

may be prepared as shown in Scheme 5 by first converting tricyclic derivatives 3a and 3b into the intermediates 17a and 17b and then reacting these intermediates with potassium, sodium, or lithium anions (R^7-X^-) to give the products 16a and 16b. The symbol M^+ is a metal cation derived from reacting a compound HXR^7 with a metal hydride (sodium or potassium hydride, for example) or LDA, n-butyl lithium, lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide and the like.

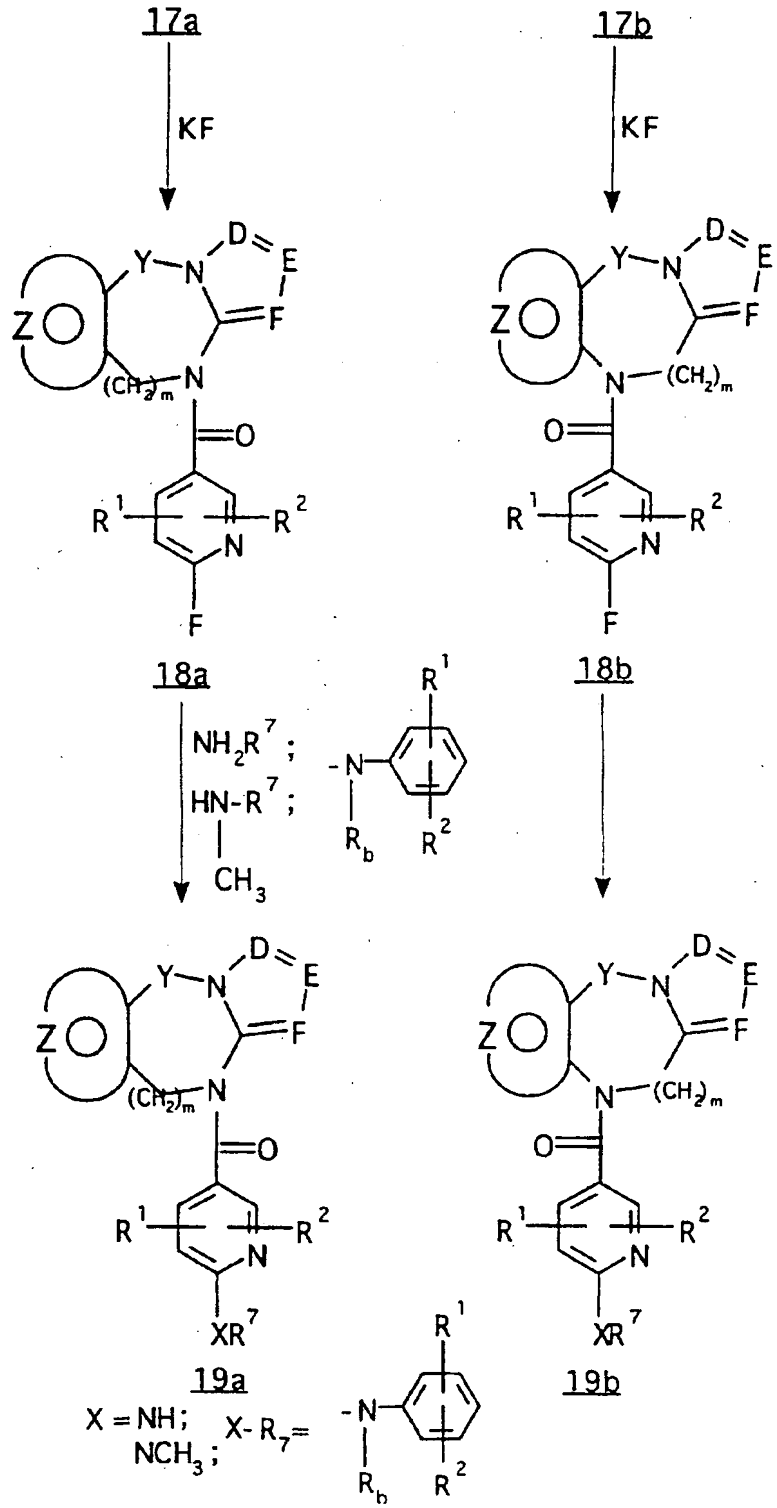
The reaction of intermediates 17a and 17b with the moieties R^7-NH_2 and R^7-NHCH_3 may also be carried without first forming the corresponding anions. Thus, heating intermediates 17a and 17b with excess R^7-NH_2 or R^7-NHCH_3 in an inert solvent or without solvent gives the products 16a and 16b wherein X is NH or NCH_3.

Scheme 5

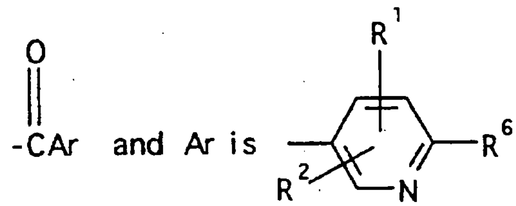


Alternatively, the intermediates 17a and 17b may be converted to the more reactive fluoride derivatives 18a and 18b as shown in Scheme 6. Reaction of the fluoride intermediates 18a and 18b with amines NH_2R^7 and CH_3NHR^7 gives the 6-aminonicotinoyl derivatives 19a and 19b.

Scheme 6



As an alternative method for synthesis of compounds of this invention as depicted in Formula I wherein Y, A-B, D, E, F and Z are as previously described and R^3 is

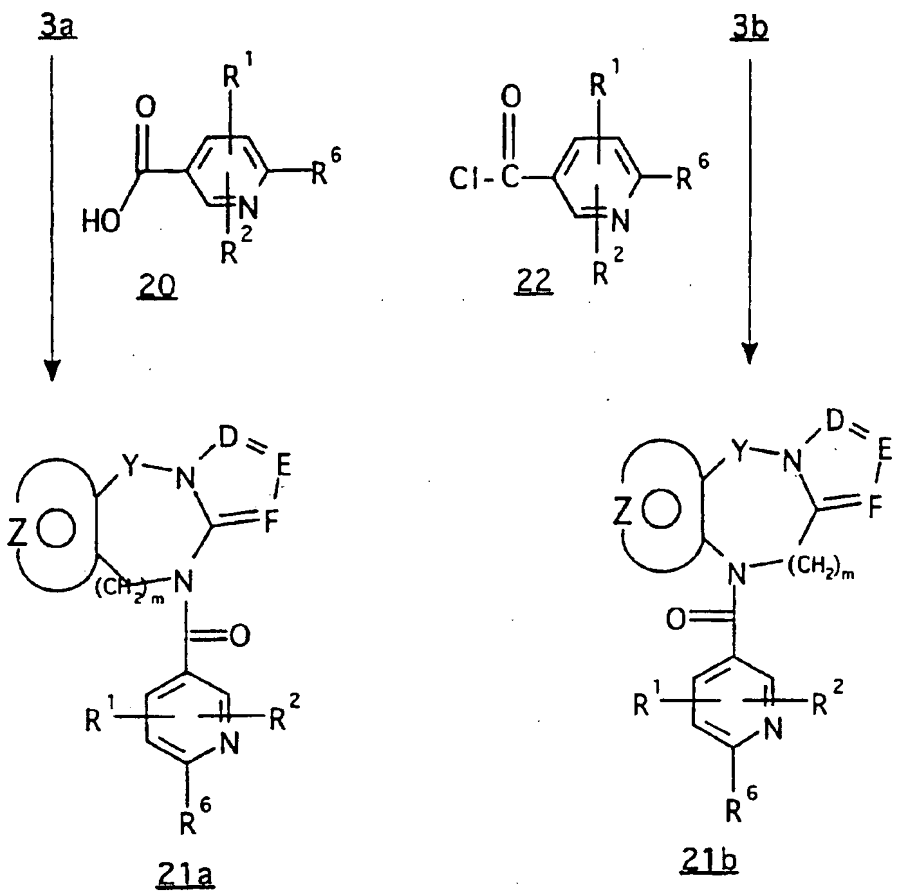


is the coupling of pyridinyl carboxylic acids 20 with the tricyclic derivatives 3a and 3b to give 21a and 21b.

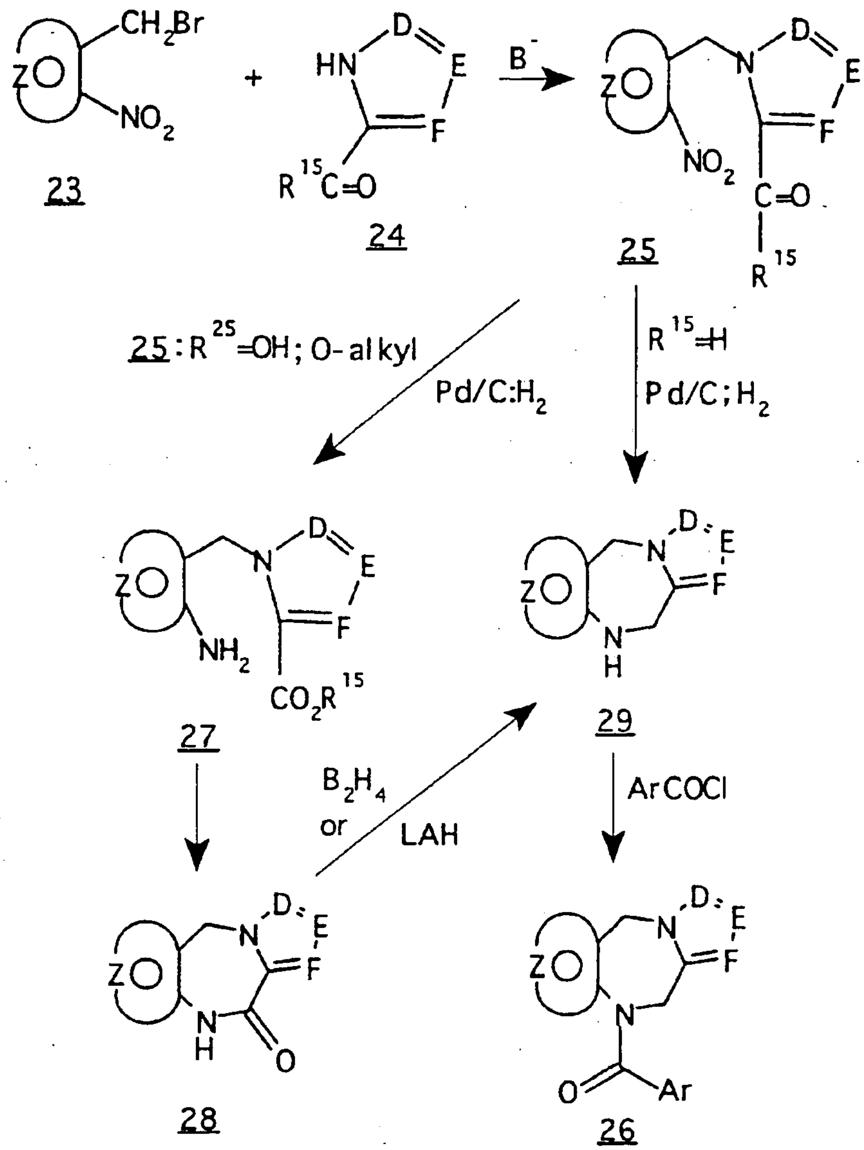
The pyridine carboxylic acids are activated for coupling by conversion to an acid chloride, bromide or anhydride or by first reacting with an activating reagent such as N,N-dicyclocarbodiimide, diethyl cyanophosphonate and related "peptide type" activating reagents. The method of activating the acids 20 for coupling to the tricyclic derivatives 3a and 3b is chosen on the basis of compatibility with other substituent groups in the molecule. The method of choice is the conversion of the 3-pyridinyl carboxylic acids 20 to the corresponding 3-pyridinylcarbonyl chlorides. The 3-pyridinylcarbonyl chlorides 22 may be prepared by standard procedures known in the art, such as reaction with thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride and the like. The coupling reaction is carried out in solvents such as halogenated hydrocarbons, toluene, xylene, tetrahydrofuran, or dioxane in the presence of pyridine or tertiary bases such as triethylamine and the like (Scheme 7). Alternatively, the 3-pyridinylcarbonyl chlorides 22, prepared from the carboxylic acids 20, may be reacted with derivatives 3a and 3b in pyridine with or without 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine.

In general, when the 3-pyridinyl carboxylic acids 20 are activated with "peptide type" activating reagents, higher temperatures are required than when the 3-pyridinylcarbonyl chlorides are used.

Scheme 7



Scheme 8



The starting materials 3a and 3b in the foregoing Schemes 1-7 may be prepared as follows. In accordance with Scheme 8, alkylation of heterocycles of structural type 24 with an alkylating moiety such as 23 gives intermediates 25. The heterocycle 24 may contain an α-

carboxaldehyde function or an α-carboxylic and/or ester function as shown in Scheme 8. Where the intermediate 25 (R^{15}=H) contains an α-carboxaldehyde group, hydrogenation with palladium-on-carbon gives reduction and ring closure in one step to give 29.

In derivatives 25 where R^{15} is an α-carboxylic and/or an α-carboxylic ester function, the intermediate amino acid derivative 27 is first isolated and then ring closed. The ring closure of derivatives 27 may be carried out by heating or by activation of the acid function (27:R^{15}=H) for ring closure. The cyclic lactams 28 are conveniently reduced with diborane or lithium aluminum hydride to give intermediates 29. Reaction of tricyclic derivatives 29 with aroyl chlorides (ArCOCl), where Ar is as hereinbefore defined, gives diazepines 26.

Tricyclic derivatives of structural type 36 may be prepared as shown in Scheme 9. Formylation of 32 under known conditions in the literature, such as Vilsmeier formylation, gives intermediates 35 which on reduction and ring closure affords tricyclics 37.

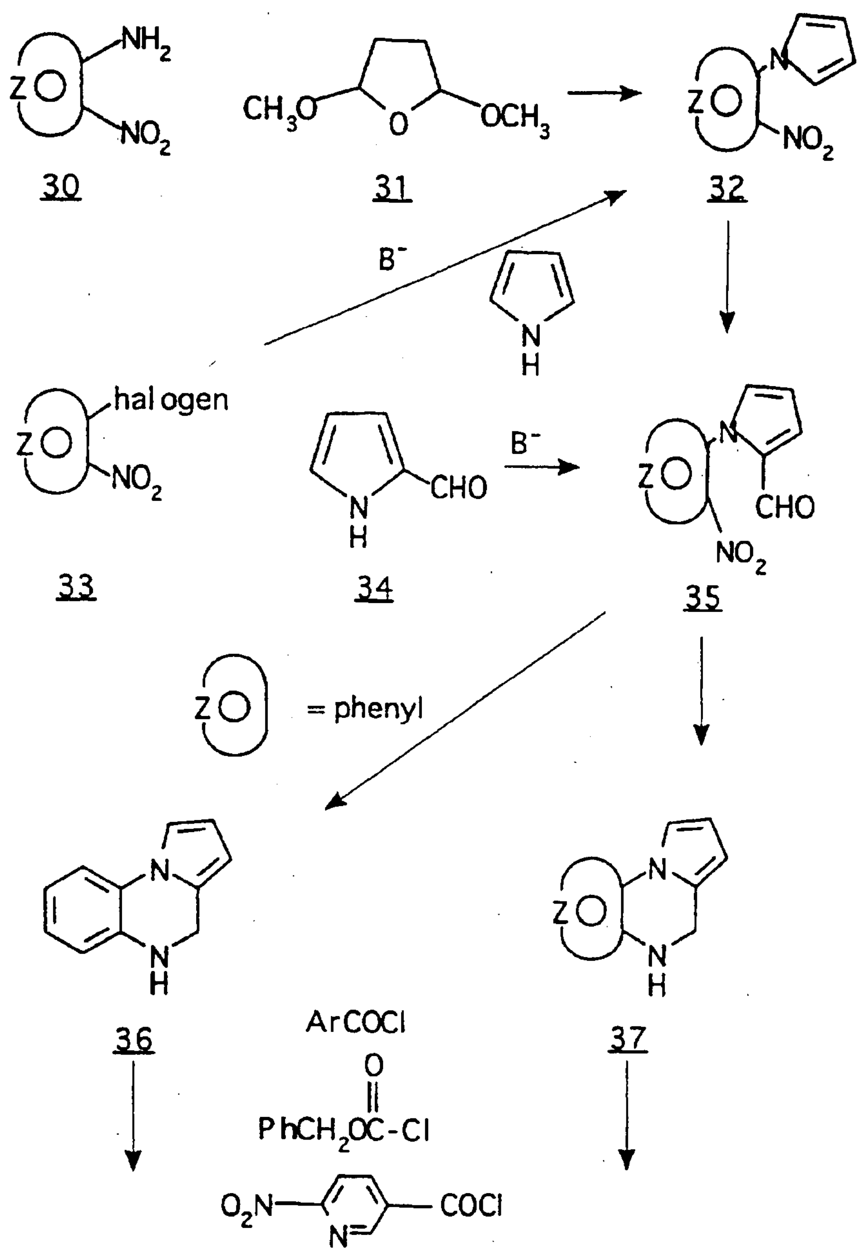
Where the ring containing the symbol Z is a substituted or unsubstituted phenyl group, the procedure gives 4,5-dihydropyrrolo[1,2-a]-quinoxalines 36. These derivatives 36 and 37 may be reacted with aroyl chlorides (ArCOCl) wherein Ar is as previously defined or with a substituted or unsubstituted 6-nitropyridine-3-carbonyl chloride or with a nitrogen protecting group, such as benzyloxycarbonyl chloride to give compounds 38 and 39. The compounds 38 and 39 may be reacted with chlorine, bromine or halogenating reagents such as N-chlorosuccinimide, N-bromosuccinimide and the like to give compounds 40 and 41 wherein R^{17} is a halogen atom. The derivatives 38 and 39 may be formylated and acetylated to give products 40 and 41 wherein R^{17} is a

CHO or a $-COCH_3$ group. Halogenation, formylation and acetylation of derivatives 36 gives 1-substituted 4,5-dihydropyrrolo[1,2-a]quinoxalines. The derivatives 38, 39, 40 and 41 wherein R^{16} is a substituted or unsubstituted 6-nitro-3-pyridinylcarbonyl group are reduced to give the 6-amino-3-pyridinylcarbonyl derivatives 42d and 43d which are reacted with reagents Ar'COCl, $Ar'CH_2COCl$ or

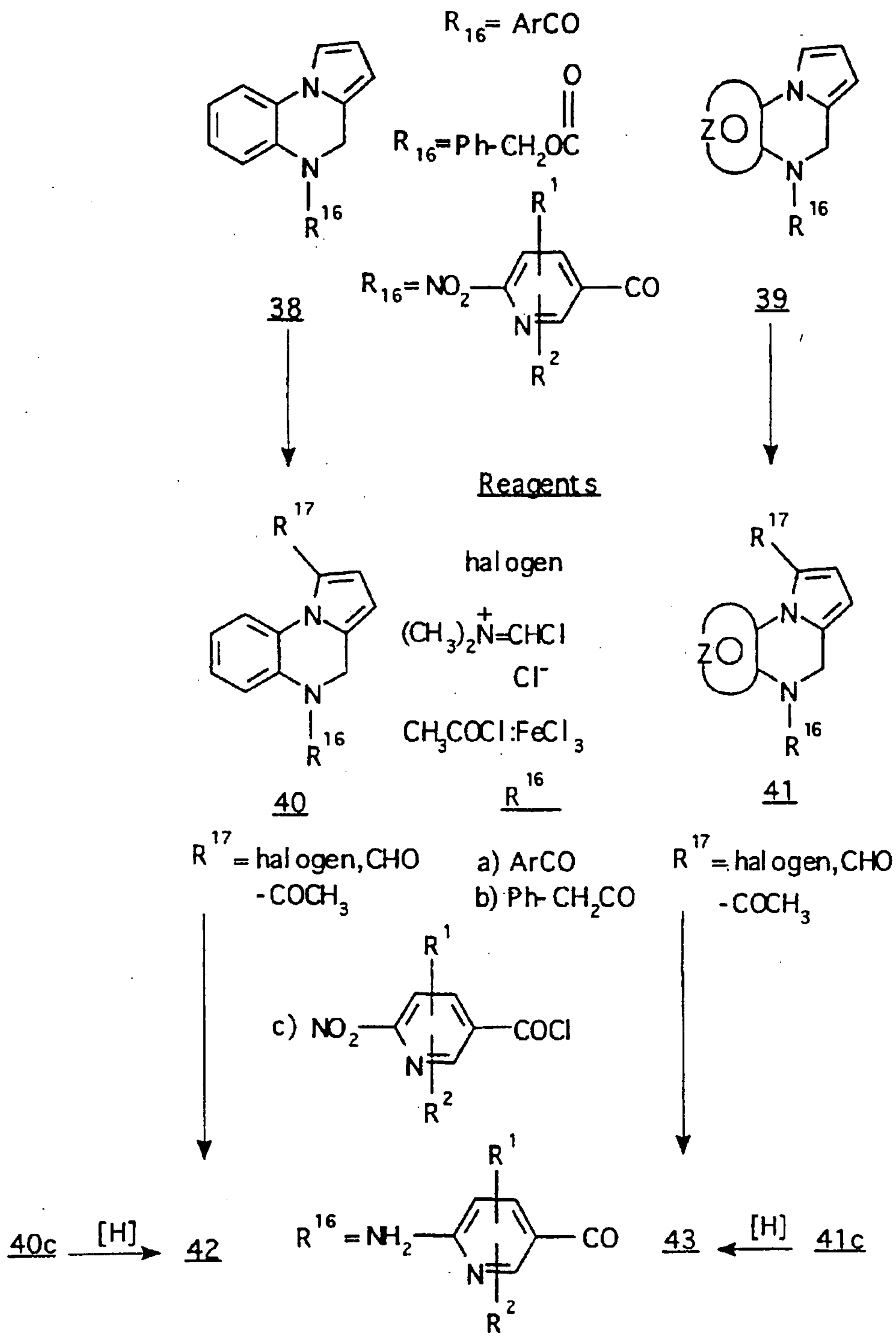
$$\begin{array}{l}\mathrm{Ar'\text{-}NCOCl}\ ; \\ \quad\ \ \ | \\ \quad\ \ \mathrm{R_b}\end{array}$$

wherein Ar' and R_b are as previously hereinbefore defined, to give tricyclic diazepines 44 and 45.

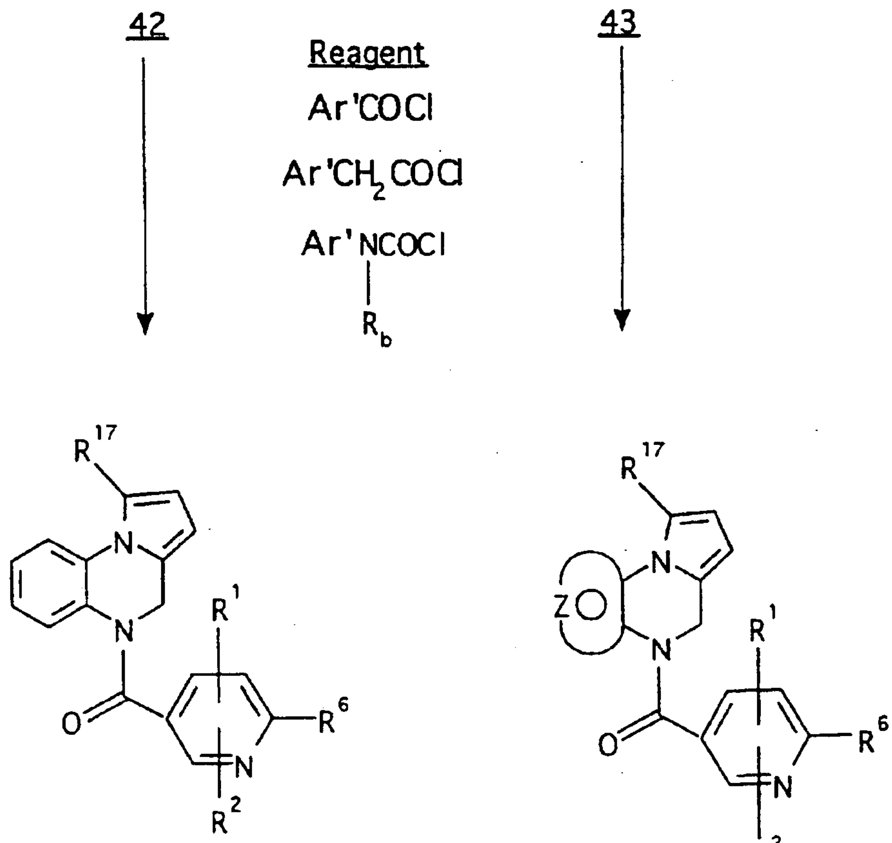
Scheme 9


NH2
NO2
30
CH3O
O
OCH3
31
N
NO2
32
B⁻
N
H
halogen
NO2
33
N
H
CHO
34
B⁻
N
CHO
NO2
35
= phenyl
N
N
H
36
ArCOCl
O
PhCH2OC-Cl
O2N
N
COCl
N
N
H
37

Scheme 9 (cont'd)



Scheme 9 (cont'd)



44 45

$\underline{R^6}$

Ar'CONH

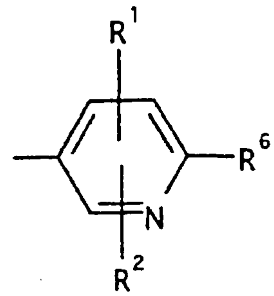
$Ar'CH_2CONH$

$Ar'-N(R_b)-CONH$

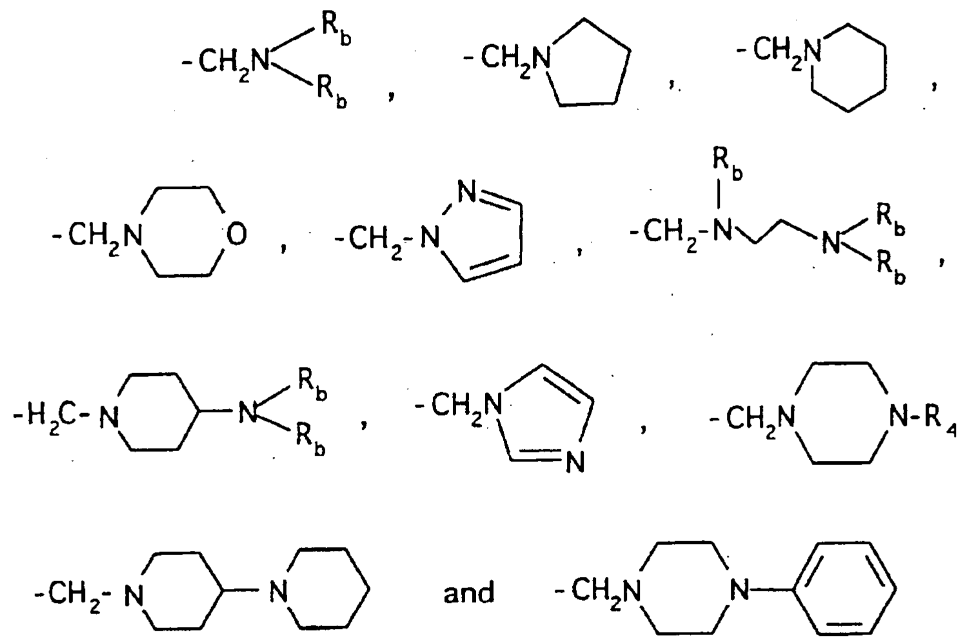
The compounds of this invention wherein R^3 is the moiety:

$$-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}Ar$$

and the Ar group is the moiety:



and R^6, R_a, R_b, Y, R^1, R^2, Z and Ar' are as previously defined and wherein R^{11} is selected from the moieties:

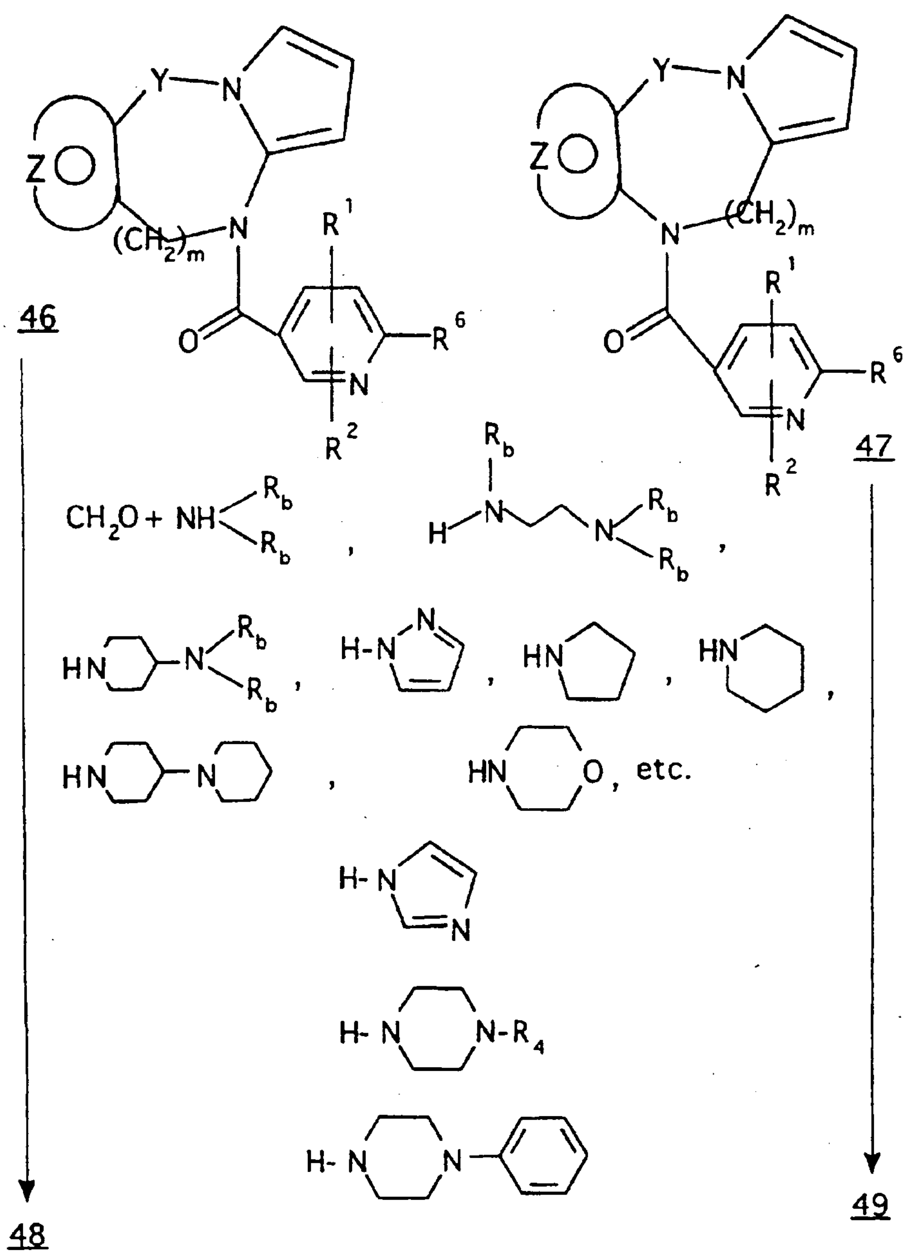


may be synthesized as shown in Scheme 10.

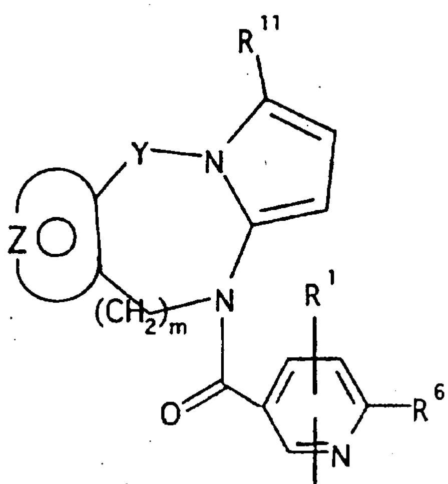
The tricyclic pyrrolodiazepines <u>46</u> and <u>47</u> are reacted with appropriate amines in the presence of formaldehyde to give the aminomethylene derivatives <u>48</u> and <u>49</u>. The reaction may be carried out with aqueous formaldehyde or its equivalent in the presence of the appropriate amine in a lower alkanol at room temperature or preferably at temperatures of 50°C-100°C. The

aminomethylene derivatives 48 and 49 may be converted to hydrochloride salts or succinic acid and maleic acid salts as well as other pharmaceutically acceptable acid salts.

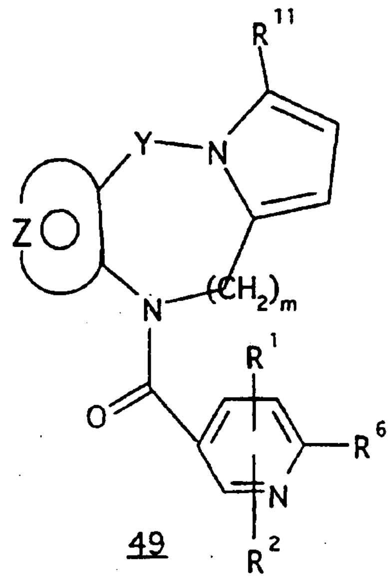
Scheme 10



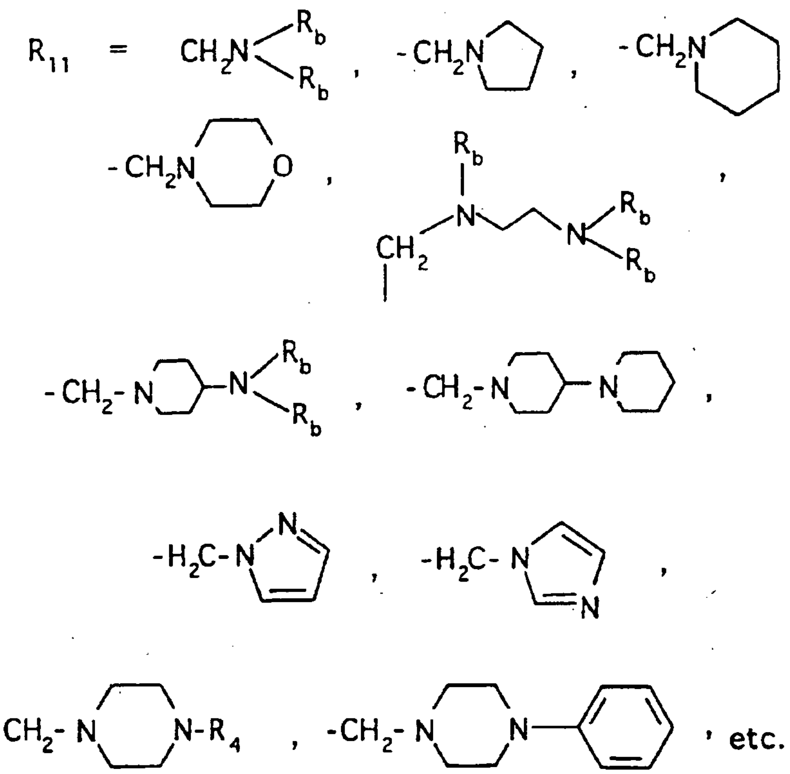
Scheme 10 (cont'd)



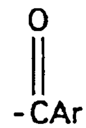
48



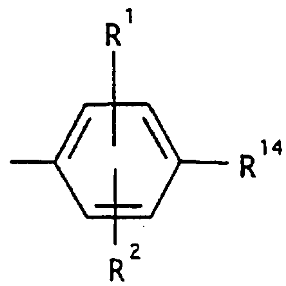
49



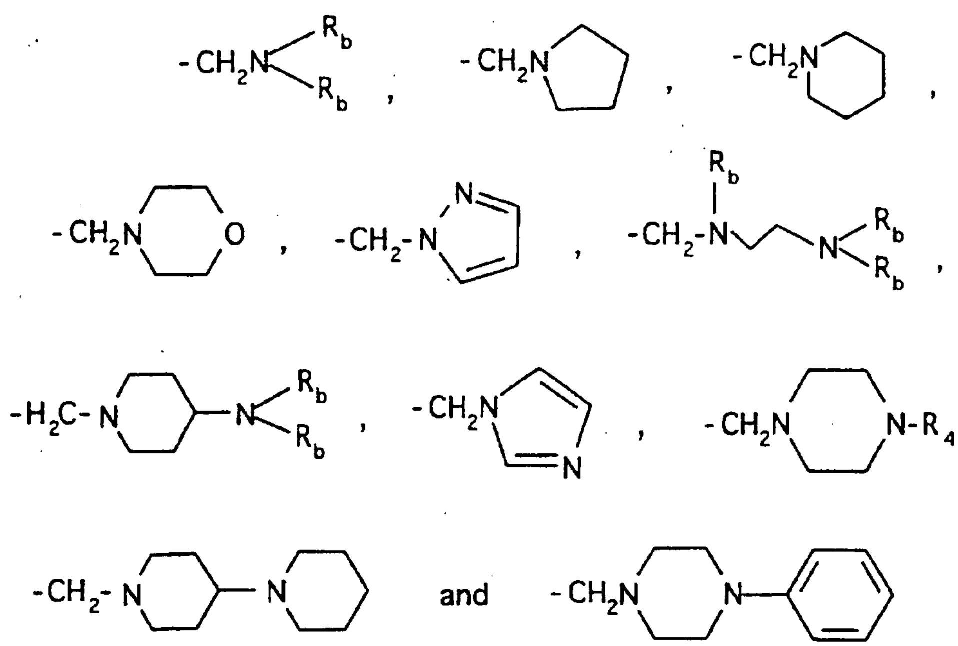
The compounds of this invention wherein R^3 is the moiety:



and the Ar group is the moiety:



and R^{14}, R_a, R_b, Y, R^1, R^2, Z and Ar' are as previously defined and wherein R^{11} is selected from the moieties:



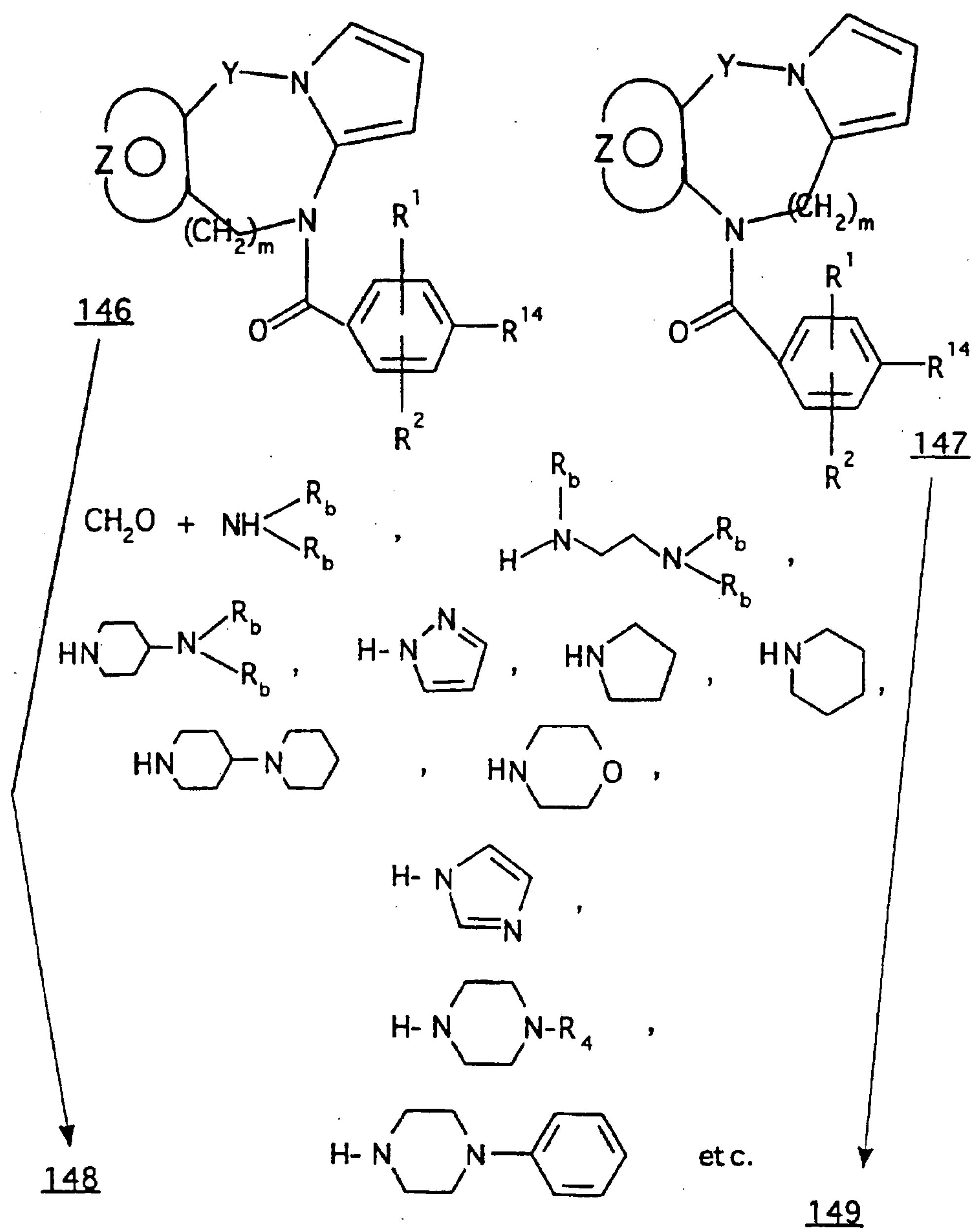
may be synthesized as shown in Scheme 10b.

The tricyclic pyrrolodiazepines 146 and 147 are reacted with appropriate amines in the presence of formaldehyde to give the aminomethylene derivatives 148

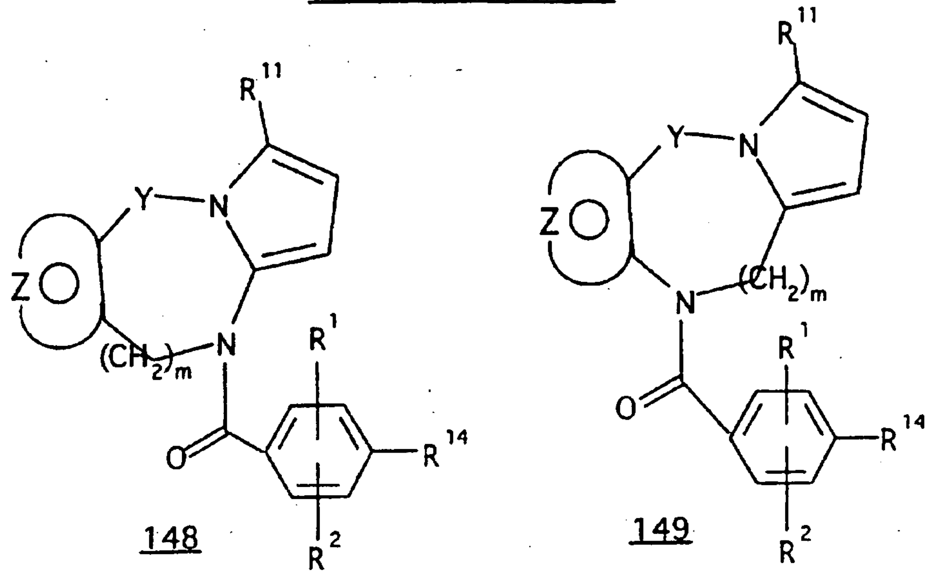
and 149. The reaction may be carried out with aqueous formaldehyde or its equivalent in the presence of the appropriate amine in a lower alkanol at room temperature or preferably at temperatures of 50°C-100°C. The aminomethylene derivatives 148 and 149 may be converted to hydrochloride salts or succinic acid and maleic acid salts as well as other pharmaceutically acceptable acid salts.

In the schemes 10c and 10d that follow, X^- indicates an anion selected from a halogen, preferably I^-, or a sulfate or nitrate.

Scheme 10b

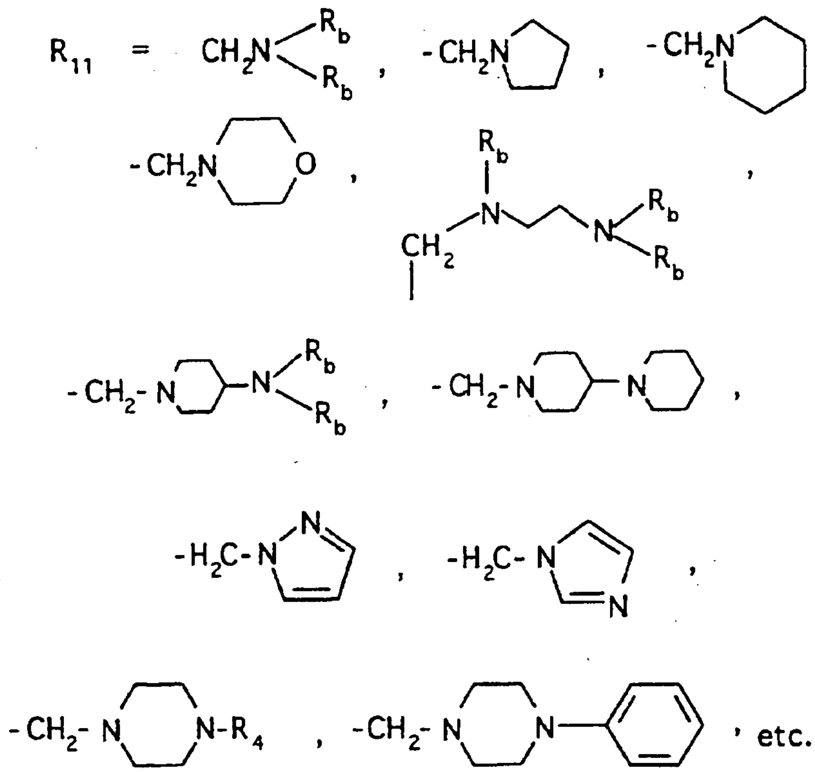

Y
N
Z
$(CH_2)_m$
N
R^1
O
R^{14}
R^2
146
147
CH_2O + NH R_b R_b
H N N R_b R_b
HN N R_b R_b
H- N N
HN
HN O
H- N N
H- N N-R_4
H- N N
etc.
148
149

Scheme 10b (cont'd)

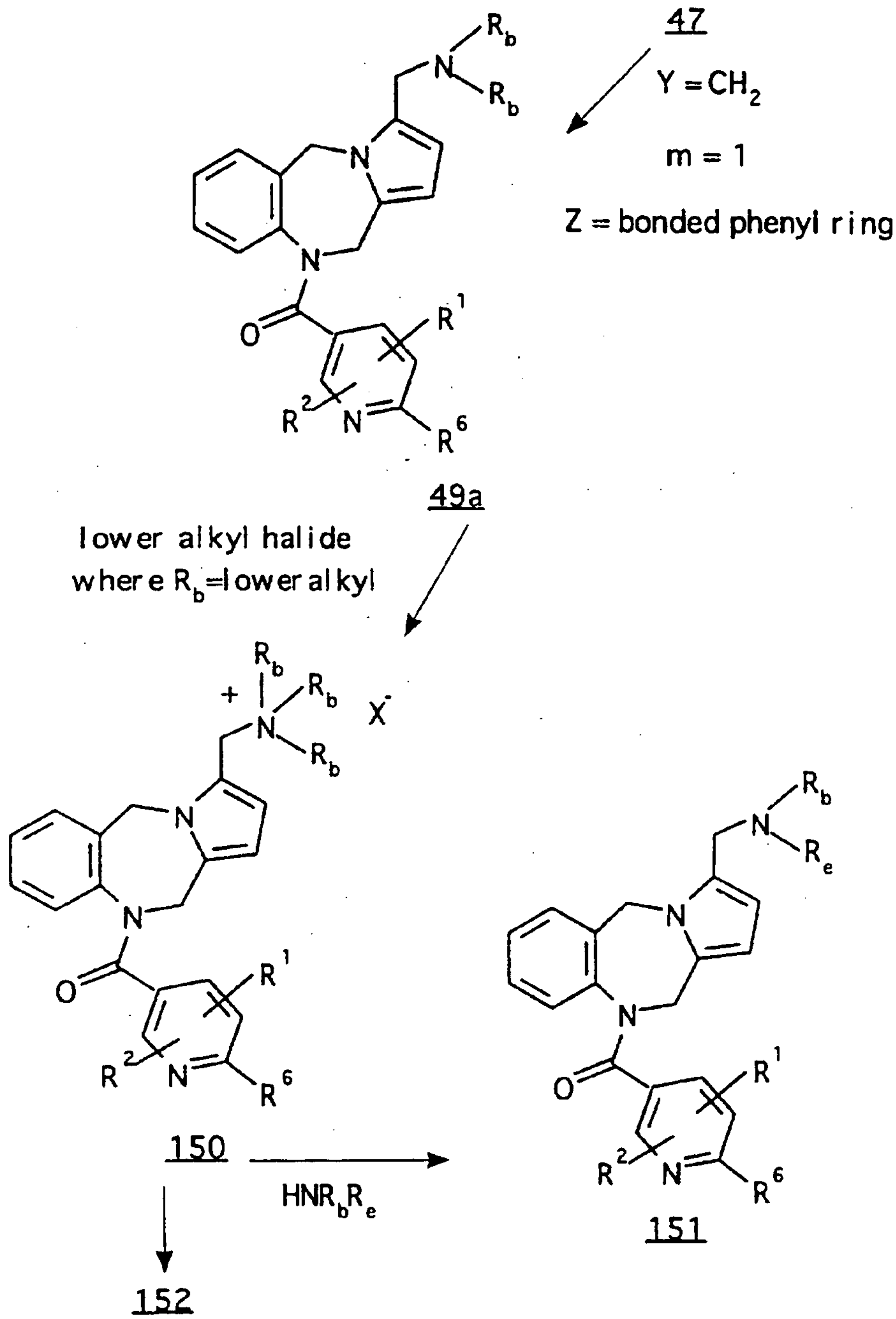


148

149

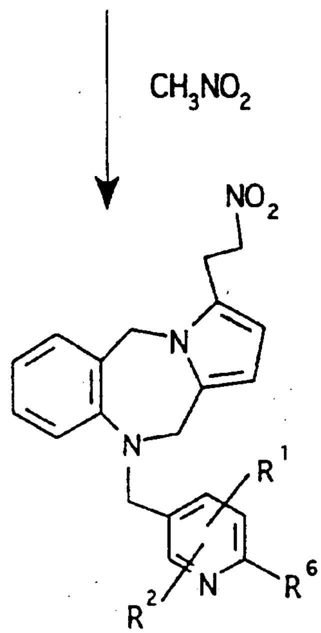


Scheme 10c


47
Y = CH2
m = 1
Z = bonded phenyl ring
49a
lower alkyl halide
where Rb=lower alkyl
X-
150
HNRbRe
151
152

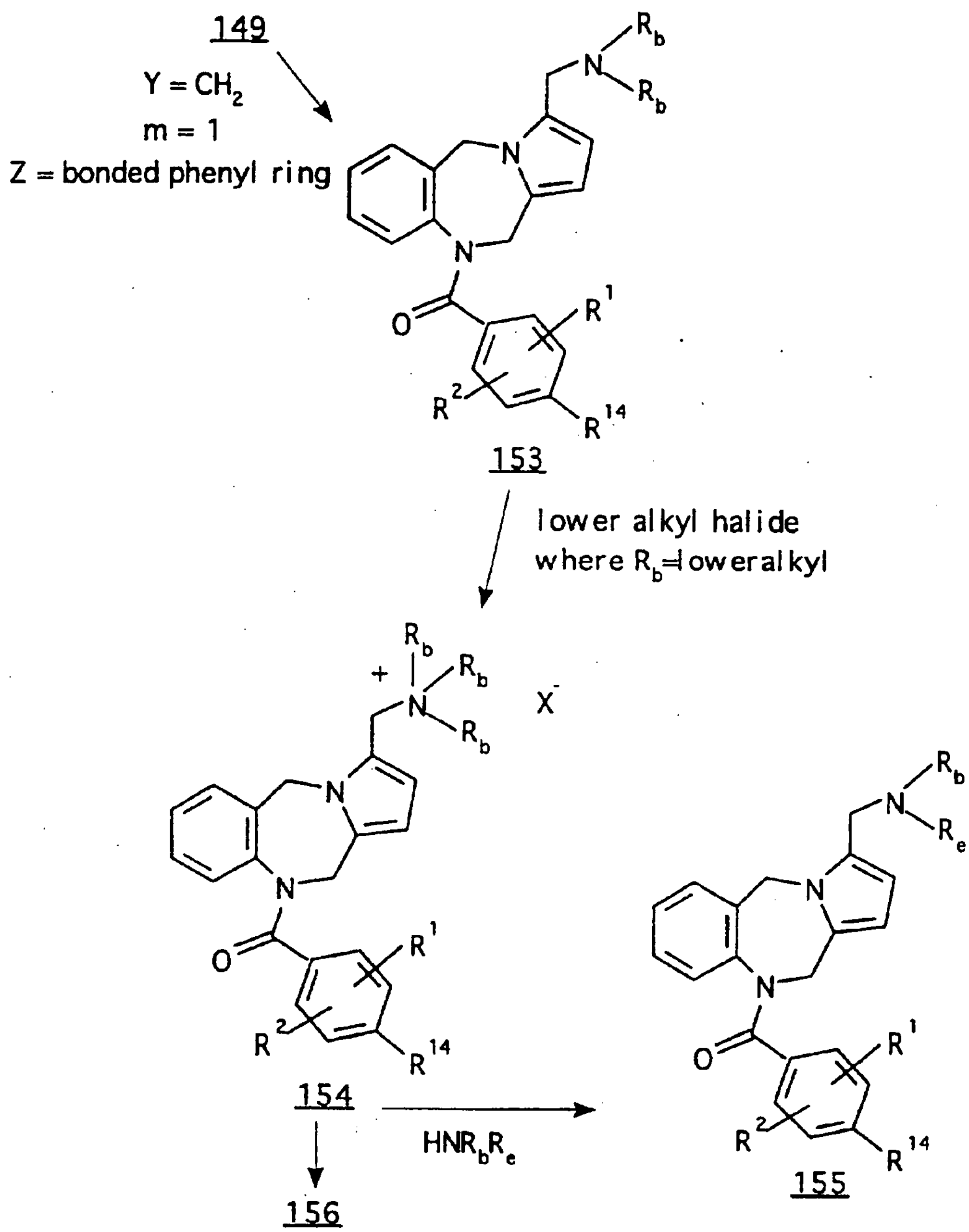
Scheme 10c (cont'd)

150



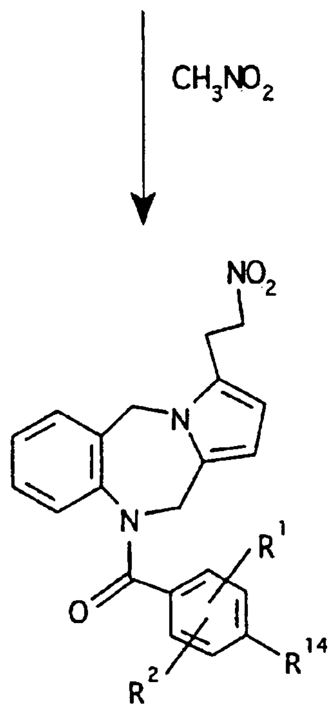
152

Scheme 10d


149
Y = CH2
m = 1
Z = bonded phenyl ring
153
lower alkyl halide
where Rb=loweralkyl
X-
154
HNRbRe
155
156

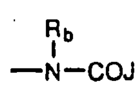
Scheme 10d (cont'd)

154

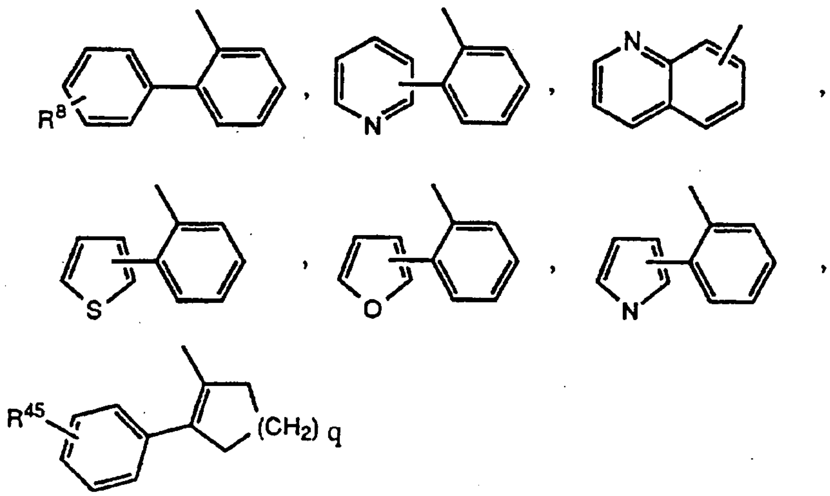


156

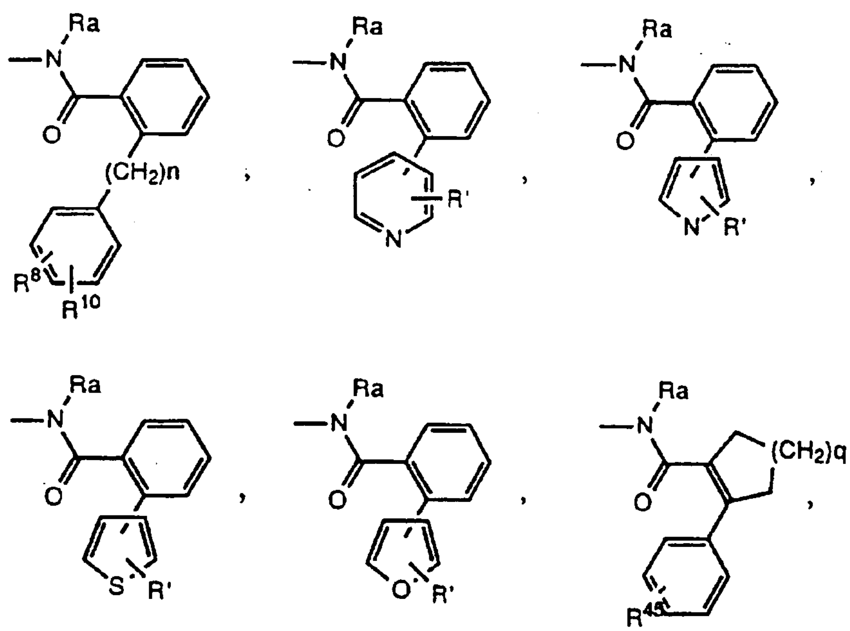
The aminomethylene derivatives of the formulas 49a or 153, wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^6, R^8, R^{10}, R^{11}, R^{14}, R^{45}, R', R_a, R_b, R_e are hereinbefore defined, Y is equal to CH_2 and Z is phenyl or substituted phenyl and R^6 is selected from a moiety of the formula:

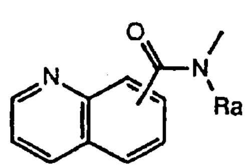


wherein J is independently selected from the moieties:



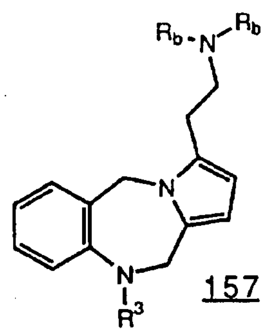
wherein further q is 1 or 2; n is 0 or 1; and R^{14} is independently selected from the moieties:



and 

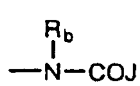
can be reacted as described in Schemes 10c and 10d with an excess of an alkyl halide such as methyl iodide, ethyl bromide, to give the corresponding quarternary ammonium derivatives 150 and 154. Reaction of the quarternary ammonium derivatives 150 and 154 with ammonia, a primary amine such as methylamine, glycine methyl ester, tris(hydroxymethylaminomethane, or a secondary amine such as dimethylamine, sarcosine methyl ester, ethanolamine in an inert solvent such as dimethylsulfoxide, tetrahydrofuran, or dichloromethane at room temperature to the reflux temperature of the solvent affords the corresponding aminomethyl derivatives 151 and 155. Alternately, reaction of the quarternary ammonium derivatives 150 and 154 with nitromethane in the presence of an alkali metal alkoxide in a solvent such as methanol, ethanol, tetrahydrofuran or dimethylsulfoxide at temperatures ranging between 40-100°C gives the nitro derivatives 152 and 156.

The 3-aminoethyl and 3-dialkyaminoethyl compounds of Formula 157,

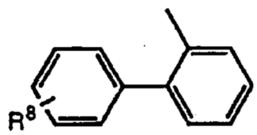
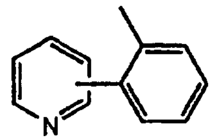
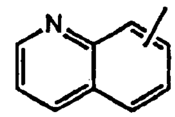


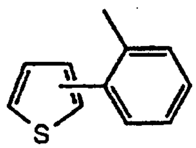
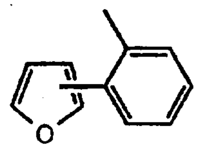
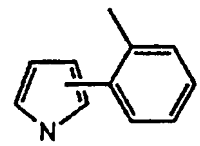
157

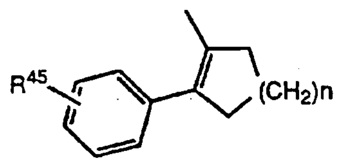
wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^6, R^8, R^{10}, R^{14}, R', R_a, and R_b, are defined hereinabove; and R^6, is selected from a moiety of the formula:



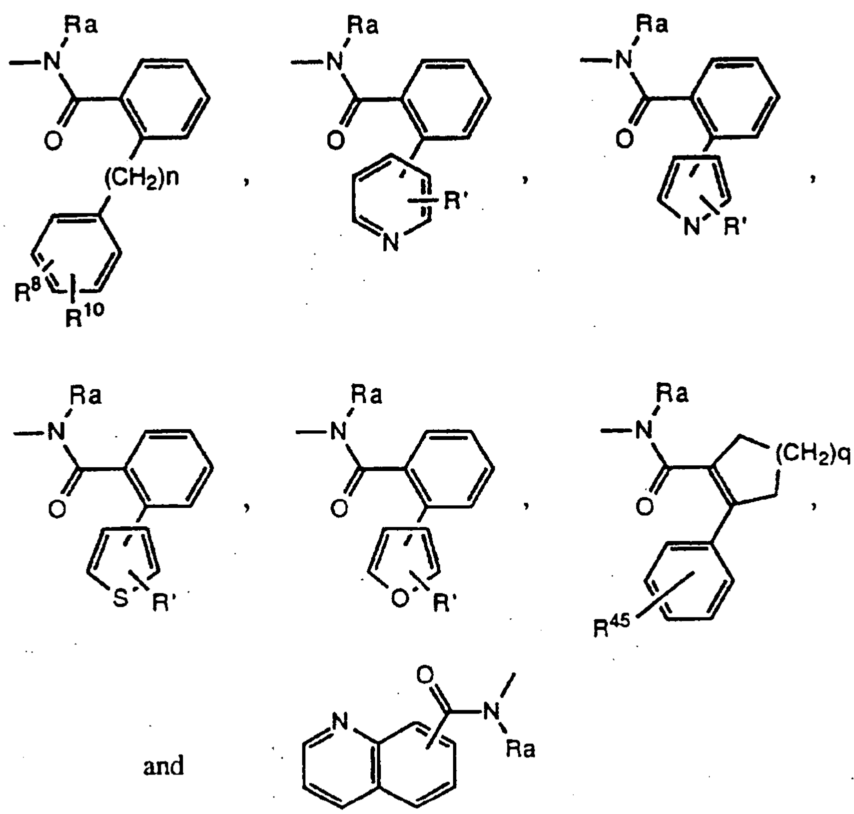
wherein J is independently selected from the moieties:

 ,  ,  ,

 ,  ,  ,



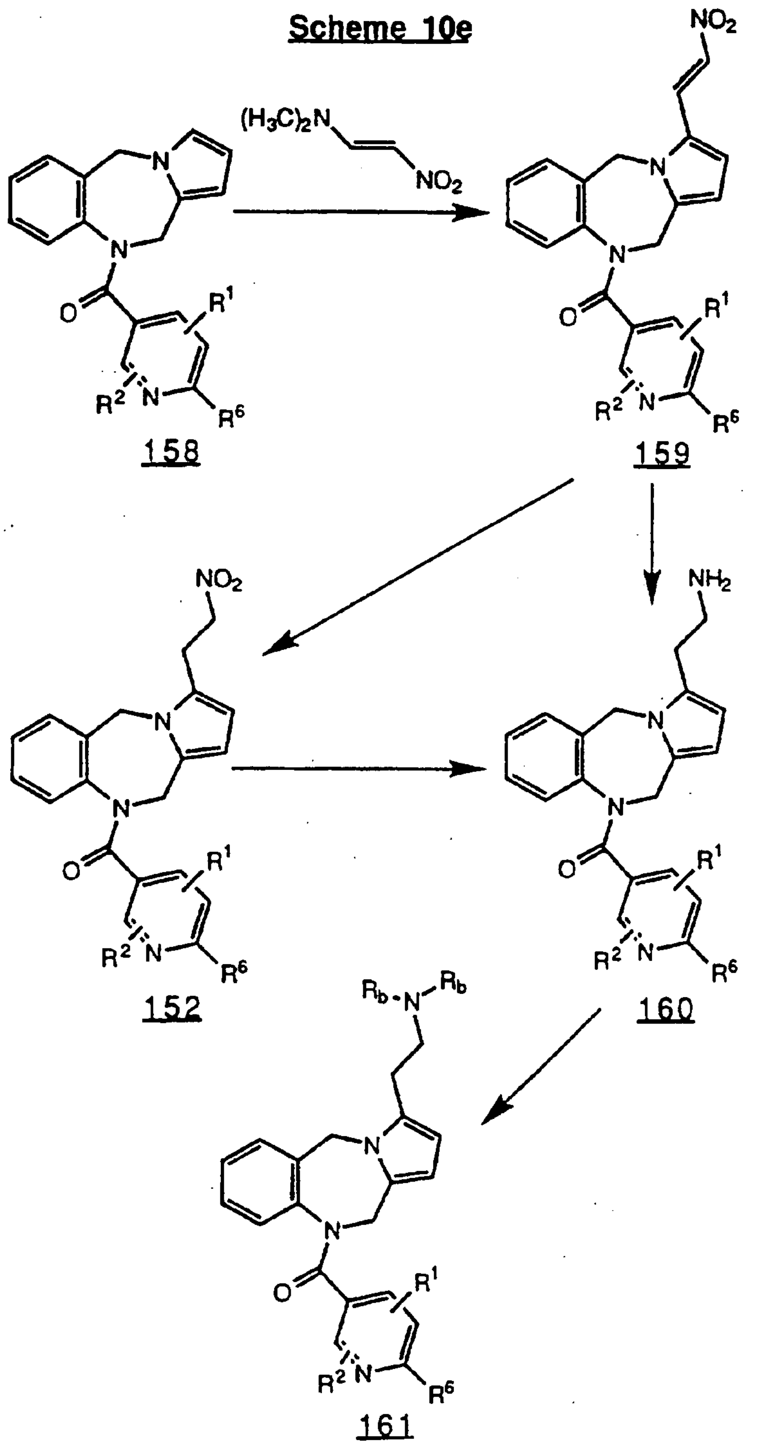
wherein further q is 1 or 2; n is 0 or 1; and R^{14} is independently selected from the moieties:



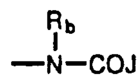
wherein n is 0, can be prepared by procedures recognized in the art from known or readily prepared intermediates.

A detailed description of preferred compounds is described in exemplary procedure (Scheme 10e) as follows:

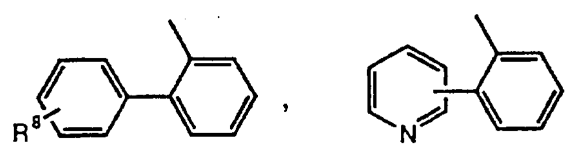
Scheme 10e



wherein R^1 and R^2 are defined hereinabove; and R^6, is selected from a moiety of the formula:



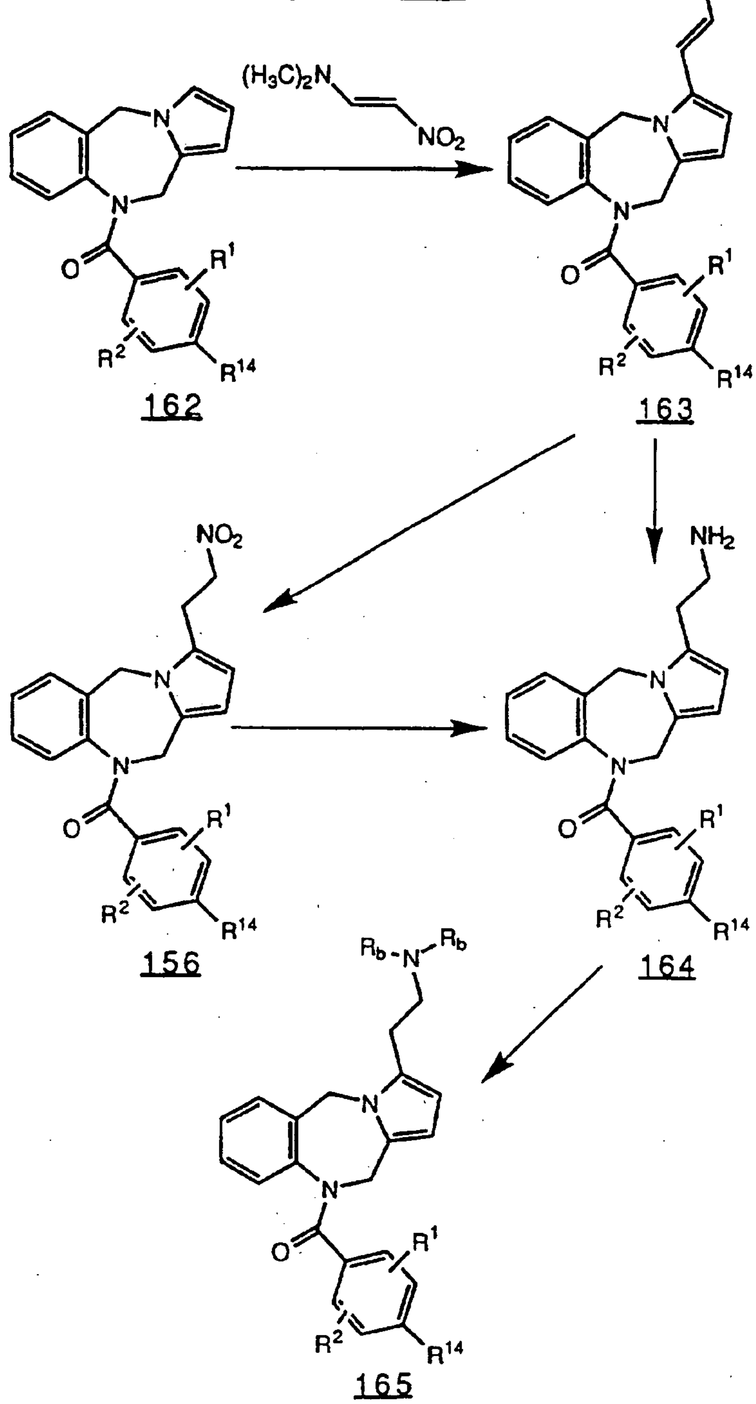
wherein J is independently selected from the moieties:



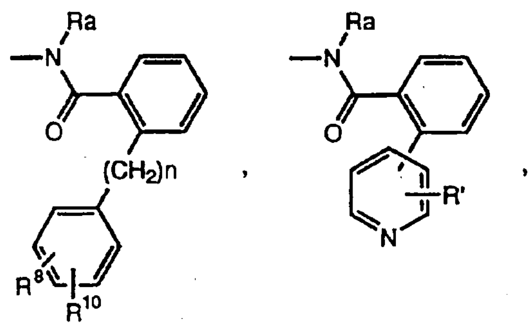
and; R^8 is hydrogen.

A detailed description of especially preferred compounds is described further in procedure (Scheme 10f) as follows:

Scheme 10f



wherein R^1 and R^2 are defined hereinabove; and R^{14} is selected from the moiety:



wherein R_a, R', R^8, and R^{10} are defined hereinabove; and n is 0.

More specifically, a compound of Formula 158 or Formula 162, wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove, is reacted with 1-dimethylamino-2-nitroethylene according to the procedure described by Buchi and Mak in the Journal of Organic Chemistry, Vol. 42, No. 10, 1784 (1977), to prepare a compound of Formula 159 or Formula 163, respectively; wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove. Reaction temperatures may range from -20°C to 45°C, and reaction times may vary from five minutes to three hours. The reaction may be carried out in acidic media or under acid catalyzed conditions employing neutral solvent media. The acidic media include, but are not limited to, glacial acetic acid, formic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, and the like. Solvents include, but are not limited to ethanol, methanol, and the like. Acid catalysts include, but are not limited to, hydrogen halides, sulfonic or phosphoric acids, and the like.

A compound of Formula 159 or Formula 163, wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove, is reacted

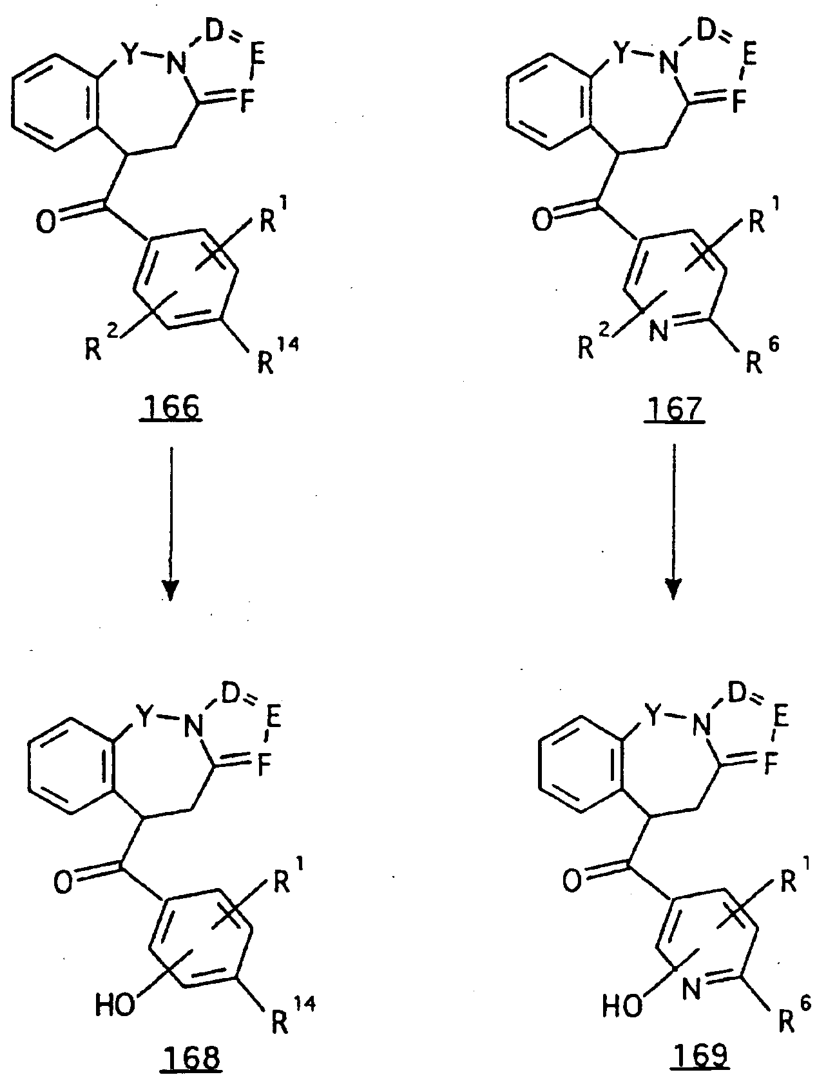
with alkali metal boroydride or alkyl metal trialkoxyborohydride reagents according to the procedure described by Kardos and Genet in Tetrahedron: Asymmetry, Vol 5., No.8, 1525 (1994), and also by Kruse and Hilbert in Heterocycles, Vol. 20, No.7, 1373 (1983), to prepare a compound of Formula 152 or Formula 156, respectively; wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove. Reaction temperatures may range from -40°C to the reflux temperature of the solvent. The reaction times may vary from five minutes to three hours. The reaction may be carried out in various protic or aprotic solvents, or mixtures thereof, which include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, diethyl ether, and the like. A compound of Formula 152 or Formula 156, wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove, is reacted with reducing metals which include, but are not limited to, zinc, tin, iron, sodium, potassium, or copper, and the like, in protic solvents to prepare a compound of Formula 160 or Formula 164, respectively; wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove. Such protic solvents include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, acetic acid, formic acid, or trifluroacetic acid, and the like. Such reducing metals may or may not be promoted by acid catalysts. Such acid catalysts include, but are not limited to, hydrogen halides, sulfonic acids, phoshoric acids, or organic carboxylic acids, and the like. Reaction temperatures may range from -20°C to the reflux temperature of the solvent The reaction times may vary from five minutes to three hours.

Alternatively, a compound of Formula 159 or Formula 163, wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove, can be reacted with lithium borohydride and trimethylchlorosilane, according to the procedure described by Giannis and Sandhoff, Angewante Chemie, International

Edition in English, Vol. 28, No.2, 218 (1989), or reacted with diborane-tetrahydrofuran complex, to prepare a compound of Formula 160 or Formula 164, respectively; wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove. Reaction temperatures may range from 0°C to the reflux temperature of the solvent. The reaction times may vary from one hour to 48 hours. The reaction may be carried out in various aprotic inert solvents. Solvents may include, but are not limited to, diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1-4 dioxane, and the like.

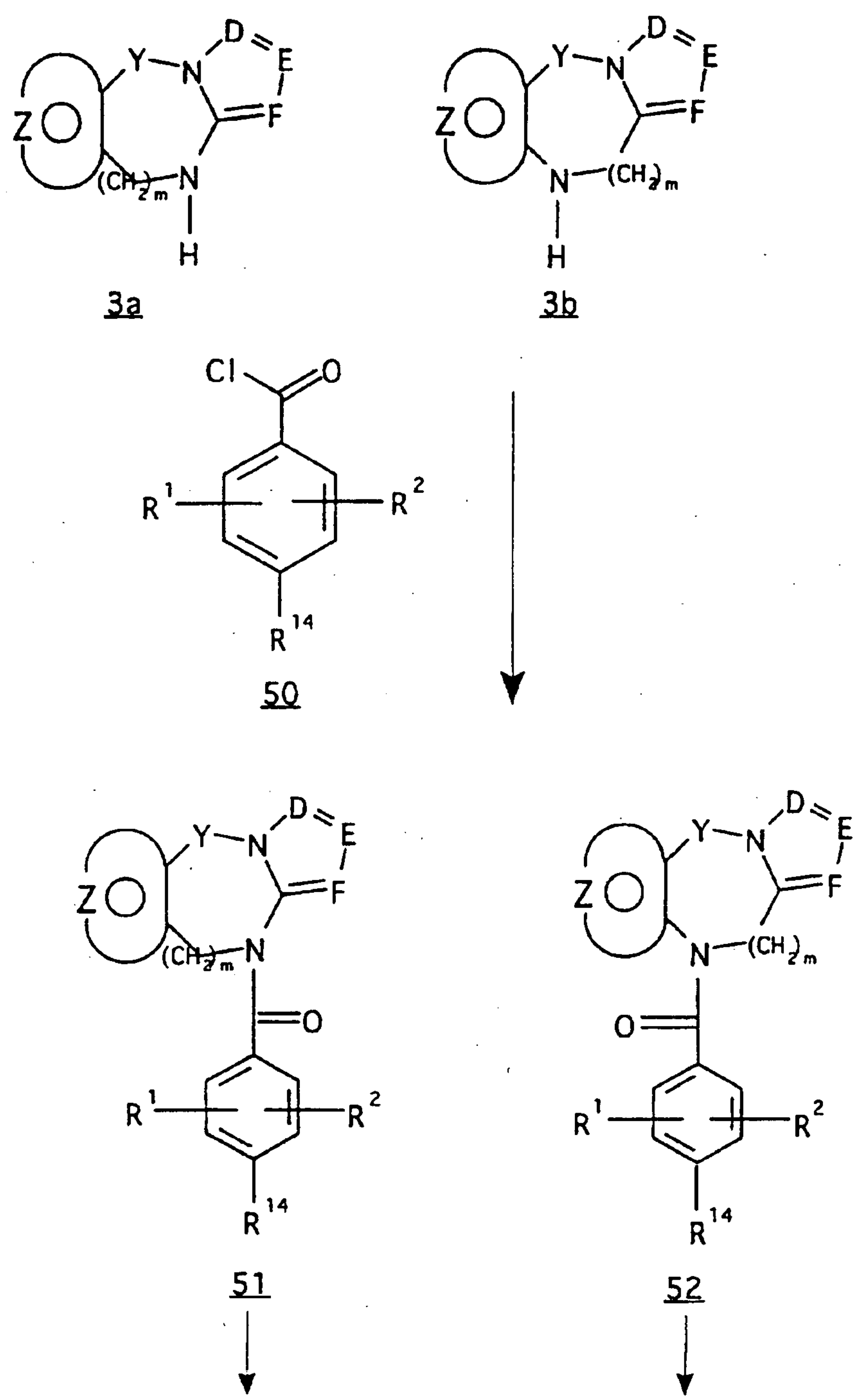
A compound of Formula 161 or Formula 165, wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, R^{14}, and R_b, are defined hereinabove, can be prepared from a compound of Formula 160 or Formula 164, respectively; wherein R^1, R^2, R^6, and R^{14} are defined hereinabove, by reacting with paraformaldehyde, 37% aqueous formaldehyde (Formalin), or acetaldehyde, and sodium cyanoborohydride within a pH range of 3.0 to 6.0. The reaction temperature may range from -20°C to the reflux temperature of the solvent. The reaction times may vary from five minutes to several hours. The pH range may be maintained with organic carboxylic acids. Such organic carboxylic acids include, but are not limited to, glacial acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, formic acid, 4-toluene-sulfonic acid, and the like.

Scheme 10g



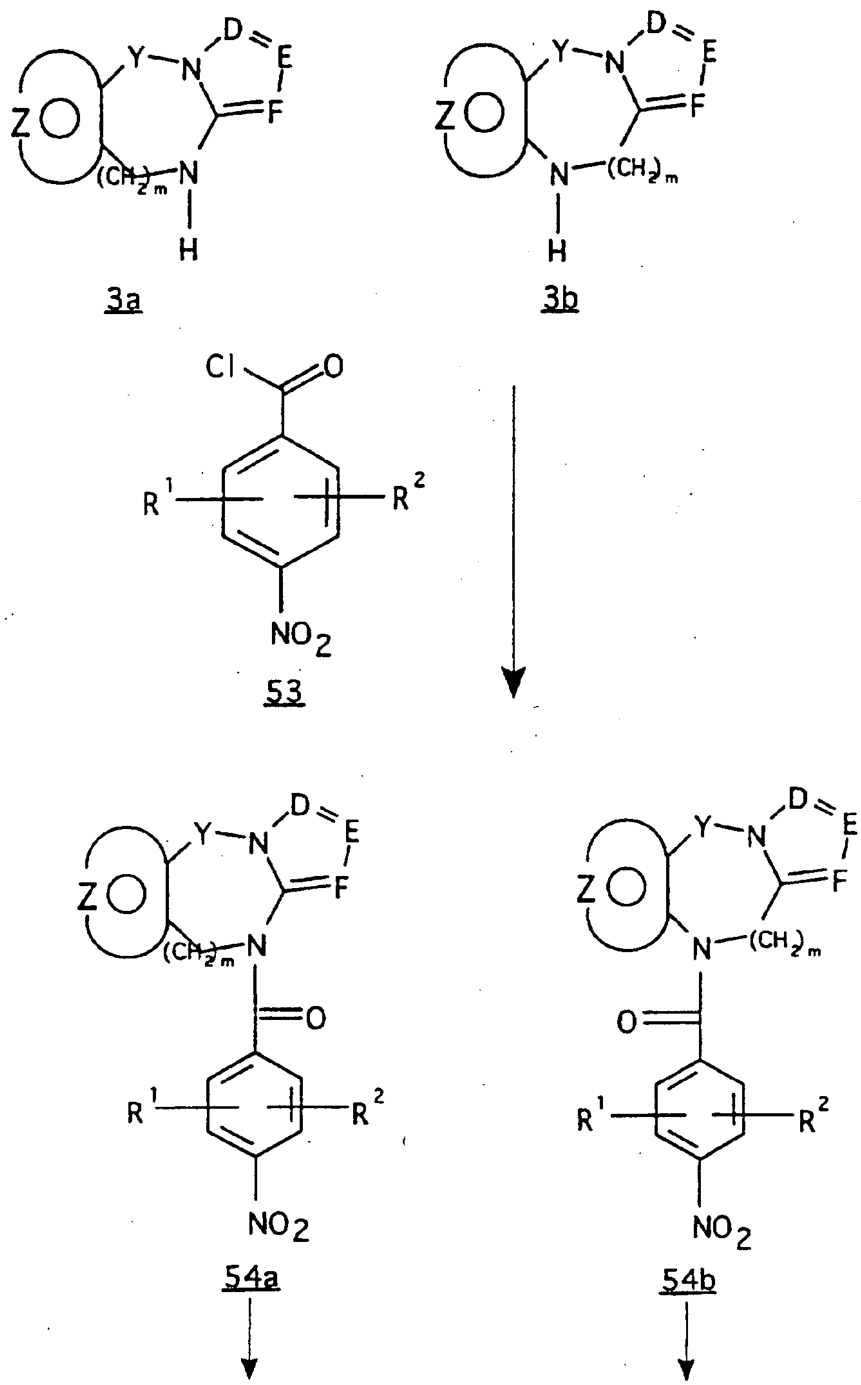
The hydroxy derivatives of the formulas 168 and 169, wherein R', R^1, R^6, R^8, R^{10}, R^{11}, R^{14}, R^{45}, D, E, F, R_a, R_b, Y, and Z are hereinbefore defined and R^2 is lower alkoxy may be prepared by reaction of 166 or 167 with boron tribromide in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane or chloroform at or between -20°C to the reflux temperature of the solvent at from between 30 minutes to overnight.

Scheme 11

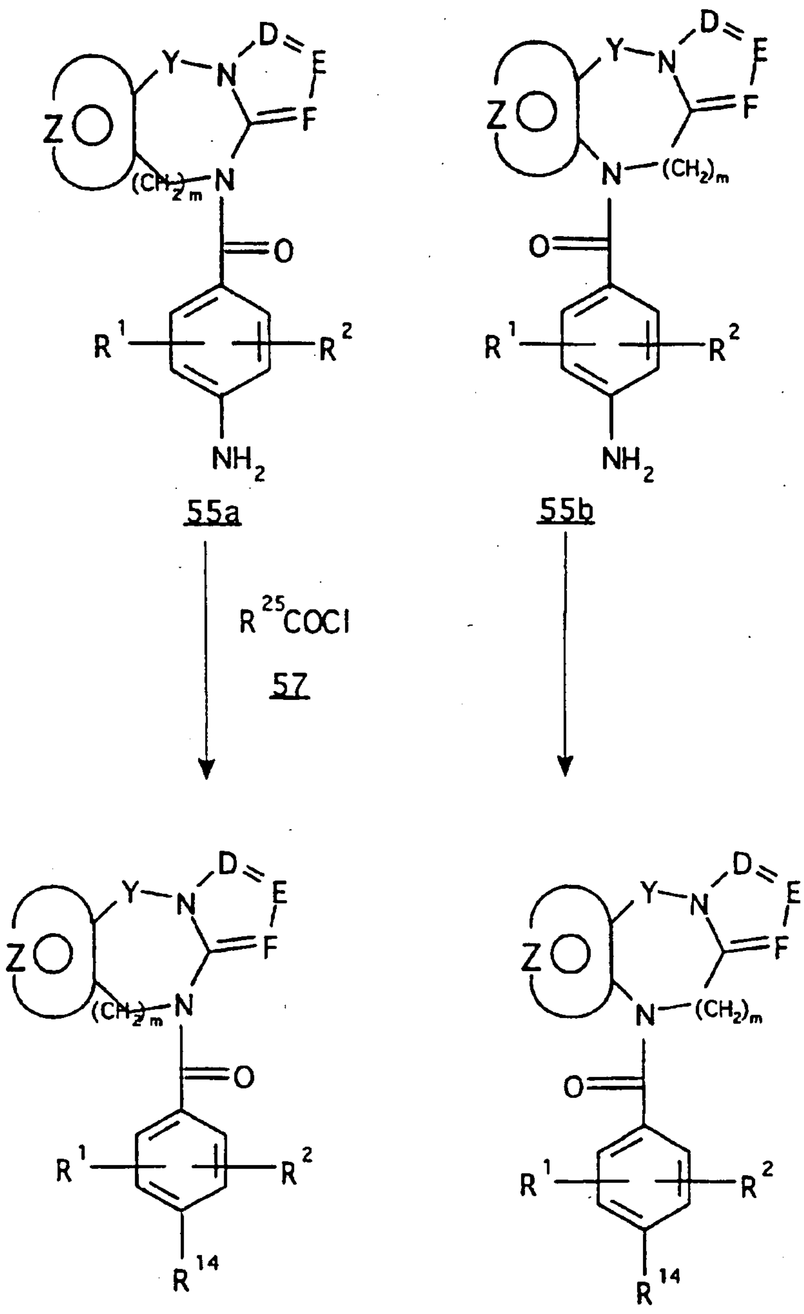


As shown in Scheme 11, reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 3a and 3b with substituted and unsubstituted arylcarbonyl chlorides 50, wherein R^1, R^2 and R^{14} are hereinbefore defined gives compounds 51 and 52 which are vasopressin antagonists.

Scheme 12



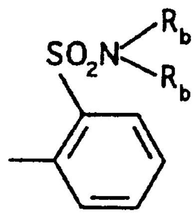
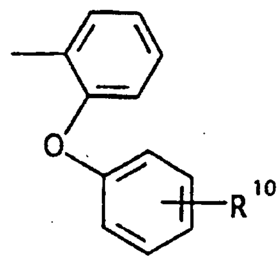
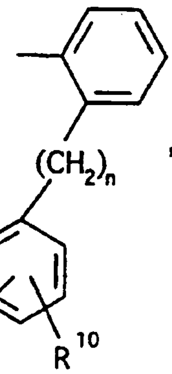
Scheme 12 (cont'd)

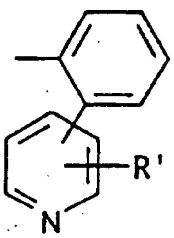
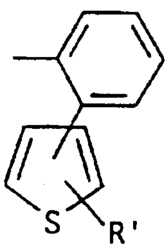
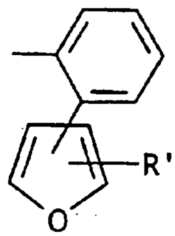


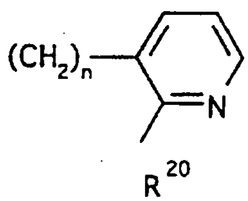
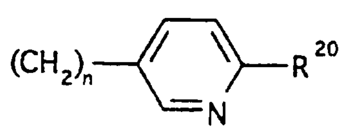
Reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 3a and 3b with a substituted or unsubstituted phenyl carbonyl chloride 53 gives intermediates 54a and 54b. The reduction of the nitro group in intermediates 54a and 54b may be carried out under catalytic reduction conditions (hydrogen-Pd/C; Pd/C-hydrazine-ethanol) or under chemical reduction conditions ($SnCl_2$-ethanol; Zn-acetic acid $TiCl_3$ and related reduction conditions known in the art for converting a nitro group to an amino group. The conditions for conversion of the nitro group to the amino group are chosen on the basis of compatability with the preservation of other functional groups in the molecule.

Reaction of compounds of Formula 55a and 55b with acid chlorides, $R^{25}COCl$ or related activated acid carboxylic acids in solvents such as chloroform, dichloromethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, toluene and the like in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine and diisopropylethylamine or pyridine and the like, affords the compounds 56a and 56b which are vasopressin antagonists.

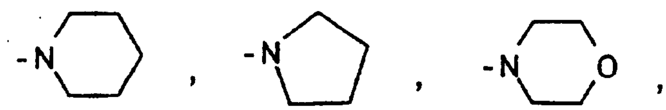
The acid chlorides $R^{25}COCl$ are those wherein R^{25} is selected from the group

 ,  ,  ,

 ,  ,  ,

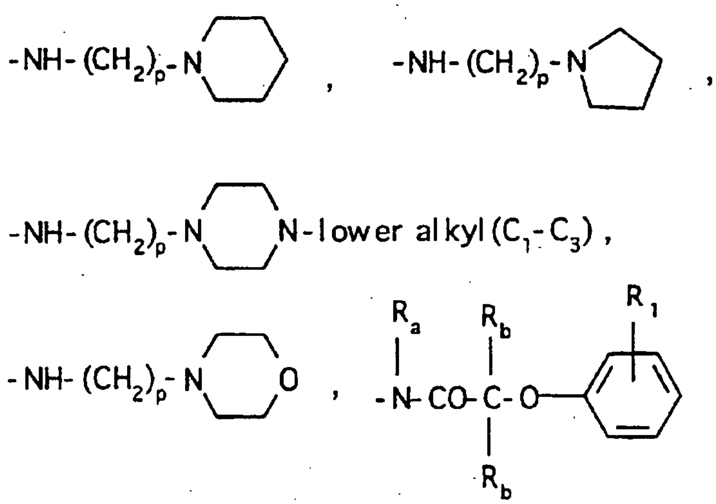
 , 

Wherein n is 0 or 1; R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)-lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1-C_3)$-lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1-C_3)\text{lower alkyl}]_2$,



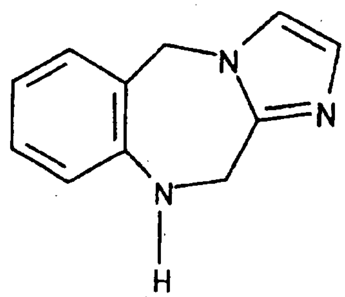
-NH-$(CH_2)_p$-NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3) ,

-NH-$(CH_2)_p$-N[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$,

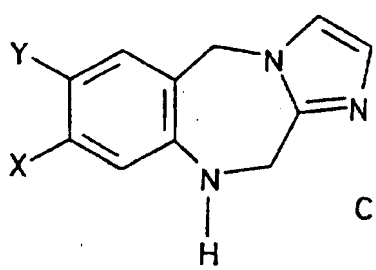


Preparation of some tricyclic diazepines useful for starting materials for the synthesis of compounds of this invention are shown in Schemes 8 and 9. Other tricyclic diazepines are prepared by literature procedures or by methods known in the art or by procedures reported for the synthesis of specific known tricyclic diazepines. These diazepine ring systems discussed below when subjected to reaction conditions shown in Schemes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9 and 10 give the compounds of this invention.

The tricyclic diazepine ring system, 10,11-dihydro-5H-imidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine,

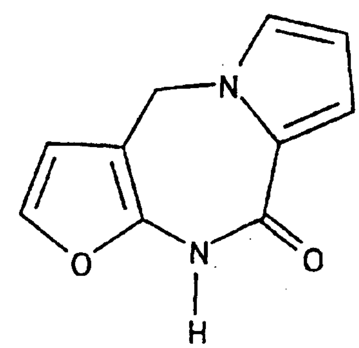


is reported by G. Stefancich, R. Silvestri and M. Artico, J. Het. Chem. 30, 529(1993); ring substitution on the same ring system is reported by G. Stefancich, M. Artico, F. Carelli, R. Silvestri, G. deFeo, G. Mazzanti, I. Durando, M. Palmery, IL Farmaco, Ed. Sc., 40, 429(1985).

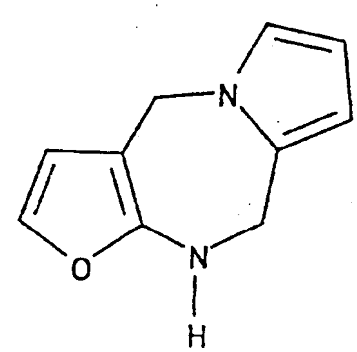


X=H, $-OCH_3$, $-OCH_2C_6H_5$; Y=H, Cl, $-OCH_3$; X,Y= O-CH_2-O-

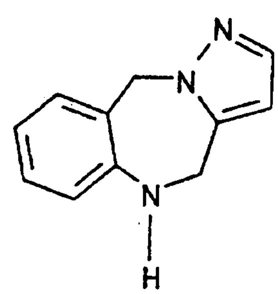
The synthesis of 9,10-dihydro-4H-furo[2,3-e]-pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-9-one



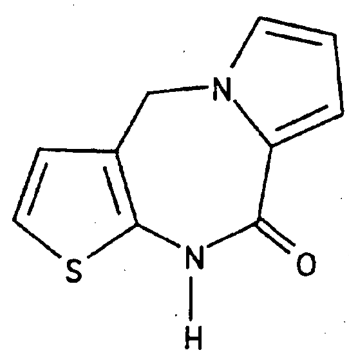
is reported by F. Povazunec, B. Decroix and J. Morel, J. Het. Chem. 29, 1507(1992) and is reduced to give the tricyclic heterocycle 9,10-dihydro-4H-furo[2,3-e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine.



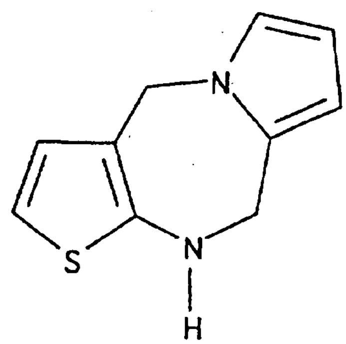
The tricyclic 5,10-dihydro-4H-pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine ring system is reported by L. Cecchi and G. Filacchioni, J. Het. Chem., 20, 871(1983);



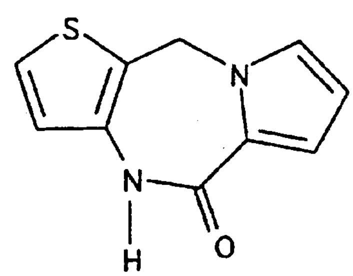
The synthesis of 9-oxo-9,10-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]-thieno[2,3-e][1,4]diazepine is reported by A. Daich and B. Decroix, Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr 129, 360(1992);



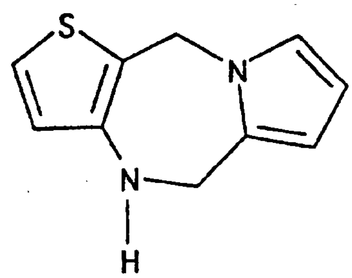
and is reduced with boron-dimethylsulfide to give 9,10-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[2,3-e][1,4]diazepine.



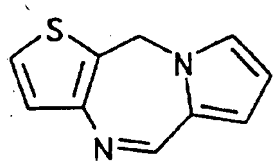
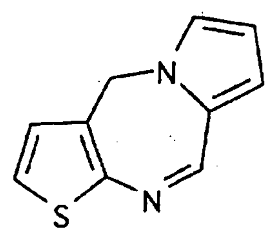
Also reported by A. Daich and B. Decroix is 5-oxo-4,5-dihydropyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[3,2-e][1,4]diazepine

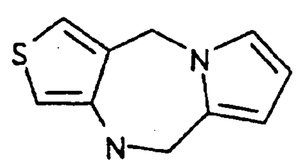


which is also reduced to give 4,10-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo-[1,2-a]thieno[3,2-e][1,4]diazepine

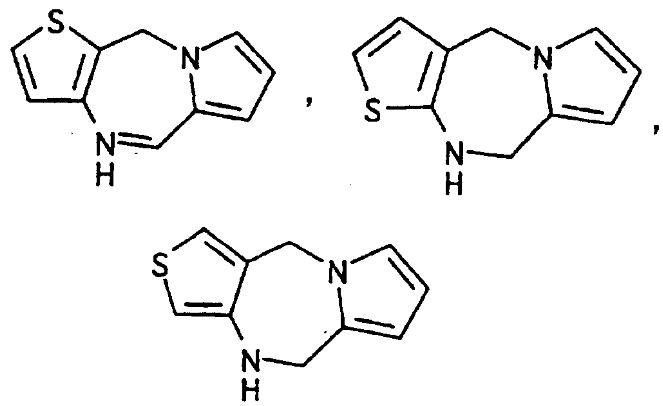


Reported by B. Decroix and J. Morel, J. Het. Chem., 28, 81(1991) are 5H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[3,2-e][1,4]diazepine;

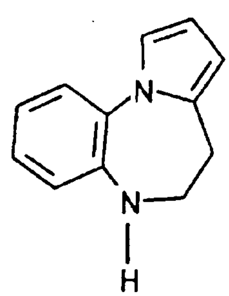
 ,  ,



and 4H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[2,3-e][1,4]diazepine. The 10H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[3,4-e][1,4]diazepine is reported by A. Daich, J. Morel and B. Decroix, J. Heterocyclic Chem., 31, 341(1994). Reduction by hydrogen-Pd/C or chemical reduction with reagents such as sodium cyanoborohydride and acetic acid gives the dihydro tricyclic heterocycles

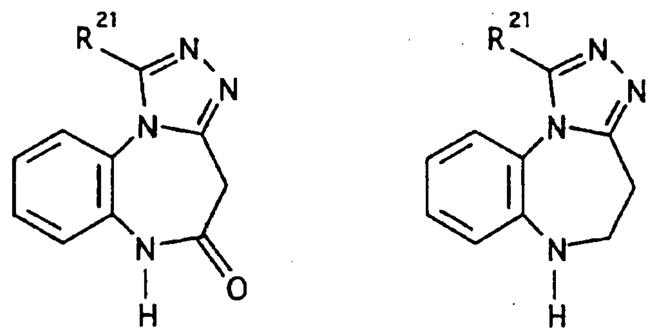


The synthesis of the tricyclic 1,5-benzodiazepine ring system, 6,7-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,5]benzodiazepine, has been reported by F. Chimenti, S. Vomero, R. Giuliano and M. Artico, IL Farmaco, Ed. Sc., 32, 339(1977). Annelated 1,5-benzodiazepines containing five membered rings have been reviewed by A. Chimirri, R. Gitto, S. Grasso, A.M. Monforte, G. Romeo and M. Zappala, Heterocycles, 36, No. 3, 604(1993), and the ring system 6,7-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,5]benzodiazepine is described.



The preparation of 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,4]-triazolo[4,3-a][1,5]benzodiazepin-5-ones from 1,2-dihydro-3H-4-dimethylamino-1,5-benzodiazepin-2-ones has been described by M. DiBroccio, G. Roma, G. Grossi, M. Ghia, and F. Mattioli Eur. J. Med. Chem; 26, 489(1991). Reduction of 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,4]triazolo[4,3-a]-

[1,5]benzodiazepin-5-ones with diborane or lithium hydride gives the tricyclic 5,6-dihydro derivatives.



$R^{21} = H, CH_3$

The compounds of this invention and their preparation can be understood further by the following examples, but should not constitute a limitation thereof.

Reference Example 1

1-(2-Nitrophenyl)-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde

To a solution of 3.76 g of 1-(2-nitrophenyl)pyrrole in 20 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide at 0°C is added dropwise with stirring 3 ml of phosphorus oxychloride. Stirring is continued for 30 minutes and the reaction mixture is heated at 90°C for 1 hour. After cooling to room temperature the mixture is treated with crushed ice and the pH adjusted to 12 with 2 N sodium hydroxide. The resulting suspension is filtered, washed with water and dried to give 5.81 g of the desired product as a light yellow solid, m.p. 119°-122°C.

Reference Example 2

4,5-Dihydro-pyrrolo-[1,2-a]-quinoxaline

To a solution of 1.0 g of 1-(2-nitrophenyl)-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde in 40 ml of ethyl alcohol and 40 ml of ethyl acetate, under argon, is added 40 mg of 10% Pd/C. The mixture is hydrogenated at 40 psi for

2 hours and filtered through diatomaceous earth. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in ether and treated with hexanes to give 0.35 g of the desired product as a beige solid, m.p. 108°-110°C.

Reference Example 3

N-(2-Nitrobenzoyl)pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde

To an ice bath cooled solution of 5.6 g of 2-pyrrolecarboxaldehyde in 40 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 2.4 g of 60% sodium hydride in mineral oil. The temperature elevates to 40°C. After stirring for 20 minutes a solution of 11.0 g of 2-nitrobenzoyl chloride in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added dropwise over 20 minutes. After stirring in the cold for 45 minutes, the reaction mixture is poured into ice water and ether then filtered. The cake is washed with additional ether. The two phase filtrate is separated and the ether layer dried and concentrated in vacuo to give 10 g of a residue as a dark syrup which is scratched with ethanol to give crystals which are collected by filtration, washed with ether and then dried to afford 3.2 g of solid, m.p. 95-99°C.

Reference Example 4

10,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one

A mixture of 1.5 g of N-(2-nitrobenzoyl)-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde in 50 ml of ethyl acetate, 2 drops of concentrated HCl and 0.3 g of 10% Pd/C is shaken in a Parr apparatus under hydrogen pressure for 1.75 hours. The mixture is filtered, 0.4 g of 10% Pd/C added and the mixture shaken in a Parr apparatus under hydrogen pressure for 2 hours. The reaction mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filtrate concentrated in vacuo to give 1.0 g of a yellow oil. The residue is purified on thick layer chromatography plates by elution with 4:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to give 107 mg of the desired product as an oily solid.

Reference Example 5

1-(2-Nitrobenzyl)-2-pyrrolecarboxaldehyde

To 5.56 g of 60% sodium hydride in mineral oil, washed three times with hexane, is added 300 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide under argon. The reaction mixture is cooled in an ice-bath and 13.2 g of pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde is added slowly. The reaction mixture becomes a complete solution and is stirred for an additional 10 minutes. While stirring, 30.0 g of 2-nitrobenzyl bromide is added slowly. After complete addition, the reaction mixture is stirred for 30 minutes, the ice bath is removed and the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The N,N-dimethylformamide is concentrated in vacuo to give a residue which is stirred with ice water for 1 hour. The resulting solid is collected, air dried, then vacuum dried to give 30.64 g of the desired product as a tan solid, m.p. 128-132°C.

Reference Example 6

10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

A mixture of 30.6 g of 1-(2-nitrobenzyl)-2-pyrrolecarboxaldehyde and 3.06 g of 10% Pd/C in 400 ml of ethyl acetate and 400 ml of ethyl alcohol is hydrogenated over 18 hours. The reaction mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filtrate is treated with activated carbon and filtered through diatomaceous earth. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give a residue which is dissolved in methylene chloride containing ethyl alcohol. The solution is passed through a pad of silica gel and the pad washed with a 7:1 hexane-ethyl acetate solution to give 16.31 g of the desired product as solid, m.p. 145-148°C.

Reference Example 7

3-Methylbenzo[b]thiophene-2-acetyl chloride

A mixture of 2.0 g of 3-methylbenzo[b]-thiophene-2-acetic acid and 19.4 ml of thionyl chloride is heated at reflux for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated *in vacuo* to give a residue which is concentrated from toluene three times and dried under vacuum to give 2.25 g of the desired product as a residue.

Reference Example 8

4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl chloride

A solution of 2.0 g of 4-chloro-*o*-anisic acid in 22 ml of thionyl chloride is heated at reflux for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated *in vacuo* to give a residue which is concentrated from toluene three times and dried under vacuum to give 2.0 g of the desired product as a residue.

Reference Example 9

2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl chloride

A solution of 2.0 g of o-trifluoromethyl-benzoic acid in 21 ml of thionyl chloride is heated at reflux for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated *in vacuo* to give a residue which is concentrated from toluene three times and dried under vacuum to give 2.1 g of the desired product as a residue.

Reference Example 10

2-Methylphenylacetyl chloride

A solution of 2.0 g of o-tolylacetic acid in 27 ml of thionyl chloride is heated at reflux for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated *in vacuo* to give a residue which is concentrated from toluene three times and dried under vacuum to give 2.1 g of the desired product as a light brown oil.

Reference Example 11

3-Methyl-4-nitro-benzoyl chloride

A mixture of 1.81 g of 3-methyl-4-nitrobenzoic acid and 1.25 g of thionyl chloride in 75 ml of chloroform is heated at reflux under argon for 48 hours. The volatiles are removed *in vacuo* to a residue which is evaporated with toluene several times *in vacuo*. The residue is partially dissolved in methylene chloride and filtered free of solids and the filtrate evaporated *in vacuo* to give 1.47 g of the desired acid chloride.

Reference Example 12

1-(o-Nitrobenzyl)-imidazole-2-carboxaldehyde

A 2.0 g portion of sodium hydride (60% in oil) is washed with pentane two times. To the residue is added 110 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide under argon. With stirring and external cooling, 4.80 g of 2-imidazolecarboxaldehyde is added and the cooling bath removed. Slight external heating results in a yellow solution. The reaction mixture is chilled in ice and 10.8 g of 2-nitrobenzyl bromide is added. The reaction mixture is stirred at 0°C for 18 hours. The volatiles are removed *in vacuo* to a residue which is stirred with ice water, filtered and the cake washed well with water and suction dried to give 10.9 g of the desired product as a solid, m.p. 141-144°C. MH+ 232.

Reference Example 13

10,11-Dihydro-5H-imidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

A 5.0 g sample of 1-(o-nitrobenzyl)-imidazole-2-carboxaldehyde is dissolved in 150 ml of hot ethyl alcohol, cooled to room temperature and filtered. To the filtrate is added 0.5 g of 10% Pd/C and the mixture hydrogenated at 48 psi for 4 hours. An additional 0.5 g of 10% Pd/C is added and hydrogenation continued for 25 hours at 65 psi. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the cake washed with ethyl acetate. The filtrate is evaporated *in vacuo* to a

residue which is dissolved in methylene chloride, treated with activated carbon, filtered through diatomaceous earth and hexanes added to the filtrate at the boil to give 1.86 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 164-170°C.

Reference Example 14

10,11-Dihydro-5H-imidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

To a suspension of 4 mmol of lithium aluminum hydride in 20 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran is added a 1 mmol solution of 10,11-dihydro-11-oxo-5H-imidazo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and the mixture is refluxed for 24 hours and cooled at 0°C. To the mixture is added dropwise 0.12 ml of water and 6 ml of 1 N sodium hydroxide. The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate and the solvent removed to give the desired product as a solid. Recrystallization from methylene chloride-hexane gives crystals, m.p. 164-170°C.

Reference Example 15

9,10-Dihydro-4H-furo[2,3-e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine

To a suspension of 4 mmol of lithium aluminum hydride in 25 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran is added 1 mmol of 9,10-dihydro-4H-furo[2,3-e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]-diazepin-9-one. The mixture is refluxed for 12 hours and allowed to stand overnight. To the mixture is added dropwise 0.12 ml of water and then 6 ml of 1 N sodium hydroxide. The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate and the extract dried (Na_2SO_4). The volatiles are removed *in vacuo* to give the desired product as a solid.

Reference Example 16

9,10-Dihydro-4H-furo[2,3-e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine

A solution of 1 mmol of 4H-furo[2,3-e]pyrrolo-[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine and 0.2 g of 10% Pd/C in 10 ml of ethanol is hydrogenated for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filtrate is evaporated *in vacuo* to give the desired product as a solid.

Reference Example 17

9,10-Dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[2,3-e]-[1,4]diazepine

To a mixture of 7.0 g of 9-oxo-9,10-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[2,3-e][1,4]diazepin in 25 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran is added 9 ml of 10 molar boron-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is refluxed for 6 hours. The solution is cooled to room temperature and 25 ml of methanol added dropwise. The volatiles are removed under vacuum. To the residue is added 100 ml of 2 N NaOH. The mixture is refluxed 5 hours and filtered. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is washed with 2 N citric acid, water and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed in vacuo to give the desired product as a solid.

Reference Example 18

4,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[3,2-e]-[1,4]diazepine

To a suspension of 7.0 g of 5-oxo-4,5-dihydro-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[3,2-e][1,4]diazepine in 25 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran is added 9 ml of 10 M borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is refluxed for 6 hours. The solution is cooled to room temperature and 25 ml of methanol added dropwise. The volatiles are removed under vacuum. To the residue is added 100 ml of 2 N NaOH. The mixture is refluxed 5 hours and filtered. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is washed with 2 N citric acid, water and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed to give a solid.

Reference Example 19

5,6-Dihydro-4H-[1,2,4]triazolo[4,3-a][1,5]benzodiazepine

A mixture of 7.0 g of 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,4]-triazolo-[4,3-a][1,5]benzodiazepin-5-one in 25 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 9 ml of 10 M borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is

refluxed for 6 hours, cooled to room temperature and 25 ml of methanol added dropwise. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and to the residue is added 100 ml of 2 N sodium hydroxide. The mixture is refluxed for 5 hours, chilled and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 2 N citric acid, water and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed under vacuum to give a solid. The solid is purified by chromatography on silica gel to give the desired product.

Reference Example 20

1-(2-Nitrophenyl)-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde

A sample of 4.7 g of sodium hydride (60% in oil) is washed with hexane (under argon). To the sodium hydride is added 200 ml of dry N,N-dimethylformamide and the mixture is chilled to 0°C. To the mixture is added 10.11 g of pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde in small portions. The mixture is stirred 10 minutes and 15.0 g of 1-fluoro-2-nitrobenzene added dropwise. After the addition, the mixture is stirred at room temperature 16 hours and the mixture concentrated (65°C) under high vacuum. To the residue is added 400 ml of dichloromethane and the mixture washed with 150 ml each of H_2O, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed *in vacuo* to give a yellow solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane (9:1) gives 17.0 g of light yellow crystals, m.p. 119°-122°C.

Reference Example 21

4,10-Dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]thieno[3,2-e]-[1,4]diazepine

To an ice cooled mixture of 2.1 g of pyrrole-2-carboxylic acid and 2.3 g of methyl 3-aminothiophene-2-carboxylate in 40 ml of dry dichloromethane is added 4 g of N,N-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and filtered. The filter cake is washed with dichloromethane and then extracted twice with 60 ml of acetone. The acetone

extract is concentrated to dryness to give 0.8 g of solid, m.p. 214-218°C. To a suspension of the preceding compound (1.19 g) in 20 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran is added 0.2 g of sodium hydride (60% in oil). After the hydrogen evolution, the mixture is stirred and refluxed for 4.5 hours, cooled and poured into ice-water. The precipitated solid is filtered and the solid triturated with petroleum ether (bp 30-60°C) to give 0.75 g of 4,10-dihydro-4,10-dioxo-5H-pyrrolo-[1,2-a]thieno[3,2-e][1,4]diazepine as a solid, m.p. 280-290°C. The preceding compound (0.362 g) is added to an ice-water cooled solution of 1 M diborane in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 65 hours. The solution is concentrated to dryness and ice-water added to the residue. The mixture is acidified with dilute HCl, stirred and then basified with solid $NaHCO_3$. The mixture is filtered to give 0.223 g of a solid (foam) m.p. 80-85°C.

Reference Example 22

10,11-Dihydro-5H-1,2,4-triazolo[3,4-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepine

A mixture of 2.2 g of 2-cyanoaniline, 2.0 g of methyl bromoacetate and 1.3 g of potassium carbonate in 12 ml of dry N,N-dimethylformamide is heated at 150-155°C for 40 minutes. The cooled mixture is poured into ice-water and the mixture filtered to give 2 g of methyl [N-(2-cyanophenyl)amino]acetate as a yellow solid, m.p. 70-78°C. The preceding compound (2.0 g) is added to a solution of 0.5 g of sodium methoxide in 50 ml of methanol. The mixture is shaken under an atmosphere of hydrogen with the catalyst Raney-Ni for 19 hours. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filtrate evaporated. Water is added to the residue and the mixture filtered to give 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1,4-benzodiazepin-3-one as a yellow solid, m.p. 167-170°C.

A mixture of the preceding compound (1.6 g) and 0.84 g of phosphorus pentasulfide in 10 ml of dry (dried over KOH) pyridine is stirred and heated at 80-85°C for 15 minutes. The mixture is poured into water and stirred for 30 minutes. Filtration gives 1.0 g of 1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-3H-1,4-benzodiazepin-3-thione as yellow solid, m.p. 150-153°C.

The preceding compound (0.5 g) and 0.5 g of N-formylhydrazine in 6 ml of dry n-butanol is refluxed for 16 hours and the solvent removed. The gummy residue is triturated with cold water and the mixture filtered. The solid is triturated with acetone to give 0.19 g of yellow solid, m.p. 232-237°C.

Reference Example 23

4,5-Dihydro-6H-[1,2,4]triazolo[4,3-a][1,5]-benzodiazepine

A mixture of 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1,5-benzodiazepin-2-thione (0.8 g) and 0.80 g of N-formylhydrazine in 8 ml of n-butanol is stirred and refluxed for 18 hours and the solvent removed under vacuum. Ice water is added to the residual solid and the mixture filtered to give 0.312 g of a gray solid, m.p. 162-165°C.

Reference Example 24

4,5-Dihydro-6H-imidazo[1,2-a][1,5]benzodiazepine

A mixture of 30 g of acrylic acid, 33 g of o-phenylenediamine is heated on a steam bath for 1.5 hours and the cooled black mixture triturated with ice-water. The aqueous phase is decanted and ice and aqueous ammonium hydroxide added to the residue. The mixture is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract concentrated to dryness. The residue is triturated with carbon tetrachloride and filtered. The oily solid is triturated with a small amount of ethanol to give 9.7 g of a solid. Trituration of the solid with ethyl acetate

gives 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-1,5-benzodiazepin-2-one as an impure solid, m.p. 75-107°C.

A mixture of the preceding compound (11.3 g) and 5.9 g of phosphorus pentasulfide in 70 ml of dry pyridine is stirred and heated at approximately 80°C for 20 minutes. The mixture is poured into water and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. Filtration gives 8.6 g of 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-1,5-benzodiazepin-2-thione as a solid, m.p. 154-157°C.

A mixture of the preceding compound (0.70 g), 1.0 g of aminoacetaldehyde dimethyl acetal and 15 mg of 4-methylbenzenesulfonic acid monohydrate in 6 ml of dry n-butanol is refluxed for 4 hours and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is heated (refluxed) with 10 ml of 3 *N* hydrochloric acid for 55 minutes. Ice is added to the cooled mixture and the mixture made basic with solid $NaHCO_3$. The mixture is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed to give an orange syrup which solidified on standing. The oily solid is triturated with acetone to give a light yellow solid (0.185 g) m.p. 119-122°C.

Reference Example 25

1-(2-Nitrophenyl)-2-pyrroleacetic acid, ethyl ester

To a stirred mixture of 1.88 g of 1-(2-nitrophenyl)pyrrole, 4.80 g of ethyl iodoacetate and 2.22 g of $FeSO_4.7H_2O$ in 40 ml of dimethyl sulfoxide is added dropwise 10 ml of 30% hydrogen peroxide while keeping the reaction mixture at room temperature with a cold water bath. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for one day. An additional 2.4 g of ethyl iodoacetate, 1.1 g of $FeSO_4.7H_2O$ and 5 ml of 30% hydrogen peroxide is added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 1 day. The mixture is diluted with water and extracted with diethyl ether. The organic extract is washed with water, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4).

The solvent is removed and the residue (2.12 g) chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:4) as solvent to give 0.30 g of product as a brown gum.

Reference Example 26

6,7-Dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,5]benzodiazepin-6-one

To a solution of 0.8 mmol of 1-(2-nitrophenyl)-2-pyrroleacetic acid, ethyl ester in 3 ml of ethanol is added stannus chloride dihydrate ($SnCl_2.2H_2O$) in 2 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid (with cooling in water bath). The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 5 hours and chilled in an ice bath. To the mixture is added slowly saturated sodium carbonate solution. The solid which precipitates is filtered and the solid washed with water and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate extract is dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed to give 0.16 g of solid which is triturated with ether to give 0.11 g of product as an off-white solid.

Reference Example 27

6,7-Dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,5]benzodiazepine

To a solution of 0.070 g of 6,7-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,5]benzodiazepin-6-one in 2 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 0.45 ml of a 2.0 M solution of diborane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is refluxed for 3 hours, poured into water and made basic with 2 N NaOH. The tetrahydrofuran is removed under vacuum and the residual aqueous mixture extracted with diethyl ether. The extract is washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed to give 0.065 g of a colorless oil; one spot by thin layer chromatography (silica gel) with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:2) as solvent (Rf 0.81).

Reference Example 28

1-[2-Nitro-5-(ethoxycarbonyl)benzyl]-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde

To a stirred slurry of 2.2 g of sodium hydride (60% in oil, washed with hexane) in tetrahydrofuran is added at 0°C a solution of 4.5 g of pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde in 25 ml of tetrahydrofuran. After the addition is complete, a solution of 15 g of ethyl 4-nitro-3-bromomethylbenzoate in 30 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran is slowly added under nitrogen. The reaction mixture is stirred at 20°C for 8 hours and carefully quenched with water. The reaction mixture is extracted with chloroform which is washed with water, dried with Na_2SO_4 and concentrated <u>in vacuo</u> to give 12 g of the desired product as a solid; mass spectrum (M^+H)349.

Reference Example 29

1-[2-Nitro-4-(ethoxycarbonyl)benzyl]-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde

The conditions of Example 28 are used with ethyl 3-nitro-4-bromomethylbenzoate to give 13.0 g of the desired product as a solid; mass spectrum (M^+H)349.

Reference Example 30

Ethyl 10,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepine-7-carboxylate

A solution of 10.0 g of 1-[2-nitro-5-(ethoxycarbonyl)benzyl]-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde in 150 ml of absolute ethanol containing 1.0 g of 10% Pd/C is hydrogenated in a Parr apparatus for 16 hours under 40 psi of hydrogen. The reaction mixture is filtered through a pad of diatomaceous earth and the filtrate concentrated <u>in vacuo</u> to a residue of 5.5 g of the desired product as a solid; mass spectrum (M^+H)255.

Reference Example 31

Ethyl 10,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepine-8-carboxylate

The hydrogenation conditions of ethyl 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepine-7-carboxylate are used with 1-[2-nitro-4-(ethoxycarbonyl)-benzyl]-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde to give 5.0 g of the desired product as a solid; mass spectrum $(M^{+}H)$255.

Reference Example 32

2-Methylfurane-3-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 4.0 g of methyl-2-methylfurane-3-carboxylate, 30 ml of 2 N NaOH and 15 ml methanol is refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solvent is removed under vacuum to give a solid. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane (discarded). The solid is dissolved in water and the solution acidified with 2 N citric acid to give a solid. The solid is washed with water and dried to give crystals 1.05 g of crystals of 2-methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid. The preceding compound (0.95 g) and 3 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. The solvent is removed, toluene added (20 ml, three times) and the solvent removed to give the product as an oil.

Reference Example 33

2-[2-(Tributylstannyl)-3-thienyl]-1,3-dioxolane

To a stirred solution of 15.6 g (0.10 mol) of 2-(3-thienyl)-1,3-dioxolane in 100 ml of anhydrous ether, n-butyl-lithium (1.48 N, in hexane, 74.3 ml) is added dropwise under nitrogen at room temperature. After being refluxed for 15 minutes, the reaction mixture is cooled to -78°C and tri-n-butyltin chloride (34.18 g, 0.105 mol) in 100 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran is added dropwise. After the addition is complete, the mixture is warmed to room temperature and the solvent evaporated. To the oily residue 100 ml of hexane is added, and the resulting precipitate (LiCl) is filtered off. The filtrate is evaporated and the residue dis-

tilled at reduced pressure, giving 34.16 g (77%) of the desired product.

Reference Example 34

Methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate

Dry methanol (400 ml) is cooled in an ice bath and HCl gas is bubbled into the mixture for 25 minutes. To the MeOH-HCl is added 30 g of 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid and then the mixture is stirred and heated at 90°C for 2 hours (all the solid dissolved). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residual solid dissolved in 100 ml of water. The acidic solution is neutralized with saturated sodium bicarbonate (solid separated) and the mixture chilled and filtered to give 30 g of white crystals, m.p. 150°-154°C.

Reference Example 35

6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a mixture of 4.5 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 5.53 ml of triethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane (cooled in an ice bath) is added 6.38 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature under argon for 18 hours and an additional 3.4 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride added. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the mixture is filtered to give 3.0 g of methyl 6-[[bis(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue triturated with hexane and ethyl acette to give an additional 9.0 g of bis acylated compound.

A mixture of 12.0 g of methyl 6-[[bis(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, 60 ml of methanol-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum, diluted with 25 ml of water, cooled and acidified with 1 N HCl. The mix-

ture is filtered and the solid washed with water to give 6.3 g of the product as a white solid.

As described for Reference Example 35, but substituting the appropriate aroyl chloride, heteroaroyl chloride, cycloalkanoyl chlorides, phenylacetylchlorides and related appropriate acid chlorides, the following 6-[(aroylamino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids, 6-[(hetero-aroyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids and related 6-[(acylated)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids are prepared.

Reference Example 36

6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 37

6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 38

6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 39

6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 40

6-[(3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 41

6-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 42

6-[(2-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 43

6-[(2-Fluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 44

6-[(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 45

6-[(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 46

6-[(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 47

6-[(3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 48

6-[(2,4-Difluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 49

6-[(2-Bromobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 50

6-[(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 51

6-[(Tetrahydrofuranyl-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 52

6-[(Tetrahydrothienyl-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 53

6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 54

6-[(cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 55

6-[(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 56

6-[(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 57

6-[(cyclopentylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 58

6-[(cyclohexylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 59

6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 60

6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 61

6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Example 62

6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 63

6-[(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 64

6-[(2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 65

6-[(2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 66

6-[(3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 67

6-[(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 68

6-[(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 69

6-[(2-Methoxybenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 70

6-[(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 71

6-[(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 72

6-[[2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 73

6-[(2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 74

6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 75

6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 76

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 77

6-[(2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 78

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 79

6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 80

6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 81

6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 82

6-[(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 6.2 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 23 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. An additional 12 ml of thionyl chloride is added and the mixture refluxed for 0.5 hour. The mixture is concentrated to dryness under vacuum and 30 ml of toluene added to the residue. The toluene is removed under vacuum and the

process (add toluene and remove) is repeated to give 7.7 g of crude product as a solid.

As described for Reference Example 82, the following 6-(acyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl chlorides are prepared.

<u>Reference Example 83</u>

<u>6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 84</u>

<u>6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 85</u>

<u>6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 86</u>

<u>6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 87</u>

<u>6-[(3-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 88</u>

<u>6-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 89</u>

<u>6-[(2-Chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride,</u> white crystals

<u>Reference Example 90</u>

<u>6-[(2-Fluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 91</u>

<u>6-[(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 92</u>

<u>6-[(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

<u>Reference Example 93</u>

<u>6-[(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride</u>

Reference Example 94

6-[(3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 95

6-[(2,4-Difluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 96

6-[(2-Bromobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 97

6-[(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 98

6-[(Tetrahydrofuranyl-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 99

6-[(Tetrahydrothienyl-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 100

6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 101

6-[(Cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 102

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 103

6-[(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 104

6-[(Cyclopentylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 105

6-[(Cyclohexylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 106

6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 107

6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 108

6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 109

6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 110

6-[(2-Methyl-5-fluorobenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 111

6-[(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 112

6-[(2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 113

6-[(2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 114

6-[(3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 115

6-[(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 116

6-[(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 117

6-[(2-Methoxybenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 118

6-[(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 119

6-[(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 120

6-[[2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 121

6-[(2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 122

6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 123

6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 124

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 125

6-[(2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 126

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 127

6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 128

6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 129

6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 130

1-(3-Nitro-2-pyridinyl)-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde

A sample (3.6 g) of sodium hydride (60% in oil) is washed with hexane under argon. To the sodium hydride is added 100 ml of dry N,N-dimethylformamide. The mixture is cooled in an ice bath and 7.8 g of 1H-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde is added in small portions. After the addition the cooled mixture is stirred for 15 minutes and 13.0 g of 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine is added. The mixture is heated at 120°C for 16 hours. The solvent is removed under vacuum at 80°C and to the dark residue is added 200 ml of ethyl acetate. The mixture is filtered and to the filtrate is added 100 ml of water. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and then filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is diluted with water, the organic layer separated, washed 2 times with 100 ml of water and once with 100 ml of brine and then dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed under vacuum to give 16 g of solid. The solid is chromatographed on a silica gel column with hexane-ethyl acetate (2:1) as solvent to give crystals which are recrystalizzed from ethyl acetate-hexane (97:3) to give 8.5 g of product as crystals, m.p. 122°-125°C.

Reference Example 131

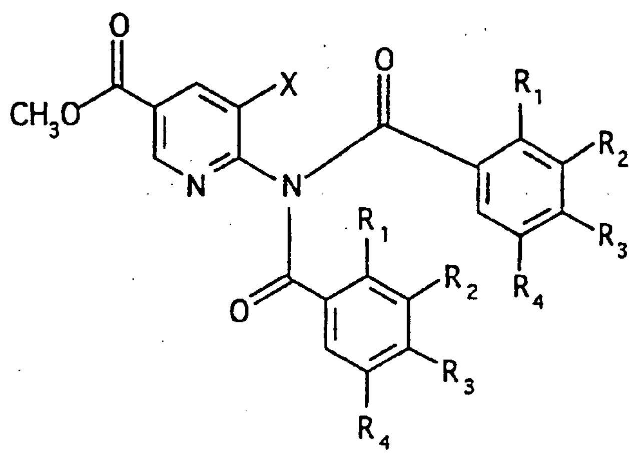
5,6-Dihydropyrido[3,2-e]pyrrolo[1,2-a]pyrazine

To a suspension of 8.0 g of 1-(3-nitro-2-pyridinyl)-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde in 150 ml of ethyl acetate is added 800 mg of 10% Pd/C. The mixture is shaken in a Parr hydrogenator for 3 hours and then filtered through diatomaceous earth. The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum to give 8.5 g of solid. The solid is purified by chromatography over silica gel with solvent hexane-ethyl acetate (2:1) as solvent to give 2.6 g of product as white crystals, m.p. 92°-94°C and

1.6 g of pyrido[3,2-a]pyrrolo[1,2-a]pyrazine as tan needles, m.p. 88°C to 90°C.

As described for Reference Example 35, the following bis acylated products (Table A) are prepared and purified by silica gel chromatography. These compounds are then hydrolysed to the acids as described in Example 35 (Table B).

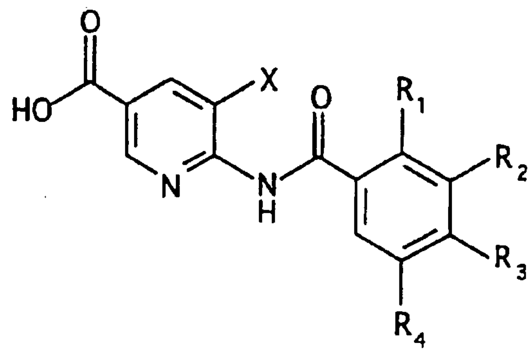
Table A



Ref. Ex No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	X	M+
132	CH_3	H	H	H	H	388
133	CH_3	H	H	F	H	424
134	CH_3	F	H	H	H	426
135	H	OCH_3	OCH_3	OCH_3	H	540
136	Cl	H	H	H	H	430
137	F	H	F	H	H	396
138	Br	H	H	H	H	520
139	Cl	H	F	H	H	412
140	Ph	H	H	H	H	512
142	Cl	H	H	Br	H	474
143	CH_3	H	H	F	Br	
144	CH_3	H	H	H	Br	468

M^+ is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum

Table B



Ref. Ex. No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	X	M+
145	CH3	H	H	H	H	256
146	CH3	H	H	F	H	274
147	CH3	F	H	H	H	274
148	H	OCH3	OCH3	OCH3	H	332
149	Cl	H	H	H	H	276
150	F	H	F	H	H	278
151	Br	H	H	H	H	322
152	Cl	H	F	H	H	294
153	Ph	H	H	H	H	318
154	Cl	H	H	Br	H	356
155	CH3	H	H	F	Cl	
156	CH3	H	H	H	Br	336

M^+ is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum.

Reference Example 157

6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a stirred solution of 6-aminonicotinic acid (13.8 g, 0.1 mole) in glacial acetic acid (100 ml), bromine (16 g, 5 ml, 0.1 mole) in acetic acid (20 ml) is added slowly. The reaction mixture is stirred for 8 hours at room temperature and the acetic acid is removed under reduced pressure. The yellow solid residue is dissolved in water and carefully neutralized with 30%

NH_4OH. The separated solid is filtered and washed with water to give 18 g of solid; mass spectrum: 218 (M^+).

Reference Example 158

Methyl 6-amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylate

6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid (10 g, 50 mmol) is dissolved in saturated methanolic HCl (100 ml) and refluxed for 24 hours. The solvent, methanol, is re-moved under reduced pressure and the residue is dis-solved in ice cold water. The aqueous solution is neutralized with 0.1 N NaOH and the solid which separates is filtered; washed well with water and air dried to yield 10 g of product as a solid: mass spectrum 231 (M^+).

Reference Example 159

10-[[6-Chloro-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

To a mixture of 1.84 g of 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 1.52 g of tri-ethylamine in 20 ml of dichloromethane is added a solu-tion of 2.11 g of 6-chloronicotinyl chloride in 5 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched with 30 ml of 1 N sodium hydroxide. The mixture is diluted with 20 ml of dichloromethane and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed twice with 20 ml of 1 N sodium hydroxide, washed with brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residue tri-turated with ether to give 3.22 g of white solid; mass spectrum (CI) 324 (M+H).

Reference Example 160

10-[[6-[(2-dimethylaminoethyl)amino]-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepine

A mixture of 10-[[6-chloro-3-pyridinyl]-carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzo-diazepine (3.2 g), K_2CO_3 (5 g) and the 2-dimethylamino-

ethylamine (5 ml) is heated in dimethylsulfoxide (80 ml) for 6 hours at 100°C (with stirring). The reaction mixture is quenched with water and the solid which separates, is filtered off and washed well with water. Examination of the TLC ($CHCl_3$:MeOH; 3:1) showed the products to be sufficiently pure to be used for further reactions without purification. Yield 3.2 g, 85%, mass spectrum (CI) 376 (M+1).

Reference Example 161

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 5.0 g methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate, 12.6 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 12.2 g of 2-methylbenzeneacetyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon at room temperature overnight. The mixture is diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 50 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with 50 ml each of 1 M $NaHCO_3$, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue (9.0 g) is chromatographed on a silica gel column with hexane-ethyl acetate (3:1) as eluent to give 8.6 g of solid. This solid, mainly methyl 6-[[bis(2-methylbenzeneacetyl)]-amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, is dissolved in 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH added to the solution. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and the mixture concentrated under vacuum. Water (25 ml) is added and the mixture is stirred and acidified with cold 1 N HCl. The mixture is chilled and the solid filtered and washed with water to give 5.9 g of off-white solid.

Reference Example 162

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 4.5 g of 6-[(2-methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 25 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour and then concentrated to dryness under vacuum. To the residue is added 20 ml of toluene and the solvent removed under vacuum. The addition and removal of toluene is repeated and the residual solid dried at room temperature under vacuum to give 5.3 g of dark brown solid.

Reference Example 163

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a chilled solution (0°C) of 5.0 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 12.6 ml of diisopropylethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added 12.2 g of 2-methylbenzeneacetyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature 16 hours and diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 50 ml of water. The organic layer is separated and washed with 50 ml each of 1 M $NaHCO_3$, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue (9.0 g) is purified by chromatography on silica gel with hexane-ethyl acetate (3:1) as eluent to give 0.70 g of methyl 6-[[bis(2-methylbenzeneacetyl)]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate and 8.6 g of a mixture of methyl 6-[(2-methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate and the bis acylated product. The above mixture (8.6 g) of mono and bis acylated product is dissolved in 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH is added. The solution is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours, concentrated under vacuum, diluted with 25 ml of H_2O and acidified with cold 1 N HCl. The precipi-

tated solid is filtered off and dried to give 5.9 g of white solid.

Reference Example 164

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 4.5 g of 6-[(2-methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 17 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1/2 hour. An additional 815 ml of thionyl chloride is added and the mixture refluxed for 0.5 hour. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and toluene (20 ml) added (twice) and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 5.3 g of a dark colored solid.

Reference Example 165

2-Biphenylcarbonyl chloride

A mixture of 5.6 g of 2-biphenylcarboxylic acid and 29 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 0.5 hour and the volatiles removed under vacuum. Toluene (40 ml) is added (twice) and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 6.8 g of a yellow oil.

Reference Example 166

Methyl 6-[[bis(2-biphenylcarbonyl)]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 2.64 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 5.5 ml of diisopropylethylamine in 30 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added 6.8 g of 2-biphenylcarbonyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature 2 days and then diluted with 120 ml of dichloromethane and 50 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with 50 ml each of 1 M $NaHCO_3$ and brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum to give a solid.

Crystallization from ethyl acetate gives 6.2 g of white crystals, m.p. 180-188°C.

Reference Example 167

6-[(2-Biphenylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a chilled (0°C) mixture of 6.0 g of methyl 6-[[bis(2-biphenylcarbonyl)]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate in 40 ml of methanol and 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added slowly 18 ml of 2 N NaOH. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and brought to pH 5 with glacial acetic acid. The mixture is concentrated, acidified to pH 2-3 with 1 N HCl and extracted with 250 ml of ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with 50 ml of brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residual white solid is triturated with 15 ml of ethyl acetate to give 3.35 g of white crystals, m.p. 215-217°C.

Reference Example 168

6-[(2-Biphenylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 1.9 g of 6-[(2-biphenylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 9 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour and then concentrated to dryness under vacuum. Toluene (15 ml) is added (twice) to the residue and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 2.1 g of a light brown oil.

Reference Example 169

6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 5.0 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 12.6 ml of diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added a solution of 9.7 ml of cyclohexylcarbonyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 60 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with 60 ml of brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a

thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum to give 12.8 g of a solid.

The above solid (12.0 g) in a mixture of 150 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) is chilled (0°C) and 62 ml of 2 N sodium hydroxide added. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, neutralized with 10 ml of glacial acetic acid and concentrated under vacuum. The mixture (containing solid) is acidified to pH 1 with 1 N HCl and extracted with 250 ml of ethyl acetate and twice with 100 ml of ethyl acetate. The combined extract is washed with 100 ml of brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated to a white solid. Trituration with hexane gives 6.5 g of product as a white solid.

Reference Example 170

5-[(6-Chloro-3-pyridinyl)carbonyl]-5,10-dihydro-4H-pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

To a solution of 10 mmol of 5,10-dihydro-4H-pyrazolo[5,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 1.5 g of triethylamine in 20 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 2.11 g of 6-chloropyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 5 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred for 3 hours at room temperature diluted with 20 ml of dichloromethane and washed with 30 ml of 1 N NaOH. The organic layer is washed twice with 20 ml of 1 N NaOH, dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed. The residue is triturated with ether to give 3 g of solid.

Reference Example 171

Methyl 4-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-3-methoxybenzoate

A mixture of 10.0 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid in 75 ml of methylene chloride and 12.52 g of oxalyl chloride is stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. The volatiles are evaporated *in vacuo* to give 11.06 g of an oil. A 2.16 g portion of the above oil in 25 ml of methylene chloride is reacted with 1.81 g of methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.30 g of N,N-

diisopropylethylamine by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 3.20 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 115-117°C.

Reference Example 172

Methyl 4-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoate

A solution of 2.37 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.84 g of methyl 4-amino-2-chlorobenzoate and 1.49 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 1.1 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 132-134°C. M^+H=365

Reference Example 173

4-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoic Acid

A mixture of 3.0 g of methyl 4-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.0 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried *in vacuo* at 80°C to give 0.1 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 217-219°C

Reference Example 174

4-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)-amino]-3-methoxybenzoyl Chloride

A solution of 2.69 g of 4-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]-3-methoxy benzoic acid in 5 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour under Argon. The volatiles are removed in vacuo to give a residue which is stirred with hexane to give 2.58 g of crystalline solid, m.p. 121-123°C. M+=361.

Reference Example 175

Methyl 4-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate

A mixture of 10.0 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid in 75 ml of methylene chloride and 12.52 g of oxalyl chloride is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 11.66 g of an oil. A 7.5 g portion of the above oil in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to a solution of 4.53 g of methyl 4-aminobenzoate and 4.3 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 100 ml of methylene chloride at 0°C. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, and saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 8.38 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 163-165°C.

Reference Example 176

4-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoic Acid

A 3.15 g sample of methyl 4-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate is refluxed for 8 hours in 100 ml of ethyl alcohol and 2.5 ml of 10N sodium hydroxide. The cooled reaction mixture is acidified with [[? acid]] and the desired product collected and dried to give 2.9 g of the desired product as a solid m.p. 246-249°C. M+H=318.

Reference Example 177

4-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 1.39 g of 4-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. Cold hexane is added and the crystalline solid collected and dried to give 1.34 g of the desired product, m.p. 118-120°C.

Reference Example 178

2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 5.0 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 5.74 g of the desired product as an oil. M^+=227 as methyl ester.

Reference Example 179

Methyl 4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate

To 3.03 g of methyl 4-aminobenzoate and 3.12 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 75 ml of methylene chloride is added 5.54 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl chloride and the reactants stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two times and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 5.04 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 138-139°C.

Reference Example 180

Sodium 4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate

A mixture of 4.90 g of methyl 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate in 100 ml of absolute ethanol and 3.50 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. The aqueous phase is filtered and the resulting solid collected and dried to give 4.25 g of the desired product m.p. 340-346°C.

Reference Example 181

4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic Acid

A mixture of 4.0 g sodium 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate is suspended in water and the pH adjusted to 5 with acetic acid. The solid is collected by filtration and dried at 80°C in vacuo to give 3.75 g of the desired product, 246-247°C. M^+=332.

Reference Example 182

4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 2.0 g of 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)-benzoyl]amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 1.53 g of the desired product as an oil. M^+=346 as methyl ester.

Reference Example 183

Methyl 4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]-2-chlorobenzoate

A mixture of 5.0 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 5.70 g of an oil. A 2.85 g portion of the above oil in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added to a solution of 50 ml of methylene chloride containing 1.85 g of methyl 4-amino-2-chlorobenzoate and 1.65 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two times and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 2.96 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 133-135°C. M^+=380.

Reference Example 184

Methyl 4-[[(2-Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]-3-methoxybenzoate

A solution of 2.85 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)-benzoyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added

dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.84 g of methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.61 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 2.2 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 129-131°C. M^+=376.

Reference Example 185

2-Chloro-4-[[(2-Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic Acid

A mixture of 2.8 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]aminobenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 1.84 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried *in vacuo* at 80°C to give 2.6 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 184-187°C. M^+H=366.

Reference Example 186

3-Methoxy-4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate

A mixture of 2.05 g of methyl 4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]-3-methoxybenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 1.4 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried *in vacuo* at 80°C to give 1.87 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 176-178°C. M^+H=362.

Reference Example 187

3-Methoxy-4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 1.71 g of 3-methoxy-4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of

thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The resulting solid is collected and dried to give 1.71 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 130-135°C. M^+=376 as the methyl ester.

Reference Example 188

[4'-(Trifluoromethyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl Chloride

A mixture of 5.0 g of 4'-(trifluoromethyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The resulting solid is collected and dried to give 5.36 g of the desired product as a colorless oil. M^+=280 as methyl ester.

Reference Example 189

Methyl 2-Chloro-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]carbonyl]amino]benzoate

A solution of 3.13 g of [4'-(trifluoromethyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.84 g of methyl 4-aminobenzoate and 1.43 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 3.36 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 164-165°C. M^+=396.

Reference Example 190

3-Methoxy-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 2.0 g of 3-methoxy-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-benzoic acid in 20 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The

resulting solid is collected and dried to give 1.92 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 136-138°C.

Reference Example 191

3-Methoxy-4-[([4'-trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoic Acid

A mixture of 3.78 g of methyl 3-methoxy-4-[([4'-trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)-amino]benzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.20 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried *in vacuo* at 80°C to give 3.49 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 213-215°C.

Reference Example 192

Methyl 3-Methoxy-4-[([4'-trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate

A solution of 3.56 g of [4'-(trifluoro-methyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.81 g of methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.62 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 3.9 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 112-113°C.

Reference Example 193

2-Chloro-4-[([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 1.39 g of 2-chloro-4-[([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-

benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The reaction mixture is concentrated to a residue _in vacuo_ to a residue. Cold hexane is added to the residue and the solid collected and dried to give 1.39 g of the desired product.

Reference Example 194

2-Chloro-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoic acid

A mixture of 3.83 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-[([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)-amino]benzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.20 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried _in vacuo_ at 80°C to give 3.42 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 187-189°C.

Reference Example 195

Methyl 2-Chloro-4-[[[4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoate

A solution of 3.56 g of [4'-(trifluoro-methyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.86 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-aminobenzoate and 1.6 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate(3X) and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 4.0 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 130-132°C.

Reference Example 196

4-[([4'-(Trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]carbonyl)amino]benzoic Acid

A mixture of 3.0 g of methyl 4-[([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.0 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 2.93 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 243-245°C. M^+=385.

Reference Example 197

Methyl 6-[[3-(2-methylpyridinyl)carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate

To a stirred solution of 3 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 4 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 100 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise a solution of 6.4 g of 2-methylpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched with water. The organic layer is washed with water, dried($MgSO_4$), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is stirred with ether and the resulting solid collected and air dried to give 6.8 g of the desired product. M^+=390.

Reference Example 198

6-[[3-(2-methylpyridinyl)carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic Acid

To a solution of 6.5 g of methyl 6-[[3-(2-methylpyridinyl)carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate in 100 ml of 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methyl alcohol is added 20 ml of 5N NaOH. The reaction mixture is stirred overnight and evaporated in vacuo to a residue. The residue is dissolved in water and neutralized with acetic acid.

The separated solid is filtered and air-dried to give 3.0 g of the desired product. M^+=257.

Reference Example 199

Methyl 6-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-pyridine-3-carboxylate

To a solution of 1.5 g of methyl 6-amino-pyridine-3-carboxylate in 100 ml of methylene chloride is added 3 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine at room temperature. To the stirred reaction mixture is slowly added a solution of 2.5 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 4 hours and then quenched with water. The organic layer is washed well with water and dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and evaporated in vacuo to a solid residue. The residue is stirred with ether, filtered and dried to give 3.0 g of the desired product:M^+=332.

Reference Example 200

6-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic Acid

To a stirred solution of 2.5 g of methyl 6-[([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-pyridine-3-carboxylate in 50 ml of 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methanol is added 10 ml of 5N sodium hydroxide and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in water and neutralized with acetic acid. The separated colorless solid is filtered and air dried to give 2.0 g of the desired product:M^+=318.

Reference Example 201

Methyl 2-(2-Pyridinyl)benzoate

A mixture of 12 g of methyl 2-(iodomethyl)-benzoate, 20 g of n-butyl stannane and 2 g of tetrakis-(triphenylphosphine)palladium (O) are refluxed in degassed toluene for 48 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is purified by

column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to give 5.5 g of the desired product as an oil. M^+=213.

Reference Example 202

2-(2-Pyridinyl)benzoic Acid

A mixture of 3.0 g of methyl 2-(2-pyridinyl)-benzoate and 600 mg of sodium hydroxide in 50 ml of 9:1 methanol:water is refluxed for 4 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo and the residue dissolved in 50 ml of cold water. The solution is neutralized with glacial acetic acid and the resulting product filtered, washed with water, and dried to give 2.5 g of the desired product:M+1=200.

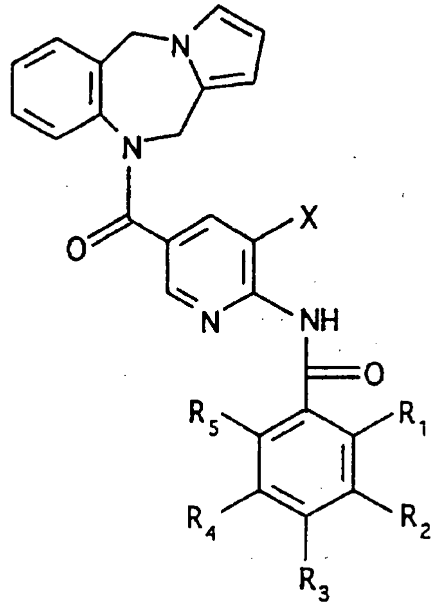
Example 1

N-[5-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

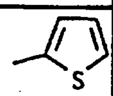
A mixture of thionyl chloride (100 ml) and 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid (2.7 g, 10 mmol) is heated to reflux for 5 hours. At the end, excess thionyl chloride is removed and the acid chloride is dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 (100 ml). At room temperature, the methylene chloride solution of the 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride is added slowly. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched with ice cold water. The reaction mixture is washed with 0.1 N NaOH and subsequently washed with water. The CH_2Cl_2 layer is separated; dried ($MgSO_4$), filtered and concentrated. The product is purified by silica gel column chromatography by eluting first with 10% ethyl acetate-hexane (1 L) and then with 30% ethyl acetate-hexane. The product is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane. Yield 1.0 g, 46 ; mass spectrum (FAB), M^+1 441; M^+Na: 462.

As described for Example 1, the following compounds are prepared (Table C).

Table C



Ex.No	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_5	X	M+1
2	CH_3	H	H	H	H	H	423
3	CH_3	H	H	H	F	H	
4	CH_3	F	H	H	H	H	441
5	H	OCH_3	OCH_3	OCH_3	H	H	499
6	Cl	H	H	H	H	H	443
7	F	H	F	H	H	H	445
8	Br	H	H	H	H	H	489
9	Cl	H	F	H	H	H	461
10	Ph	H	H	H	H	H	
11	Cl	H	H	Br	H	H	
12	CH_3	H	H	H	H	Br	502
13	CH_3	H	H	F	H	Cl	
14	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H	
15	CH_3	CH_3	H	H	H	H	
16	Cl	H	H	F	H	H	
17	Cl	H	H	CF_3	H	H	
18	Cl	H	H	H	F	H	
19	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H	

Ex.No	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	X	M+1
20	Cl	H	H	F	H	H	
21		H	H	H	H	H	
22		H	H	H	H	H	
23	CH_3	H	H	H	CH_3	H	
24	Cl	H	H	F	H	Cl	
25	Cl	H	F	H	H	Cl	
26	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H	
27	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H	
28	$-OCH_3$	H	H	H	H	H	
29	OCF_3	H	H	H	H	H	
30	$-CF_3$	H	H	H	H	H	
31	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	
32	$-SCH_3$	H	H	H	H	H	
33	Cl	H	NO_2	H	H	H	
34	CH_3	H	H	CH_3	H	H	
35	F	H	H	Cl	H	H	
36	Cl	H	H	NH_2	H	H	
37	F	CF_3	H	H	H	H	
38	$-OCH_3$	H	H	Cl	H	H	
39	Cl	H	H	$-SCH_3$	H	H	
40	F	H	H	H	CF_3	H	
41	F	H	CF_3	H	H	H	
42	CF_3	H	F	H	H	H	
43	NO_2	H	H	H	H	H	
44	F	H	H	H	H	H	
45	Cl	H	NH_2	H	H	H	

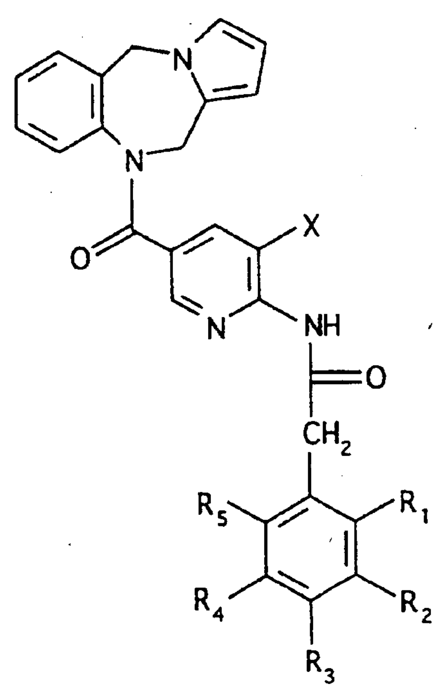
Example 46

N-[5-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide

A mixture of 2.0 mmol of 10,11-dihydro-10-(6-amino-3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine, 2.1 mmol of 2-methylbenzeneacetyl chloride and 5 mmol of triethylamine in 10 ml of dichloromethane is stirred under argon at room temperature for 16 hours. The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residue partitioned between 50 ml of ethyl acetate and 25 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with H_2O, 1 N $NaHCO_3$, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed and the residue chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

As described for Example 46, the following compounds are prepared (Table D).

Table D



Ex No.	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_5	X
47	CH_3	H	H	CH_3	H	H
48	CH_3	H	H	H	H	Br
49	CH_3	H	H	H	H	Cl
50	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
51	Cl	H	H	H	H	Br
52	Cl	H	H	H	H	Cl
53	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	H
54	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Br
55	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
56	$-OCH_3$	H	H	H	H	H
57	$-OCH_3$	H	H	H	H	Br
58	$-OCH_3$	H	H	H	H	Cl
59	$-OCH_3$	H	H	$-OCH_3$	H	H
60	$-OCH_3$	H	H	$-OCH_3$	H	Br
61	$-OCH_3$	H	H	$-OCH_3$	H	Cl
62	H	$-OCH_3$	$-OCH_3$	H	H	H
63	H	$-OCH_3$	$-OCH_3$	H	H	Br
64	H	$-OCH_3$	$-OCH_3$	H	H	Cl
65	H	Cl	H	H	H	H
66	H	Cl	H	H	H	Br
67	H	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
68	H	H	Cl	H	H	H
69	H	H	Cl	H	H	Br
70	H	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
71	F	H	H	H	H	H
72	F	H	H	H	H	Br
73	F	H	H	H	H	Cl
74	H	F	H	H	H	H
75	H	F	H	H	H	Br
76	H	F	H	H	H	Cl
77	H	H	F	H	H	H
78	H	H	F	H	H	Br

Ex No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	X
79	H	H	F	H	H	Cl
80	H	CH_3	H	H	H	H
81	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Br
82	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Cl

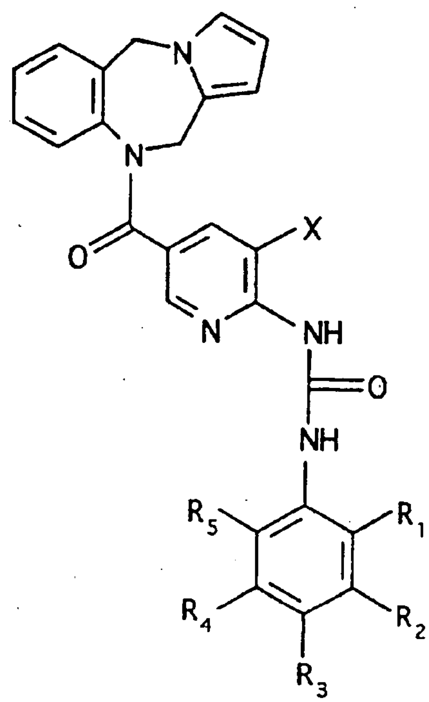
Example 83

10,11-Dihydro-10-[[6-[[[2-methylphenyl)amino]-carbonyl]amino]-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepine

A mixture of 2.0 mmol of 10,11-dihydro-10-(6-amino-3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 4.0 mmol of (2-methylphenyl)isocyanate in 12 ml of tetrahydrofuran is refluxed for 16 hours. The solvent is removed and the residue chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

As described for Example 83, the following compounds are prepared (Table E).

Table E



Ex No.	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_5	X
84	H	CH_3	H	H	H	H
85	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Br
86	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Cl
87	H	H	CH_3	H	H	H
88	H	H	CH_3	H	H	Br
89	H	H	CH_3	H	H	Cl
90	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
91	Cl	H	H	H	H	Br
92	Cl	H	H	H	H	Cl
93	H	Cl	H	H	H	H
94	H	Cl	H	H	H	Br
95	H	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
96	H	H	Cl	H	H	H
97	H	H	Cl	H	H	Br

Ex No.	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_5	X
98	H	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
99	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
100	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	Br
101	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
102	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	H
103	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Br
104	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
105	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
106	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	Br
107	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	Cl
108	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	H
109	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	Br
110	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	Cl
111	F	H	F	H	H	H
112	F	H	F	H	H	Br
113	F	H	F	H	H	Cl
114	F	H	H	F	H	H
115	F	H	H	F	H	Br
116	F	H	H	F	H	Cl
117	F	H	H	H	F	H
118	F	H	H	H	F	Br
119	F	H	H	H	F	Cl

Example 120

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

A mixture of 0.44 g of N-[5-(5H-pyrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide, 5 ml of a 40% aqueous solution of dimethylamine and 5 ml of an aqueous solution of formaldehyde in 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) is refluxed for 16 hours in the presence of a drop of glacial acetic acid. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum and the residue extracted with

chloroform. The extract is washed with water, dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent removed. The residue is purified by column chromatography on silica gel with 5% methanol in chloroform as eluent to give 0.45 g of solid: mass spectrum (CI) 499 (M+1).

The following Examples are prepared as described for Example 120 with formaldehyde and the appropriate amine.

Example 121

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-chloro-2-methylbenzamide

Example 122

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

Example 123

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

Example 124

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

Example 125

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

Example 126

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzamide

Example 127

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide

Example 128

N-[5-[[3-(1-Pyrrolidinylmethyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

Example 129

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide

Example 130

N-[2-(Dimethylamino)ethyl]-N-[5-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a solution of 0.75 g of 10-[[6-[2-(dimethylamino)ethylamino]-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 5 ml of diisopropylethylamine in 75 ml of dichloromethane is added (slowly) 0.35 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and the solution washed well with water. The organic layer is dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is purified by column chromatography on silica gel with 30% methanol in chloroform as eluent to give 0.80 g of yellow solid; mass spectrum (CI), 511 (M+1).

Example 131

N-[3-(Dimethylamino)propyl]-N-[5-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

A solution of 6.35 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane is added to a solution of 2 mmol of 10-[[6-[3-(dimethylamino)-propylamino]-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 5 ml of diisopropylethylamine in 75 ml of dichloromethane. The solution is stirred 16 hours at room temperature, washed with water, dried ($MgSO_4$) and the solvent removed. The

residue is purified by column chromatography over silica gel with 30% methanol in chloroform as eluent to give 0.75 g of solid; mass spectrum (CI) 525 (M+1).

Example 132

N-[2-(Dimethylamino)methyl]-N-5-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-3-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 130, a solution of 2 mmol of 10-[[6-[2-(dimethylamino)methylamino]-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]-benzodiazepine, 8 ml of diisopropylethylamine, and 2.2 mmol of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 100 ml of dichloromethane is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The solvent is removed and the product purified by chromatography on silica gel to give a solid.

Example 133

N-[5-[[3-[(Dimethylamino)methyl]-[5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)]yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-3,4,5-trimethoxybenzamide

A mixture of 1.0 g of *N*-[5-(5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-3,4,5-trimethoxybenzamide, 10 ml of 40% aqueous dimethylamine, 10 ml of 35% aqueous formaldehyde in 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) plus 1 drop of acetic acid is refluxed for 16 hours. The mixture is concentrated and the residue extracted with chloroform. The extract is washed with water, dried ($MgSO_4$), concentrated and the residue purified by column chromatography (silica gel) with 5% methanol in chloroform as eluent. The fractions containing product are combined to give 0.80 g of solid; mass spectrum (CI) 556 (M+1).

Example 134

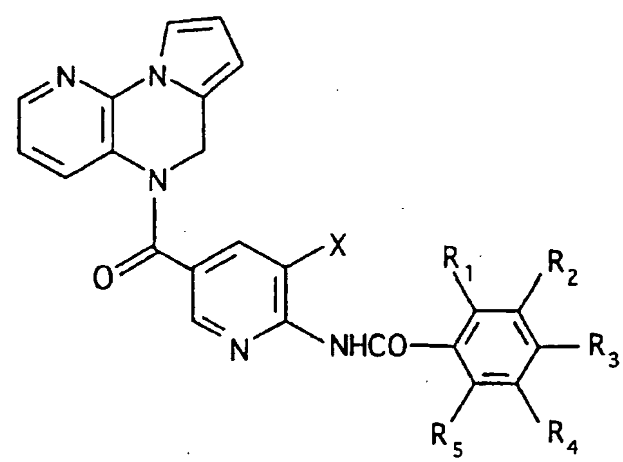
N-[5-(Pyrido[3,2-e]pyrrolo[1,2-a]pyrazin-5(6H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.343 g of 5,6-dihydropyrido[3,2-e]pyrrolo[1,2-a]pyrazine and 1.1 ml of

triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 1.17 g of 6-(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. To the mixture is added 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water. The organic layer is separated and washed with 20 ml each of 1 M $NaHCO_3$ and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na_2SO_4) and passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the pad washed with dichloromethane. The filtrate is concentrated and the residue chromatographed on silica gel prep-plates with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as eluent. The product is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 0.38 g of white crystals, m.p. 226-234°C.

As described for Example 134 the following compounds are prepared (Table F).

Table F



Ex No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	X
135	H	CH_3	H	H	H	H
136	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Br
137	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Cl
138	H	H	CH_3	H	H	H

Ex No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	X
139	H	H	CH_3	H	H	Br
140	H	H	CH_3	H	H	Cl
141	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
142	Cl	H	H	H	H	Br
143	Cl	H	H	H	H	Cl
144	H	Cl	H	H	H	H
145	H	Cl	H	H	H	Br
146	H	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
147	H	H	Cl	H	H	H
148	H	H	Cl	H	H	Br
149	H	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
150	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
151	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	Br
152	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
153	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	H
154	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Br
155	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
156	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
157	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	Br
158	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	Cl
159	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	H
160	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	Br
161	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	Cl
162	F	H	F	H	H	H
163	F	H	F	H	H	Br
164	F	H	F	H	H	Cl
165	F	H	H	F	H	H
166	F	H	H	F	H	Br
167	F	H	H	F	H	Cl
168	F	H	H	H	F	H
169	F	H	H	H	F	Br
170	F	H	H	H	F	Cl

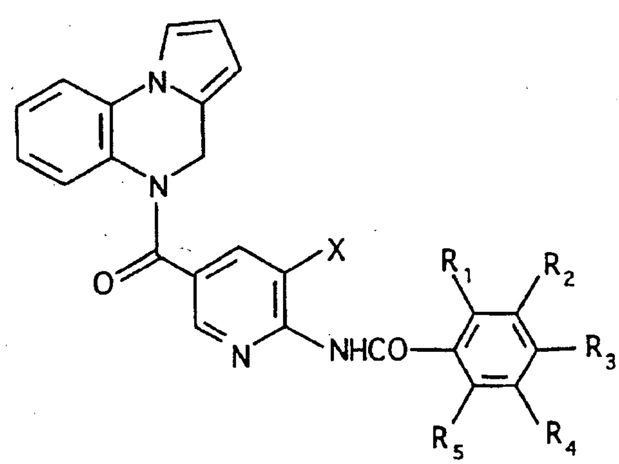
Example 171

N-[5-(Pyrrolo[1,2-a]quinoxalin-5(4H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.341 g of 4,5-dihydropyrrolo[1,2-a]quinoxaline and 1.11 ml of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 1.17 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred under argon at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water and the organic layer is separated. The organic layer is washed with 20 ml each of 1 M $NaHCO_3$ and brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the pad washed with dichloromethane. The filtrate is concentrated and the residue purified on silica gel prep-plates with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give a solid. The solid is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 0.38 g of crystals, m.p. 190-196°C.

As described for Example 171 the following compounds are prepared (Table G).

Table G



Ex No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	X
172	H	CH_3	H	H	H	H
173	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Br
174	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Cl
175	H	H	CH_3	H	H	H
176	H	H	CH_3	H	H	Br
177	H	H	CH_3	H	H	Cl
178	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
179	Cl	H	H	H	H	Br
180	Cl	H	H	H	H	Cl
181	H	Cl	H	H	H	H
182	H	Cl	H	H	H	Br
183	H	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
184	H	H	Cl	H	H	H
185	H	H	Cl	H	H	Br
186	H	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
187	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
188	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	Br
189	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
190	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	H
191	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Br
192	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
193	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
194	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	Br
195	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	Cl
196	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	H
197	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	Br
198	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	Cl
199	F	H	F	H	H	H
200	F	H	F	H	H	Br
201	F	H	F	H	H	Cl
202	F	H	H	F	H	H
203	F	H	H	F	H	Br

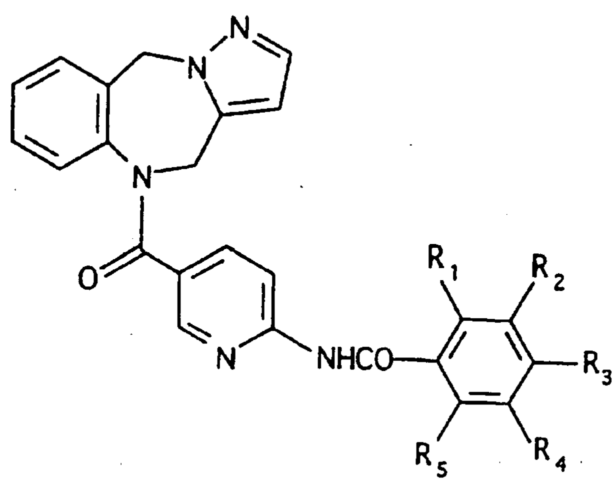
Ex No.	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_5	X
204	F	H	H	F	H	Cl
205	F	H	H	H	F	H
206	F	H	H	H	F	Br
207	F	H	H	H	F	Cl

Example 208

N-[5-(4H-Pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5(10H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.37 g of 5,10-dihydro-4H-pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 836 microliters of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 0.761 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature under argon for 5 hours. An additional 420 microliters of triethylamine and 0.38 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride is added and the mixture stirred 16 hours. The mixture is diluted with 60 ml of dichloromethane and washed with 25 ml each of H_2O, 1 M $NaHCO_3$, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered (twice) through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the pad washed with dichloromethane. The filtrate is concentrated to give a yellow glass (0.68 g) which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 0.38 g of white crystals, m.p. 250-260°C; mass spectrum (FABL) 442.4 (M+H).

Table H



Ex No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	X
209	H	CH_3	H	H	H	H
210	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Br
211	H	CH_3	H	H	H	Cl
212	H	H	CH_3	H	H	H
213	H	H	CH_3	H	H	Br
214	H	H	CH_3	H	H	Cl
215	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
216	Cl	H	H	H	H	Br
217	Cl	H	H	H	H	Cl
218	H	Cl	H	H	H	H
219	H	Cl	H	H	H	Br
220	H	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
221	H	H	Cl	H	H	H
222	H	H	Cl	H	H	Br
223	H	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
224	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
225	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	Br
226	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	Cl

Ex No.	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_5	X
227	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	H
228	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Br
229	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
230	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
231	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	Br
232	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	Cl
233	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	H
234	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	Br
235	H	Cl	Cl	H	H	Cl
236	F	H	F	H	H	H
237	F	H	F	H	H	Br
238	F	H	F	H	H	Cl
239	F	H	H	F	H	H
240	F	H	H	F	H	Br
241	F	H	H	F	H	Cl
242	F	H	H	H	F	H
243	F	H	H	H	F	Br
244	F	H	H	H	F	Cl

Example 245

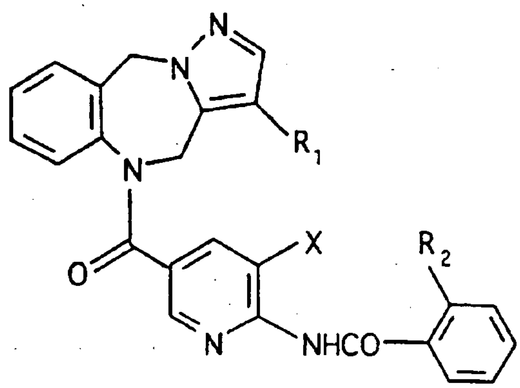
N-[5-(4H-Pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5(10H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

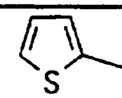
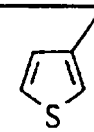
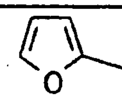
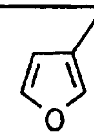
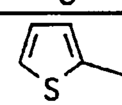
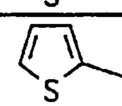
To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.185 g of 5,10-dihydro-4H-pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 417 µl of triethylamine in 3.5 ml of dichloromethane is added 0.35 g of 6-(2-biphenylcarbonyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 1.5 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature under argon for 16 hours, diluted with 40 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with 20 ml of brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give 0.4 g of solid. The solid is purified on silica gel prep-plates with ethyl acetate-hexane (3:1)

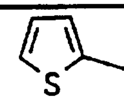
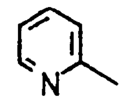
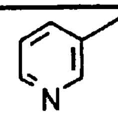
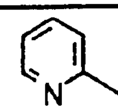
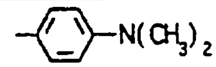
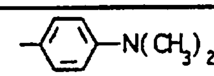
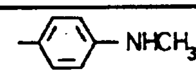
as eluent to give 170 mg of a brown glass, m.p. 110-150°C.

As described for Example 245, the following derivatives are prepared (Table H).

Table H



Ex. No.	R_1	X	R_2
246	H	Cl	
247	H	H	
248	H	H	
249	H	H	
250	H	H	
251	Cl	Cl	
252	Cl	H	

253	H	Cl	
254	H	H	
255	Cl	H	
256	H	Cl	
257	H	H	
258	H	Cl	
259	H	H	
260	H	H	

Example 261

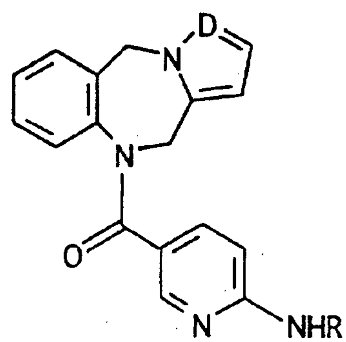
10-[[6-[(2-Methylpropyl)amino]-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

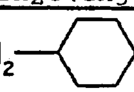
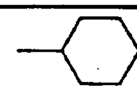
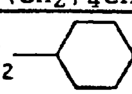
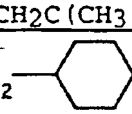
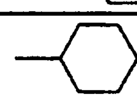
A mixture of 0.16 g of 10-[(6-chloro-3-pyridinyl)carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepine, 40 mg of pyridine and 2 ml of 2-methylpropylamine is stirred and heated at 100°C in a sealed vessel for 1 hour. To the mixture is added 0.2 ml of N,N-dimethylpropyleneurea and the mixture is heated at 110°C for 7 hours. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and 10 ml of 0.5 N NaOH is added to the residue. The mixture is filtered and the solid washed with water and then hexane. The solid is dissolved in ethyl acetate and the solution washed with 0.5 N NaOH, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue is tri-

turated with diisopropylether-hexane to give 0.18 g of white solid; mass spectrum (CI) 361 (M+H).

As described for Example 261, the following derivatives are prepared (Table I).

Table I



Ex. No.	D	R
*262	C	$-CH_2CH_2C(CH_3)_3$
**263	C	$-CH_2$ 
264	C	
265	C	$-CH_2CH_2C(CH_3)_2-CH_2CH_3$
266	C	$-CH_2(CH_2)_4CH_3$
267	C	$-CH_2$ 
268	C	$-CH_2CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$
269	N	$-CH_2CH_2C(CH_3)_3$
270	N	$-CH_2$ 
271	N	
272	N	$-CH_2(CH_2)_4CH_3$

*mass spectrum (CI) 389 (M+1)

**mass spectrum (CI) 401 (M+1)

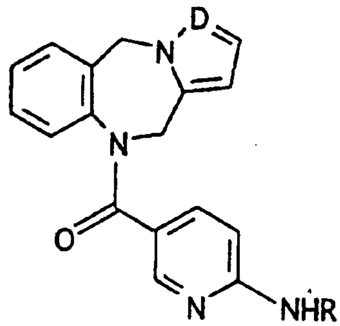
Example 273

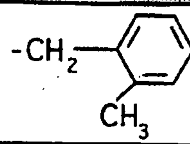
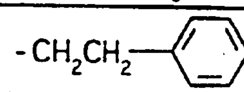
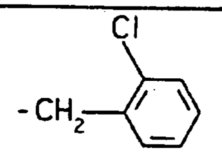
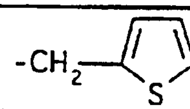
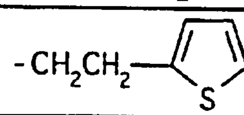
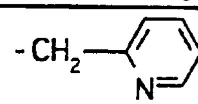
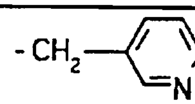
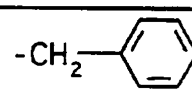
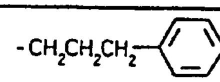
10-[[6-[(Phenylmethyl)amino]-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

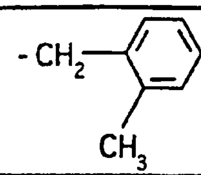
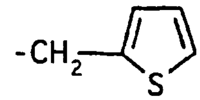
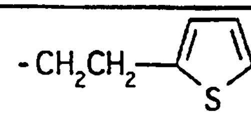
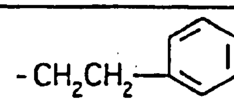
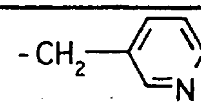
A mixture of 0.16 g of 10-[(6-chloro-3-pyridinyl)carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepine, 0.5 ml of benzylamine and 0.2 ml of N,N'-dimethylpropyleneurea is stirred and heated at 110°C for 7 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the mixture is washed with hexane (3 times 10 ml). The residue is dissolved in water and made alkaline with 1 N NaOH. The suspension is washed with H_2O and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic extract is washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is evaporated and the residue triturated with diethyl ether-hexane to give 0.20 g of white solid; mass spectrum (CI) 395 (M+H).

As described for Example 273, the following derivatives are prepared (Table J).

Table J



Ex. No.	D	R
274	C	
275	C	
276	C	
277	C	
278	C	
279	C	
280	C	
281	N	
282	N	

283	N	
284	N	
285	N	
286	N	
287	N	

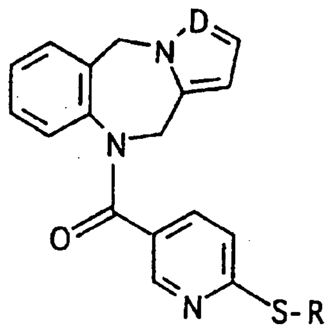
Example 288

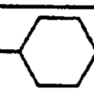
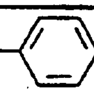
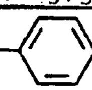
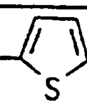
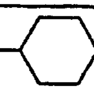
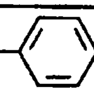
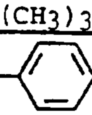
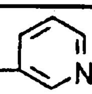
10,11-Dihydro-10-[[6-(cyclohexylthio)-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-5H-pyrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

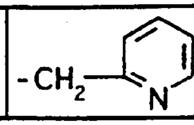
To a suspension of 35 mg of sodium hydride (60% in oil) in 3 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added under argon 0.10 g of cyclohexylmercaptan. A white precipitate forms and after 0.5 hour at room temperature, 1 ml of N,N'-dimethylpropyleneurea is added. To the mixture is added 0.13 g of 10-[(6-chloro-3-pyridinyl)-carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine in 2 ml of tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, quenched with water and ammonium chloride and concentrated under vacuum. The aqueous suspension is filtered and the solid washed with water and hexane. The solid is purified by chromatography on silica gel prep-plates with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:4) as eluent to give 0.13 g of white solid; mass spectrum (CI): 404 (M+H).

As described for Example 288, the following derivatives are prepared (Table K).

Table K



Ex. No.	D	R
289	C	$-CH_2$— 
290	C	$-CH_2$— 
291	C	$-CH_2CH_2C(CH_3)_3$
292	C	$-CH_2CH_2$— 
293	C	$-CH_2CH_2$— 
294	N	$-CH_2$— 
295	N	$-CH_2$— 
296	N	$-CH_2CH_2C(CH_3)_3$
297	N	$-CH_2CH_2$— 
298	N	$-CH_2CH_2$— 
299	N	$-CH_2$— 

300	C	

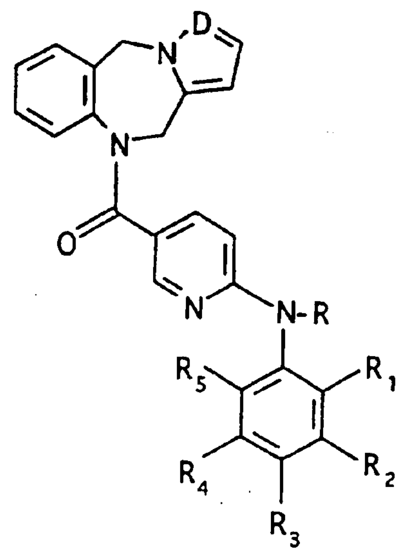
Example 301

10,11-Dihydro-10-[[6-[(2-methylphenyl)amino]-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

A mixture of 0.5 g of 10-[(6-chloro-3-pyridinyl)carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepine and 0.36 g of o-toluidine in 60 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide is refluxed for 16 hours. The mixture is poured into 200 ml of ice-water and extracted with three 100 ml portions of chloroform. The extract is washed with water, dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed. The residue is purified by chromatography on silica gel prep-plates with hexane-ethyl acetate (5:1) as solvent to give 0.56 g of yellow solid: mass spectrum (CI) 395.2 (M+H).

As described for Example 301, the following derivatives are prepared (Table L).

Table L



ExNo.	D	R	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5
302	C	H	Cl	H	H	H	H
303	C	H	Cl	H	Cl	H	H
304	C	H	Cl	H	H	F	H
305	C	H	F	H	F	H	H
306	C	H	CH_3	H	H	F	H
307	C	H	CF_3	H	H	H	H
308	C	CH_3	CH_3	H	H	H	H
309	C	H	H	H	H	H	H
310	N	H	H	H	H	H	H
311	N	CH_3	H	H	H	H	H
312	N	H	CF_3	H	Cl	H	H
313	N	H	CH_3	H	H	F	H
314	N	H	F	H	F	H	H
315	N	H	Cl	H	H	F	H
316	N	H	Cl	H	Cl	H	H
317	N	H	Cl	H	H	H	H

Example 318

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-methoxyphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 0.70 g of 10,11-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.56 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride is added 1.35 g of 4-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-3-methoxybenzoyl chloride followed by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water and saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo* to give a residue which is dissolved in methylene chloride and passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate two additional times to give upon concentration *in vacuo* to give 1.5 g of amorphous solid. M+=512.

Example 319

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 0.52 g of 10,11-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.39 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added 1.1 g of 4-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoyl chloride followed by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water and saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo* to give a residue which is dissolved in methylene chloride and passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two additional times to give upon concentration *in vacuo* 1.10 g of the desired product as a residue. M^+=516,518,520.

Example 320

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 0.65 g of 10,11-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.52 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added 1.34 g of 4-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-benzoyl chloride followed by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water and saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo* to give a residue which is dissolved in methylene chloride and passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two additional times to give upon concentration *in vacuo* to give 1.02 g of the desired product as a residue. M^+=482.

Example 321

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(phenylmethyl)benzamide

To a solution of 0.75 g of 10,11-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.57 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride is added 1.53 g of 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]-benzoyl chloride followed by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water and saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo* to give a residue which is dissolved in methylene chloride and passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two additional times to give upon concentration *in vacuo* to give 1.97 g of the desired product as an amorphous solid.

Example 322

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(phenylmethyl)benzamide

To a solution of 0.92 g of 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.72 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride is added 2.4 g of 2-chloro-4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]-amino]benzoyl chloride followed by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water and saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated in vacuo to give a residue which is dissolved in methylene chloride and passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two additional times to give upon concentration in vacuo 2.87 g of the desired product as an amorphous compound.

Example 323

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-methoxyphenyl]-2-(phenylmethyl)benzamide

To a solution of 0.75 g of 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.58 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride is added 1.69 g of 3-methoxy-4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]-amino]benzoyl chloride followed by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water and saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate to give upon concentration in vacuo 1.92 g of the desired product as an amorphous solid.

Example 324

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl][4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A solution of 1.14 g of [4'-(trifluoromethyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.0 g of 10,11-dihydro-10-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.52 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 25 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate two times to give 1.70 g of the desired product as an amphorous compound.

Example 325

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methoxyphenyl][4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A solution of 1.87 g of [4'-(trifluoromethyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 0.74 g of 10,11-dihydro-10-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.56 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate two times to give the desired product as a residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 2.33 g of the desired product, 211-212°C.

Example 326

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-chlorophenyl][4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A solution of 1.35 g of 2-chloro-4-[([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-benzoyl chloride in 10 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 0.63 g of 10,11-dihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 0.48 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ and the organic layer dried(Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate two times to give 1.63 g of the desired product as a non-crystalline solid..

Example 327

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide

To a stirred solution of 1.0 g of 10,11-dihydro-10-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine and 3 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 100 ml of methylene chloride is slowly added 600 mg of 2-methylpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride dissolved in 15 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture is quenched with water and the organic layer washed well with water. The organic layer is dried($MgSO_4$), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to a residue which is purified by column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to give 800 mg of the desired product as a pale yellow residue. M^+=422.

Example 328

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-yl-carbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-pyridine-3-carboxamide

A mixture of 1.1 g of 10,11-dihydro-10-(4-amino-2-chlorobenzoyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 3 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 100 ml of methylene chloride is stirred while a solution of 600 mg of 2-methylpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 15 ml of methylene chloride is added slowly. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture is quenched with water and the organic layer washed with water, dried($MgSO_4$), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to a residue. The product is purified by column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to give the desired product as a pale yellow residue. M^+=456.

Example 329

N-[5-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide

A mixture of 2.5 g of 6-[[3-(2-methyl-pyridinyl)carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 25 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 3 hours and the mixture evaporated to dryness in vacuo to give a solid. A solution of the solid in 50 ml of methylene chloride is added to 2 g of 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine dissolved in 50 ml of dichloromethane containing 3 ml of N,N-diisopropyl-ethylamine at room temperature. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched with water; washed with water; dried($MgSO_4$), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to a residue. The residue is purified by column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to give 2.0 g of the desired product as a solid. M^+=423.

Example 330

N-[5-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide Hydrochloride

To a solution of 1.0 g of N-[5-(5H-pyrrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide in 50 ml of methanol is added hydrogen chloride gas. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is triturated with ether to give 1.0 g of the desired product as a solid: mass spectrum(CCl);459(M^+).

Example 331

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-[N-methylpiperazinyl]-pyridine-3-carboxamide Hydrochloride

The method of Example 330 is used to prepare the desired product as a solid: M^+=543.

Example 332

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(dimethylamino)-pyridine-3-carboxamide Hydrochloride

The method of Example 330 is used to prepare the desired product as a solid: M^+=487.

Example 333

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

To a stirred solution of 6.06 g of 10,11-dihydro-10-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine and 10 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine is added a solution of 4.0 g of 2-chloropyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture is quenched with water and the organic layer washed well with water. The organic layer is dried, filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to a pale yellow

product which is crystallized from 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to give 7.0 g of the desired product; M^+=442.

Example 334

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(methylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide

A mixture of 1 g of N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide, 1 g of K_2CO_3 and 10 ml of a 40% solution of monomethylamine is heated in 25 ml of dimethylsulfoxide for 8 hours at 100°C. The reaction mixture is poured over water and the pale yellow solid separated. The reaction mixture is filtered and the collected solid washed well with water. After drying the solid is purified by column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 9:1 ethyl acetate:methanol to give 850 mg of the desired product as a pale yellow solid:M^+=437.

Example 335

N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-[(3-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]-pyridine-3-carboxamide

Using the conditions of Example 334 and N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide and 3-(dimethyl-amino)propylamine gives 900 mg of the desired product:M^+=508.

Example 336

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(1-piperidinyl)-pyridine-3-carboxamide

Using the conditions of Example 334 and 1 g of N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide and 5 ml of piperidine gives 700 mg of the desired product:M^+=491.

Example 337

N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-pyridine-3-carboxamide

Using the conditions of Example 334 and 1 g of N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide and 5 ml of N-methylpiperazine gives 1 g of the desired product:M^+=500.

Example 338

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(dimethylamino)-pyridine-3-carboxamide

Using the conditions of Example 334 and 1 g of N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide and 10 ml of 40% N,N-dimethylamine gives 700 mg of the desired product:M^+=451.

Example 339

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(morpholino)-pyridine-3-carboxamide

Using the conditions of Example 334 and 1 g of N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide and 5 ml of morpholine gives 800 mg of the desired product:M^+=493.

Example 340

N-[5-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 2.0 g of 6-[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 20 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 3 hours. The excess thionyl chloride is removed *in vacuo* to a residue which is dissolved in 50 ml of methylene chloride. This solution is added added dropwise to a stirred solution of 2.0 g of 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzo-

diazepine in 50 ml of methylene chloride and 5 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched with water. The organic layer is washed well with water and dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$. The organic layer is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is purified by column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 40% ethyl acetate:hexane to give 1.2 g of a colorless solid:M^+=484.

Example 341

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

A mixture of 1.94 g of N-[4-(5H-pyrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-bromobenzamide, 2.95 g of 2-pyridyl tri-n-butyl tin and 400 mg of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(O) is refluxed for 24 hours in degassed toluene for 24 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is purified by column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 70% ethyl acetate:hexane to give 900 mg of the desired product as a pale yellow solid:M+1=485.

Example 342

N-[5-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

A mixture of 484 mg of N-[5-(5H-pyrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-bromobenzamide, 814 mg of 4-(N,N-dimethyl)anilino-tri-n-butyl stannane and 100 mg of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (O) is refluxed in degassed toluene for 24 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is purified by column chromatography on silica gel by elution with ethyl acetate to give 200 mg of the desired product: M+1=528.

Example 343

10,11-Dihydro-10-(4-(4-butyloxy)benzoyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

To a solution of 92 mg of 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine in 2 ml of methylene chloride is added 100 mg of triethylamine followed by 130 mg of 4-(n-butyloxy)benzoyl chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 24 hours and then treated with 4 ml of 1N sodium hydroxide. The mixture is extracted with 10 ml of ethyl acetate and the extract washed with 1N sodium hydroxide and 5 ml of brine. The organic layer is dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and filtered through hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrate *in vacuo* to a residue which is stirred with ether-hexanes to give 160 mg of the desired product as a white solid:mass spectrum(CI),361(MH^+).

Example 344

5,10-Dihydro-2-hydroxymethyl-5-(4-(4-butyloxy)benzoyl)-4H-pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

As described for Example 343 4-(n-butyloxy)benzoyl chloride is reacted with 5,10-dihydro-4H-pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine to give the desired product as a solid;mass spectrum(CI),392(MH^+).

Example 345

10,11-Dihydro-10-(4-(5-pentyloxy)benzoyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

As described for Example 343 4-(n-pentyloxy)benzoyl chloride is reacted with 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine to the desired product as a solid:mass spectrum(CI),375(MH^+).

Example 346

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-(4-chlorophenyloxy)pyridine-3-carboxamide

The conditions of Example 325 are used with 2-(4-chlorophenyloxy)pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 211-212°C (M+Na) = 557.3.

Example 347

N-[4-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl]-2-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenyloxy)propionamide

The conditions of Example 325 are used with 2-(4-chlorophenoxy)-2-methylpropionyl chloride to give the desired product as a solid. M+499.

Example 348

10-[[6-(1,1-dimethylethyl)amino]-3-pyridinyl)carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

Using the conditions of Example 273 and t-butylamine gives the desired product as a beige solid. MS(CI): 361(M+H).

Example 349

10-[[6-(1-Methylethyl)amino)-3-pyridinyl)carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

Using the conditions of Example 273 and isopropylamine gives the desired product as a white solid. MS(CI): 347(M+H).

Example 350

10-[[6-(1-Indanylamino)-3-pyridinyl)carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

Using the conditions of Example 273 and 1-aminoindan gives the desired product as a beige solid. MS(CI): 421(M+H).

Example 351

10-[[6-(2,4-Dimethoxyphenylamino)-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

Using the conditions of Example 273 with 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine gives the desired product as a light yellow solid. MS(CI): 455(M+H).

Example 352

10-[[6-(2-Bromophenylamino)-3-pyridinyl]carbonyl]-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

Using the conditions of Example 273 and 2-bromobenzylamine gives the desired product as an off-white solid. MS(CI): 474(M+H).

Example 353

N-[5-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylfurane-3-carboxamide

Using the conditions of Example 1 with Reference Example 39 to give Reference Example 86 and stirring overnight gives the desired product as white crystals after column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane and crystallization from ethyl acetate, m.p. 210-212°C.

Example 354

N-[5-(5H-Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-aminobenzamide

A room temperature solution of 1.0 g of N-[5-(5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-nitrobenzamide in 100 ml of ethyl alcohol is hydrogenated over 200 mg of 10% Pd/C in a Parr apparatus under 40 psi of hydrogen for 2 hours. The reaction mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the cake washed with additional ethyl alcohol. The combined filtrates are concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue purified by crystallization from 2:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to give the desired product as pale yellow crystals: M+Na 445:M^+423.

Example 355

{3-Chloro-4-[3-dimethylaminomethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

To a solution of the product from Example 319, (2.23 g, 4.32 mmol) in 1:1 methanol/tetrahydrofuran (40 ml) was added N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-diaminomethane (1.19 ml, 8.64 mmol), paraformaldehyde (0.519 g, 17.3 mmol), and acetic acid (0.516 ml, 8.6 mmol). The suspension was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was removed, and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane, washed with water, 5% sodium bicarbonate, and water. All aqueous washings were backwashed with dichloromethane. The combined organic solutions were dried ($MgSO_4$), and the solvent removed to give crude product (1.68 g). Purifi-cation by flash chromatography on silica gel (50 g) in 18% methanol/ethyl acetate gave the product, which was recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give pure sample (1.06 g) mp 138-141°. MS (+FAB) m/z: 575/577 (M+H).

Analysis for: $C_{32}H_{21}ClN_3O_3$

Calcd: C, 73.10, H: 5.43. N: 9.74.

Found C, 71.57, H: 5.21, N: 9.41.

Example 356

{3-Chloro-4-[3-(4-methylpiperazin-1-ylmethyl)5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

To a solution of the product from Example 319, (0.54 g, 1.08 mmol) in 1:1 methanol-tetrahydrofuran (8 ml) was added N-methylpiperazine (0.48 g, 4.32 mmol), paraformaldehyde (0.194 g), and acetic acid (0.13 ml, 2.16 mmol) in that order. The mixture was allowed to stir at 60° for 21 hours. The solvent was removed under vacuum, and the residue was partitioned between dichloromethane and water. The organic phase was washed

with sodium bicarbonate and water, dried ($MgSO_4$), and the solvent removed to yield crude product (0.48 g). The experiment was repeated to obtain 0.43 g of the crude product. The two batches were combined (0.9 g) and purified by silica gel chromatography (25g) with methanol-ethyl acetate (1:4) to give on crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane 0.45 g of desired product. MS (+FAB) m/z: 653 $(M+Na)^+$.

Example 357

[4-(3-Dimethylaminomethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-methoxy-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

Step a) 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester

Thionyl chloride (13.9 ml, 190 mmol) was added via syringe to a solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitro-benzoic acid (50 g, 250 mmol) in methanol which was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The volatiles were removed *in vacuo*. The residue dissolved in dichloromethane, washed with (1N) sodium hydroxide, and the organic layer separated and dried ($MgSO_4$). Evaporation *in vacuo* gave a light yellow solid (50 g, 93%) mp 80-81°C, which was taken directly to the next step.

Analysis for: $C_9 H_9 N O_5$

Calcd: C, 51.19; H, 4.30; N, 6.63.

Found: C, 50.97; H, 4.11; N, 6.51.

Step b) 4-amino-2-methoxy-benzoic acid methyl ester

A mixture of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester (12 g, 57 mmol), palladium (10% on activated carbon), and ethanol (150 ml) was shaken at room temperature under 50psi of hydrogen for 2 hours. The reaction was filtered through diatomaceous earth, and the diatomaceous earth washed with chloroform. Evaporation of the chloroform washings gave a yellow

solid; purification by crystallization gave a light yellow crystalline solid (8.76 g, 85%) mp 148-149°C.

Analysis for: $C_9 H_{11} N O_3$

Calcd: C, 59.66; H, 6.12; N, 7.73.

Found: C, 59.42; H, 6.02; N, 7.69.

Step c) 4-[(Biphenyl-2-carbonyl)-amino]-2-methoxy-benzoic acid methyl ester

Into a refluxing solution of 2-biphenyl-carboxylic acid (9.2 g, 46 mmol) in dichloromethane was added dimethylformamide (0.1 ml, 1.4 mmol) and then neat oxalyl chloride (8.1 ml, 92 mmol) via syringe. The reaction was refluxed for 10 min, then the volatiles removed in vacuo. The residue was redissolved in dichloromethane, concentrated and dried under high vacuum for 15 min. The acid chloride was dissolved in dichloromethane (50 ml) and added into a 0°C solution of 4-amino-2-methoxy-benzoic acid methyl ester (8.4 g, 46 mmol), diisopropyl ethylamine (10.5 ml, 60 mmol) and dichloromethane (200 ml). The reaction was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. The reaction was diluted with dichloromethane, washed with water, (1N) sodium hydroxide (1N) HCl, and brine, and dried ($MgSO_4$). Evaporation gave a yellow foam, which was crystallized from methanol to give a light yellow solid (16.08 g, 96%) m.p. 141-142°C.

Analysis for: $C_{22} H_{19} N O_4$

Calcd: C, 73.12; H, 5.30; N, 3.88.

Found: C, 72.93; H, 5.20; N, 3.83.

Step d) 4-[(Biphenyl-2-carbonyl)-amino]-2-methoxy-benzoic acid

Sodium hydroxide (1N) (38 ml, 38 mmol) was added to a refluxing solution of 4-[(biphenyl-2-carbonyl)-amino]-2-methoxy-benzoic acid methyl ester (11.6 g, 32 mmol) in methanol (200 ml). The reaction

was refluxed for 2 hours. The volatiles were removed in vacuo and the residue taken into ethyl acetate/HCl (aq). The aqueous layer was re-extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic extracts combined and dried ($MgSO_4$). Evaporation gave a pale orange foam, which was crystallized from methanol to give a colorless solid (9.33 g, 84%) m.p. 158-159°C.

Analysis for: C_{21} H_{17} N O_4

Calcd: C, 72.61; H, 4.93; N, 4.03.

Found: C, 72.20; H, 4.61; N, 3.96.

Step e) [3-Methoxy-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid-amide

Into a refluxing solution of 4-[(biphenyl-2-carbonyl)-amino]-2-methoxy-benzoic acid (3.29 g, 9.5 mmol) and dichloromethane (50 ml) was added dimethylformamide (0.02 ml, 0.28 mmol) and then neat oxalyl chloride (0.87 ml, 10 mmol) via syringe. The reaction was refluxed for 10 minutes and the volatiles removed in vacuo. The residue was evaporated with dichloromethane and dried under high vacuum for 15 minutes. The acid chloride was dissolved in dichloromethane (50 ml) and added to a 0°C solution of the product from reference Example 6, 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (1.57 g, 8.55 mmol), N,N-diisopropylethylamine (1.93 ml, 12.35 mmol) and dichloro-methane (200 ml). The reaction was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, washed with water, (1N) sodium hydroxide, (1N) HCl, and brine, and dried ($MgSO_4$). Evaporation gave a yellow foam, which was crystallized from methanol to give a colorless solid (2.05 g, 73%) mp 224-226°C.

Analysis for: C_{33} H_{27} N_3 O_3

Calcd: C, 76.87; H, 5.35; N, 8.07.
Found: C, 76.82; H, 5.23; N, 8.04.

Step f) [4-(3-Dimethylaminomethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-methoxy-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

A mixture of biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid [3-methoxy-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-amide (2.54 g, 4.9 mmol), paraform-aldehyde (0.59 g, 19.6 mmol), N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-diaminomethane (1.35 ml, 9.8 mmol), tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) (20 ml) and glacial acetic acid (0.57 ml, 9.8 mmol was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The volatiles were removed *in vacuo*, and the residue was dissolved dichloromethane - (1N) sodium hydroxide. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine and dried ($MgSO_4$). Evaporation and purification by flash chromatography (silica gel; eluting solvent chloroform-methanol 20:1) gave a colorless foam, which crystallized from ethanol to give a colorless solid (2.05 g, 73%) m.p. 196-197°C.

Analysis for: $C_{36} H_{34} N_4 O_3 + 0.25 H_2O$
Calcd: C, 75.17; H, 6.04; N, 9.74.
Found: C, 75.23; H, 6.06; N, 9.81.

Example 358

{3-Methoxy-4-[3-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-ylmethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The compound of Example 358 was prepared in substantially the same manner as described in Example 357. In step 357f, N-methyl piperazine was substituted for N,N,N',N'-tetramethyldiaminomethane. The title compound was obtained as a colorless solid, m.p. 217-218°C.

Analysis for: $C_{39} H_{39} N_5 O_3$
Calcd: C, 74.86; H, 6.28; N, 11.19.

Found: C, 74.46; H, 6.35; N, 11.24.

Example 359

{2-Methoxy-4-[3-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-ylmethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The compound of Example 359 was prepared in substantially the same manner as described in Example 357. In step 357a, 4-nitro-3-methoxybenzoic acid was substituted for 4-nitro-2-methoxybenzoic acid. In step 357f, N-methyl piperazane was used in place of N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-diaminomethane. The product was obtained as a colorless solid, mp 104-105°C.

Analysis for: C_{39} H_{39} N_5 O_3 + 1.0 H_2O

Calcd: C, 73.43; H, 6.59; N, 10.88.

Found: C, 73.01; H, 6.17; N, 10.92.

Example 360

[4-(3-Dimethylaminomethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-2-methoxy-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The compound of Examle 360 was prepared in substantially the same manner as described in Example 357. In step 357a, 4-nitro-3-methoxybenzoic acid was substituted for 4-nitro-2-methoxybenzoic acid. The title compound was obtained as a colorless solid, m.p. 114-116°C.

Analysis for: C_{36} H_{34} N_4 O_3 + 0.25 H_2O

Calcd: C, 75.17; H, 6.05; N, 9.74.

Found: C, 74.98; H, 5.89; N, 9.69.

Example 361

{3-Bromo-4-[3-(dimethyl-amino-methyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

Step a) 2-Bromo-4-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester

Thionyl chloride (3.99 ml, 54.6 mmol) was added via syringe at room temperature to a methanol solution (500 ml) of 2-bromo-4-nitrobenzoic acid (Chem.

Ber. 1961, 835) (17.9 g, 72.9 mmol). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The volatiles were removed in vacuo, the residue dissolved in dichloromethane, washed with 1N sodium hydroxide, and the organic layer separated and dried ($MgSO_4$). Evaporation gave a light yellow solid (10.9 g, 83%) m.p. 73-74°C, which was used without further purification in Example 361, step b.

Analysis for: C_8 H_6 Br N O_4

Calcd: C, 34.17; H, 1.64; N, 5.69.

Found: C, 33.92; H, 1.49; N, 5.67.

Step b) {3-Bromo-4-[3-(dimethyl-amino-methyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The compound of Example 361, step b was prepared in substantially the same manner as Example 357, following the steps b through f. In Example 357 step b, the product of Example 361, step a, was substituted for the product of Example 357, step a. Also in Example 357, step b, Raney nickel was substituted for palladium on carbon and the reaction time increased to 24 hours. The product was obtained as a colorless solid, m.p. 138-140°C.

Analysis for: C_{35} H_{31} Br N_4 O_2

Calcd: C, 67.85; H, 5.04; N, 9.04.

Found: C, 67.94; H, 5.24; N, 8.84.

Example 362

{3-Bromo-4-[3-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-ylmethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The compound of Example 362 was prepared in substantially the same manner as described in Example 357, following the steps b through f. In Example 357 step b, the product of Example 361, step a, was substituted for the product of Example 357, step a.

Also in Example 357, step b, Raney nickel was substituted for palladium on carbon and the reaction time increased to 24 hours. In Example 357, step f, N-methylpiperazane was substituted for N,N,N',N'-tetramethyldiaminomethane. The product was obtained as a colorless solid, m.p. 149-150°C.

Analysis for: $C_{38} H_{36} Br N_5 O$

Calcd: C, 67.65; H, 5.38; N, 10.38.

Found: C, 67.28; H, 5.52; N, 10.13.

Example 363

[3-Chloro-4-(3-morpholin-4-ylmethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The product from Example 319, (2.07 g, 4 mmol) was treated sequentially with morpholine (1.03 g, 12 mmol), glacial acetic acid (0.72 g, 12 mmol), and 37% aqueous formaldehyde (formalin) (4 ml, 50 mmol) in methanol (50-75 ml). After stirring for one hour at room temperature, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (500 ml), extracted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (200 ml) and water (4 x 200 ml) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The product was purified through a short silica gel plug by gradient elution, (ethyl acetate to methanol-ethyl acetate 1:4). The appropriate fractions were combined and evaporated in vacuo, dissolved in ethyl acetate and filtered, and the solvent evaporated in vacuo to afford 2.0 g of a colorless foam. Trituration with ether and filtration afforded, after drying in vacuo overnight at 50°C, 1.7 g (2.8 mmol, 69%) of the title compound as a colorless powder, m.p. 142-145°C. MS (+FAB), *m/z*: 639 (M^+Na).

Analysis for: $C_{37}H_{33}ClN_4O_3$

Calcd: C, 72.01; H, 5.39; N, 9.08.

Found: C, 71.03, H, 5.44, N, 8.64.

Example 364

{4-[3-(2-Aminoethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-3-chloro-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

Step a) {3-Chloro-4-[3-(2-nitroethenyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

Portionwise over 10 minutes, the product from Example 319, (1.5 g, 3 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of 1-dimethylamino-2-nitroethylene (0.35 g, 3 mmol) in trifluoroacetic acid (20 ml) at 0°C. After 15 minutes the reaction was warmed to room temperature, poured into cold water, and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 500 ml). The combined organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x 250 ml) and water (2 x 200 ml), then dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was evaporated in vacuo to afford 1.5 g (2.5 mmol, 85% crude yield) of a yellow solid which was used without further purification in Example 364, step b.

WAY 140149

Step b) {3-Chloro-4-[3-(2-nitroethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

A stirred solution of {3-Chloro-4-[3-(2-nitroethenyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide (1.32 g, 3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml) was treated at -12°C over 45 minutes with alternate, portionwise additions of sodium borohydride (912 mg, 24 mmol) and dropwise additions of methanol (3.20 g, 100 mmol). After 15 minutes, the reaction was neutralized to pH 7, at 0°C, with a 10% acetic acid solution. The reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 100 ml). The combined organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (1x), and water (3x), and dried (Na_2SO_4). The organic solution

was filtered through a silica gel plug, and evaporated in vacuo to give 1.04 g (1.76 mmol, 59%) of a tan solid. The product was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (100:1, adsorbent-compound ratio), eluting with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:3) to afford, after evaporation, 1.0 g (1.69 mmol, 56%) of a bright yellow amorphous powder, m.p. 245°C. MS (EI), *m/z* : 590 (M^+).

Step c) {4-[3-(2-Amino-ethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-3-chloro-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

A rapidly stirred solution of {3-chloro-4-[3-(2-nitroethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide (875 mg, 1.48 mmol) in ethanol was treated with four equal portions of powdered zinc metal (40 g), and several aliquots of 6N HCl (15 ml, 90 mmol), and then warmed gently. After 15 minutes the zinc was filtered and the neutral filtrate evaporated in vacuo. The residue was redissolved in ethyl acetate and the product was purified through a short silica gel plug by gradient elution filtration, (ethyl acetate to methanol-ethyl acetate 1:4). The eluent was evaporated, redissolved in ethyl acetate, refiltered, and the solvent evaporated in vacuo to yield 500 mg (0.89 mmol, 60%) of an off-white solid. Trituration with ether afforded, after drying in vacuo overnight at 40°C, 300 mg (36%) of the title compound as a colorless amorphous powder, m.p. 132-136°C. MS (+FAB), *m/z*: 561 (M^+H).

Analysis for: $C_{34}H_{29}ClN_4O_2$

Calcd: C, 72.78; H, 5.21; N, 9.99.

Found: C, 71.63; H, 5.45; N, 9.18.

Example 365

N-[3-(3-Methoxy-5H,10H-pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-9-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyridin-2-yl-benzamide

The title compound was prepared in substantially the same manner as described in Example 357 steps c through e. In step 357c, 1-(pyridin-2-yl)benzoic acid (G. Timari, et.al,, Chem. Ber. 1992,125,929) was used in place of 2-biphenylcarboxylic acid. In step 357e 5H,10H-pyrazolo[5,1-c][1,4benzodiazepine (L. Cecchi and G. Filacchioni, J. Heterocyclic Chem. 1983,20, 871) was used in place of 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine. The title compound was obtained as a pale pink solid (0.23 g, 37%). MS (+FAB) m/z: 516 (M+H).

Analysis for: $C_{31}H_{25}N_5O_3$

Calcd: C, 72.22; H, 4.89; N, 13,58.

Found: C, 71.47; H, 4.63; N, 12.95.

Example 366

N-[3-Chloro-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-thiophen-2-yl-benzamide

Step a) 2-Bromobenzoyl chloride

To a solution of 2-bromobenzoic acid (1.88 g, 9.35 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (20 ml), under nitrogen, was added 1 drop of dimethylformamide followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (1 ml, 11.4 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature until gas evolution ceased and then heated to reflux. The solution was cooled to room temperature before being concentrated in vacuo to produce a golden colored oil (1.87 g, 91%) which was used without further purification.

Step b) 2-Bromo-N-[3-chloro-4-(10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-benzamide

To a stirred solution of the product of 10,11-dihydro-10-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (2.25 g. 6.66 mmol) in dichloromethane (40 ml), under nitrogen, was added triethylamine (1.19 ml, 8.53 mmol). The mixture was cooled to 0°C

before a solution of 2-bromobenzoyl chloride (1.87 g, 8.52 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 ml) was added dropwise. The cooling bath was removed and stirring wascontinued for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water. The organic layer was separated and sequentially washed with water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and water. The organic solution was dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated in vacuo to yield a pale orange foam (2.0 g, 58%). Purifi-cation by flash chromatography on silica gel with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:1) as the mobile phase resulted in a colorless powder (1.39 g, 40%), m.p. 188-189°C. MS (EI), *m/z*:: 519 (M^+)

Analysis for: $C_{26}H_{19}BrClN_3O_2$ + 0.5 H_2O

Calcd: C, 58.93; H, 3.80; N, 7.93.

Found: C, 59.12; H, 3.62; N, 7.75.

Step c) N-[3-Chloro-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine -10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-thiophen-2-yl-benzamide

The 2-bromo-N-[3-chloro-4-(10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-benzamide (1.04 g, 2.0 mmol) and thiophene-2-boronic acid (0.32 g, 2.4 mmol), and barium hyroxide octahydrate (0.88 g, 2.8 mmol) was suspended in ethylene glycol dimethyl ether (28.8 ml) and water (4.8 ml). The heterogeneous mixture was stirred at room temperature and purged with nitrogen for ten minutes before bis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (II) chloride (0.17 g, 0.24 mmol) was added. The reaction was capped with a nitrogen balloon and heated in an oil bath at 70°C. After 20 hours, additional thiophene-2-boronic acid (0.13 g, 1 mmol) was added to the reaction. After 24 hours additional bis(triphenylphosphine)-palladium(II)chloride (84 mg, 0.12 mmol) was added to the reaction flask. The reaction was cooled to room temperature and the mixture was extracted into benzene. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine,

dried ($MgSO_4$), filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield a brown solid (1.42 g). The solid was triturated with ethyl acetate and filtered. The filtrate was purified by flash chromatography using silica gel with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:1) as the mobile phase to afford a pale yellow solid (0.59 g, 56%), which was dried under vacuum at 78°C for two days, m.p. 132-136°C. MS (EI), *m/z*: 523 (M^+).

Analysis for: $C_{30}H_{22}ClN_3O_2S$ + 0.5 H_2O

Calcd: C, 67.53; H, 4.36; N, 7.88.

Found: C, 67.53; H, 4.08; N, 7.90.

Example 367

N-[3-Chloro-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyridin-3-yl-benzamide

The compound of Example 367 was prepared in substantially the same manner as described in Example 366 following the steps 366a and 365b. In Step 366a, 2-(pyridin-3-yl)-benzoic acid was substituted for 2-bromobenzoic acid. Preparation of 2-(pyridin-3-yl)-benzoic acid was carried out in the manner of Timari, et al (Chem. Ber. 1992, 125, 929) substituting 3-bromopyridine in place of 2-bromopyridine. The title compound was obtained as an off-white powder (0.21 g, 40%) m.p. 155-158°C.

Analysis for: $C_{31}H_{23}ClN_4O_2$ + 0.85 H_2O

Calcd: C, 69.68; H, 4.66; N, 10.49.

Found: C, 69.69; H, 4.70; N, 10.16.

Example 368

N-[3-Chloro-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyridin-4-yl-benzamide

The compound of Example 368 was prepared in substantially the same manner as described in Example 366 following steps 366a and 366b. In Step 366a, 2-(pyridin-4-yl)-benzoic acid was substituted for 2-bromobenzoic acid. Preparation of 2-(pyridin-4-yl)-benzoic acid was carried out in the manner of Timari, et al (Chem. Ber. 1992, 125, 929)

substituting 4-bromopyridine hydrochloride and an additional equivalent of base in place of 2-bromopyridine. The title compound was obtained as a pale yellow solid (1.21 g, 53%) m.p. 165-168°C.

Analysis for: $C_{31}H_{23}ClN_4O_2 + 0.47\ H_2O$

Calcd: C, 70.59; H, 4.57; N, 10.62.

Found: C, 70.58; H, 4.50; N, 10.33.

<u>Example 369</u>

<u>N-[4-(3-Methoxy-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyridin-2-yl-benzamide</u>

Step a) 2-Methoxy-4-[(2-pyridin-2-ylbenzoyl)amino]benzoyl chloride

To a solution of 2-methoxy-4-[(2-pyridin-2-ylbenzoyl)amino]benzoic acid (0.92 g, 2.64 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (25 ml), under nitrogen, was added 1 drop of dimethylformamide followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (0.28 ml, 3.17 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature until gas evolution ceased. The solution was concentrated <u>in vacuo</u> to produce a tan solid (1.16 g) which was used without further purification in Example 369 step b.

Step b) N-[4-(3-Methoxy-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyridin-2-yl-benzamide

To a stirred solution of the product from Reference Example 6, 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (0.405 g. 2.20 mmol) in dichloromethane (30 ml), under nitrogen, was added triethylamine (0.37 ml, 2.64 mmol). The mixture was cooled to 0°C and a solution of the crude 2-methoxy-4-[(2-pyridin-2-ylbenzoyl)-amino]benzoyl chloride (1.16g) in dichloromethane (30 ml) was added dropwise. After 5 hours the reaction mixture was poured into water. The organic layer was separated and sequentially washed twice with water and aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and

once with water. The organic solution was dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated <u>in vacuo</u> to give a marron solid (1.1 g, 94%). Purification by flash chromatography on silica gel with hexane-ethyl acetate-methlyene chloride-methanol (3:6:2:0.5) as a mobile phase, followed by concentration <u>in vacuo</u>, resulted in a pale purple solid (0.88 g, 76%), m.p. 138-140°C. MS (FAB), *m/z* : 515 (M+H).

Analysis for: $C_{32}H_{26}N_4O_3$ + 0.43 H_2O

Calcd: C, 73.58; H, 5.18; N, 10.73.

Found: C, 73.59; H, 5.05; N, 10.47.

<u>Example 370</u>

<u>N-[4-(3-Dimethylaminomethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-methoxy-phenyl]-2-pyridin-2-yl-benzamide</u>

Into a flask equipped with a reflux condenser was placed under nitrogen product of Example 369 step b, N-[4-(3-methoxy-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyridin-2-yl-benzamide (0.37 g, 0.71 mmol), N,N,N',N'-tetramethyldiaminomethane (0.15 mg, 1.4 mmol), paraformaldehyde (85 g, 2.8 mmol), tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) and methanol (5 ml). After stirring at room temperature for two minutes glacial acetic acid (85m g, 1.4 mmol) was added. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction was concentrated <u>in vacuo</u>, redissolved in dichloromethane and washed sequentially with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and water. The organic solution was dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated <u>in vacuo</u> to afford an off-colorless foam (0.39 g, 96%). Purification by flash chromatography using silica gel with dichloromethane-methanol (9:1) as the mobile phase, afforded a colorless foam. The foam was redissolved in dichloromethane, filtered through diatomaceous earth, concentrated <u>in vacuo</u> and dried under vacuum at 78°C

overnight to afford an off-white solid (0.24 g, 59%), m.p. 132-134°C (dec).
Analysis for: $C_{35}H_{33}N_5O_3$ + 0.89 H_2O
Cald'd: C, 71.53; H, 5.97; N, 11.92.
Found: C, 71.52; H, 5.63; N, 11.89.

Example 371

N-[3-Bromo-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyridin-2-yl-benzamide

Step a) 2-(Pyridin-2-yl)benzoyl chloride

A solution of 2-(pyridin-2-yl)benzoic acid (2.85 g, 14.3 mmol) in dry tetrahydrofuran (20 ml) was treated with 1 drop of dimethylformamide followed by oxalyl chloride (1.5 ml, 17.1 mmol) in dry tetrahydrofuran (5 ml). When the gas evolution ceased the mixture was heated to reflux for 5 minutes, cooled to room temperature and concentrated in vacuo to a bright yellow solid. The solid was slurried with tetrahydrofuran (20 ml) and reconcentrated. The crude acid chloride was used in the next step without further purification.

Step b) Methyl 2-Bromo-4-[(2-pyridin-2-yl-benzoyl)amino] benzoate

A slurry of 2-(pyridin-2-yl)benzoyl chloride in dichloromethane (20 ml) was added to a solution of methyl 2-bromo-4-amino benzoate (3 g, 13 mmol) and triethylamine (2.5 ml, 18 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 ml) which was cooled to 0°C. Stirring at room temperature was maintained for 4 hours. The reaction was quenched with 20% acetic acid, wash sequentially with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, water then saturated brine solution. The solution was dried ($MgSO_4$), filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give 5.23 g (97%) of a colorless foam. MS (+FAB) m/z: 411/413 $(M+H)^+$.
Analysis for: C20H15BrN2O3
Calcd: C, 58.41; H, 3.68; N, 6.81.

Found: C, 57.73; H, 3.66; N, 6.54.

Step c) 2-Bromo-4-[(2-pyridin-2-yl-benzoyl)amino]benzoic acid

A solution of methyl 2-bromo-4-[(2-pyridin-2-yl-benzoyl)amino]benzoate in methanol (100 ml) was treated with 1N sodium hydroxide (15 ml, 1.2 eq). The solution was warmed to reflux for 3.5 hours and additional 1N sodium hydroxide was added (10.4 ml., 2 eq total). Reflux was maintained for 2 additional hours and the reaction was stirred at room temperature overnight. The sample was concentrated in vacuo to a syrup and diluted with water. The aqueous solution was washed with ethyl acetate and the aqueous layer was adjusted to a pH of 4.5-5 with acetic acid. The product was precipitated, filtered and air dried to give a tan solid (4.43 g, 87%). MS (EI) m/z: 397/399 (M+).

Step d) 2-Bromo-4-[(2-pyridin-2-yl-benzoyl)amino] benzoyl chloride

To a solution of 2-bromo-4-[(2-pyridin-2-yl-benzoyl)amino]benzoic acid (1.4 g, 3.52 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (25 ml), under nitrogen, was added 1 drop of dimethylformamide followed by the addition of oxalyl chloride (0.37 ml, 4.23 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature until gas evolution ceased and then heated to reflux for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and concentrated in vacuo to produce a tan solid (1.385g. 95%) which was used without further purification.

Step e) N-[3-Bromo-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyridin-2-yl-benzamide

To a stirred solution of the product from Reference Example 6, 10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (0.54 g. 2.93 mmol) in dichloromethane (35 ml), under nitrogen, was added triethylamine

(0.49 ml, 3.52 mmol). The mixture was cooled to 0°C before a suspension of the crude 2-bromo-4-[(2-pyridin-2-ylbenzoyl)amino]benzoyl chloride (1.4g) in dichloromethane (5 ml) was added dropwise. After the addition was complete, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. After 18 hours the reaction mixture was poured into water and sequentially washed with water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, twice with 10% aqueous acetic acid, once with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and once with water. The organic solution was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and *in vacuo* to yield a dark purple foam (1.73 g). Purification by flash chromatography on silica gel with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:2) as the mobile phase, followed by concentration *in vacuo*, resulted in a colorless solid (1.23 g, 75%), m.p. 227.5-229°C. MS (ESI), *m/z* : 563 (M^+).

Analysis for: $C_{31}H_{23}BrN_4O_2$

Calcd: C, 66.08; H, 4.11; N, 9.94.

Found: C, 65.84; H, 3.86; N, 9.85.

Example 372

[4-(3-Dimethylaminomethyl-3-hydroxy-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

Step a) [3-Hydroxy-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]diazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

Boron tribromide (21 ml, 21 mmol) was added via syringe to a dichloromethane (15 ml) solution at 0°C of biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid [3-methoxy-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-amide (3.6 g, 7 mmol) following the steps 357a through 357e. The reaction was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. Ice and ammonium hydroxide was added at 0°C and stirring continued until a homogeneous solution was obtained. The organic layer was separated, washed with

brine and dried ($MgSO_4$). Evaporation in vacuo gave a dark residue, which was adsorbed onto silica gel and purified by flash chromatography (eluting solvent hexane-ethyl acetate 2:1) to give a colorless solid (2.25 g, 64%) m.p. 194-196°C.

Analysis for: $C_{32}H_{25}N_3O_3 + 0.25 H_2O$

Calcd: C, 76.24; H, 5.10; N, 8.34.

Found: C, 76.16; H, 5.00; N, 8.31.

Step b) [4-(3-Dimethylaminomethyl-3-hydroxy-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The compound of Example 371 step b was prepared in the same manner as described in Example 357 step f, substituting the product of Example 371 step a for the product of Example 357 step e. The product was obtained as a colorless solid, m.p. 135-137°C.

Analysis for: $C_{35}H_{32}N_4O_3 + 0.25H_2O$

Calcd: C, 74.91; H, 5.84; N, 9.98.

Found: C, 74.61; H, 5.94; N, 9.93.

Example 373

[4-(3-[1,4']Bipiperidinyl-1'-ylmethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-chloro-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The product from Example 319, (2.07 g, 4 mmol) was treated sequentially with 4-piperidinopiperidine (2.02 g, 12 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (2.73 g, 24 mmol), and 37% aqueous formaldehyde (formalin) (4 ml, 50 mmol) in methanol (50-75 ml). After stirring for one hour at room temperature, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (500 ml), extracted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (200 ml) and water (4 x 200 ml), and dried (Na_2SO_4). The product was purified through a short silica gel plug by gradient elution filtration, (ethyl acetate to methanol-ethyl acetate 1:4). The appropriate fractions were combined and evaporated, redissolved and refiltered from ethyl

acetate, and the solvent evaporated in vacuo to afford 1.34 g (1.9 mmol, 48%) of a colorless solid. Trituration with ether-hexane and filtration afforded, after drying in vacuo overnight at 50°C, 1.30 g (1.86 mmol, 47%) of the title compound as a colorless, amorphous powder, m.p. 193-195°C. MS (+FAB), *m/z* : 720 (M^+Na).

Analysis for: $C_{43}H_{44}ClN_5O_2$

Calcd: C, 73.96; H, 6.35; N, 10.03.

Found: C, 73.23; H, 6.31; N, 9.81.

Example 374

(3-Chloro-4-{3-[(2-hydroxy-1,1-bis-hydroxymethyl-ethylamino)-methyl]-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl}-phenyl)-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

Step a) (10-{4-[(Biphenyl-2-carbonyl)-amino]-2-chloro-benzoyl}-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benodiazepin-3-ylmethyl)-trimethyl-ammonium iodide

The product from Example 355, [3-chloro-4-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide (2.87 g, 5 mmol) was treated with an excess iodomethane (20 ml) as the solvent and stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. After trituration with ethyl acetate-ether (3:1), the quarternary ammonium salt (3.58 g, 100%) was filtered to give a colorless amorphous powder.

Step b) (3-Chloro-4-{3-[(2-hydroxy-1,1-bis-hydroxymethyl-ethylamino)-methyl]-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl}-phenyl)-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

A mixture of (10-{4-[(Biphenyl-2-carbonyl)-amino]-2-chloro-benzoyl}-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benodiazepin-3-ylmethyl)-trimethyl-ammonium iodide (3.58 g, 5 mmol) and

tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane (6.05 g, 50 mmol) in dimethyl sulfoxide (25 ml) was heated to 90°C for 1.5 hours. The cooled reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (500 ml), extracted with water (6 x 200 ml), and dried (Na_2SO_4). The product was purified through a short silica gel plug by gradient elution filtration, (ethyl acetate to methanol-ethyl acetate 1:4). The appropriate fractions were combined and evaporated in vacuo, redissolved and refiltered from ethyl acetate, and the solvent evaporated in vacuo to afford 1.7 g (2.6 mmol, 52%) of a colorless foam. Trituration with ether and filtration afforded, after drying in vacuo overnight at 40°C, 1.4 g (2.1 mmol, 43%) of the title compound as a colorless amorphous powder, m.p. 145-147°C. MS (-ESI), m/z : 649 (M^-H), MS (+FAB), m/z: 673 (M^+Na).

Analysis for: $C_{37}H_{35}ClN_4O_5$

Calcd: C, 68.25; H, 5.42; N, 8.60.

Found: C, 66.51; H, 5.57; N, 7.91.

Example 375

[3-chloro-4-(3-{[(2-dimethylamino-ethyl)-methyl]-amino]-methyl}-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]- biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The product from Example 319, (2.07 g, 4 mmol) was treated sequentially with N, N', N'-trimethylethylenediamine (1.23 g, 12 mmol), glacial acetic acid (1.44 g, 24 mmol), and 37% aqueous formaldehyde (formalin) (4 ml, 50 mmol) in methanol (50-75 ml). After refluxing under nitrogen for 1.5 hours, the cooled reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (500 ml), extracted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (200 ml) and water (4 x 200 ml), and dried (Na_2SO_4). The product was purified through a short silica gel plug by gradient elution filtration, (ethyl acetate to methanol-ethyl acetate 1:4). The appropriate fractions were combined and evaporated in vacuo, redissolved and

refiltered from ethyl acetate, and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to afford 520 mg (0.82 mmol, 21% yield) of a colorless foam. Trituration of the foam with hot ether, filtration, and evaporation *in vacuo* of the filtrate afforded, after drying *in vacuo* overnight, 200 mg (0.32 mmol, 8% yield) of the title compound as a homogeneous colorless foam, m.p. 95-97°C. MS (+FAB), *m/z*: 654 (M^+Na).

Analysis for: $C_{38}H_{38}ClN_5O_2$

Calcd: C, 72.19; H, 6.06; N, 11.08.

Found: C, 71.83; H, 6.09; N, 10.71.

Example 376

{3-chloro-4-[3-(4-dimethylamino-piperidin-1-ylmethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide

The product from Example 319 (2.07 g, 4 mmol) was treated sequentially with 4-dimethylaminopiperidine trifluoroacetate salt (1:2) (4.27 g, 12 mmol), and 37% aqueous formaldehyde (formalin) (4 ml, 50 mmol) in methanol (50-75 ml). After stirring for 0.33 hours at room temperature, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (500 ml), extracted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (200 ml) and water (4 x 200 ml), and dried (Na_2SO_4). The product was purified through a short silica gel plug by gradient elution filtration, (ethyl acetate to methanol-ethyl acetate 1:4). The fractions were combined and evaporated *in vacuo*, redissolved and refiltered from ethyl acetate, and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to afford 2.4 g (3.6 mmol, 91%) of a colorless solid. Trituration with ether and filtration afforded, after drying *in vacuo* overnight at 50°C, 1.7 g (2.6 mmol, 65% yield) of the title compound as a colorless, amorphous powder, m.p. 163-166°C. MS (+ESI), *m/z*: 658 (M^+H).

Analysis for: $C_{40}H_{40}ClN_5O_2$

Calcd: C, 72.99; H, 6.13; N, 10.64.
Found: C, 72.66; H, 6.01, N, 10.45.

Example 377

N-[3-Chloro-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyrrol-1-yl-benzamide

A solution of 1-(2-carboxyphenyl)pyrrole (188 mg, 1 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (264 mg, 1 mmol) in dichloromethane (6 ml) was cooled to 0°C. To this solution was added, portionwise, N-chlorosuccinimide (131 mg, 0.9 mmol). The solution was stirred for 30 minutes and allowed to warm to room temperature. To this solution was added a solution of 10,11-dihydro-10-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (338 mg, 1 mmol) and triethylamine (0.15 ml, 1.06 mmol) in 15 ml of a mixture of a tetrahydrofuran-dichloromethane (1:2). The reaction was stirred for two hours at room temperature and then was concentrated to a solid in vacuo. The solid was disolved in ether (100 ml) and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo and chromatographed over silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as the mobile phase to afford 270 mg of the product as a yellow solid. Recrystallization from ethyl acetate-ether-hexane gave 180 mg of the product as a colorless solid. MS (EI),m/z 506/508 (M+).

Example 378

Quinoline-8-carboxylic acid [4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-phenyl]-amide

The compound of Example 378 was prepared in substantially the same manner as described in Example 366, Steps 366a and 366b. In Step 366a, quinoline-8-carboxylic acid was substituted for 2-bromobenzoic acid. The title compound was obtained as a colorless powder (0.69 g, 37%) m.p. 230-231°C.

Analysis for: $C_{29}H_{21}ClN_4O_2 + 0.33\ H_2O$
Calcd: C, 69.81; H, 4.38; N, 11.23.
Found: C, 69.81; H, 4.09; N, 11.14.

Example 379

[3-Chloro-4-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarboxylic acid amide

Step a) [2-Phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarboxylic acid]

Sodium hydroxide (1N) (10.7 ml, 11.8 mmol) was added to a refluxing solution of 2-phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarboxylic acid methyl ester (2.32 g, 10.7 mmol) (Lin et al., J. Chin. Chem. Soc., 1993, 40, 273) in methanol (40 ml). The reaction was refluxed for 2 hours. The volatiles were removed in vacuo and the residue partitioned between ethyl acetate and (1N) HCl. The aqueous layer was re-extracted with ethyl acetate, and the combined organic extracts combined and dried ($MgSO_4$). Evaporation of the solution in vacuo gave a pale yellow solid, which was recrystallized from acetone-hexane to give a colorless solid (1.27 g, 63%) m.p. 145-146°C.

Analysis for: $C_{12}H_{12}O_2$
Calcd: C, 76.57; H, 6.43.
Found: C, 76.47; H, 6.35.

Step b) 2-Phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarbonyl chloride

To solution of 2-phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarboxylic acid (0.43 g, 2.28 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 ml) was added dimethylformamide (1 drop) and then neat oxalyl chloride (0.4 ml, 4.56 mmol). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and then the volatiles were removed in vacuo. The residue was redisolved in dichloro-methane, concentrated in vacuo and dried under high vacuum for 15 minutes to give an amber oil which was used directly in the next step without further purification.

Step c) [4-(5H,11H-Pyrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-chloro-phenyl]-2-phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarboxylic acid amide

The product from Example 379 step b, 2-phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarbonyl chloride was dissolved in dichloromethane (20 ml) was added at room temperature to a solution of the product of Reference Example 6, 10,11-dihydro-10-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (0.77 g, 2.28 mmol), 4-dimethyl-aminopyridine in dichloromethane (20 ml). Triethylamine (0.38 ml, 2.74 mmol) was then added via syringe. The reaction was stirred for 16 hours, diluted with dichloromethane and washed with sodium bicarbonate, (1N) HCl, and brine. The dichloromethane solution was dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated in vacuo to give a yellow solid. Purification by flash chromatography (eluting solvent chloroform-methanol 50:1 and hexane-ethyl acetate 2:1) afforded a colorless solid (0.70 g, 60%) m.p. 121-122°C.

Analysis for: C_{31} H_{26} Cl N_3 O_2

Calcd: C, 73.29; H, 5.16; N, 8.27.

Found: C, 73.18; H, 5.02; N, 8.11.

Example 380

Biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid {3-chloro-4-[3-(2-nitro-ethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-amide

A solution of sodium metal (115 mg, 5 mmol) dissolved in ethanol (10 ml) was treated with nitro-methane (1.52 g, 25 mmol). To the resulting white suspension was added (10-{4-[(Biphenyl-2-carbonyl)-amino]-2-chloro-benzoyl}-10,11-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-3-ylmethyl)-trimethyl-ammonium (1 mmol) and the mixture heated to 78°C for 75 minutes. After evaporation of the reaction mixture in vacuo, the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane, washed with 1N HCl and water, and dried ($MgSO_4$). Filtration through a

silica gel pad afforded, after evaporation of the filtrate in vacuo, a yellow foam which was consistent with the title compound as prepared in Example 364 step b.

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V_1 Receptors

Rat liver plasma membranes expressing the vasopressin V_1 receptor subtypes are isolated by sucrose density gradient according to the method described by Lesko et al, (1973). These membranes are quickly suspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4, containing 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) and 0.1 mM phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and kept frozen at -70°C until used in subsequent binding experiments. For binding experiments, the following is added to the wells of a ninety-six well format microtiter plate: 100 µl of 100.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 10.0 mM $MgCl_2$, 0.2% heat inactivated BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0 µl of [phenylalanyl-3,4,5,-^3H] vasopressin (S.A. 45.1 Ci/mmole) at 0.8 nM, and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80 µl of tissue membranes containing 20 µg of tissue protein. The plates are kept undisturbed on the bench top at room temperature for 120 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific samples are assayed in the presence of 0.1 µM of the unlabeled antagonist phenylalanylvasopressin, added in 20.0 µl volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0 µl volume to a final incubation volume of 200 µl. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC_{50} values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

Binding Assay to Rat Kidney Medullary V_2 Receptors

Medullary tissues from rat kidneys are dissected out, cut into small pieces and soaked in a 0.154 mM sodium chloride solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA with many changes of the liquid phase, until the solution is clear of blood. The tissue is homogenized in a 0.25 M sucrose solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA and 0.1 mM PMSF using a Potter-Elvehjem homogenizer with a teflon pestle. The homogenate is filtered through several layers (4 layers) of cheese cloth. The filtrate is rehomogenized using a dounce homogenizer, with a tight fitting pestle. The final homogenate is centrifuged at 1500 x g for 15 min. The nuclear pellet is discarded and the supernatant fluid recentrifuged at 40,000 x g for 30 min. The resulting pellet formed contains a dark inner part with the exterior, slightly pink. The pink outer part is suspended in a small amount of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is determined by the Lowry's method (Lowry et al, J. Biol. Chem., 1953). The membrane suspension is stored at -70°C, in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl, containing 0.2% inactivated BSA and 0.1 mM PMSF in aliquots of 1.0 ml containing 10.0 mg protein per ml of suspension until use in subsequent binding experiments.

For binding experiments, the following is added in µl volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0 µl of 100.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM $MgCl_2$ and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0 µl of [^{3}H] Arginine^8, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmole) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0 µl of tissue membranes (200.0 µg tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific binding is

assessed in the presence of 1.0 µM of unlabeled ligand, added in 20 µl volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0 µl volume to a final incubation volume of 200 µl. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC_{50} values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH). The results of this test on representative compounds of this invention are shown in Tables 1, 2 and 3.

Radioligand Binding Experiments with Human Platelet Membranes

Platelet Source: Hudson Valley Blood Services, Westchester Medical Center, Valhalla, NY.

Platelet Membrane Preparation:

Frozen platelet rich plasma (PRP), received from the Hudson Valley Blood Services, are thawed to room temperature. The tubes containing the PRP are centrifuged at 16,000 x g for 10 min. at 4°C and the supernatant fluid discarded. The platelets resuspended in an equal volume of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl, pH 7.5 containing 120 mM NaCl and 20.0 mM EDTA. The suspension is recentrifuged at 16,000 x g for 10 min. This washing step is repeated one more time. The wash discarded and the lysed pellets homogenized in low ionic strength buffer of Tris.HCl, 5.0 mM, pH 7.5 containing 5.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 39,000 x g for 10 min. The resulting pellet is resuspended in Tris.HCl buffer, 70.0 mM, pH 7.5 and recentrifuged at 39,000 x g for 10 min. The final pellet is resuspended in 50.0 mM

Tris.HCl buffer pH 7.4 containing 120 mM NaCl and 5.0 mM KCl to give 1.0-2.0 mg protein per ml of suspension.

Binding to Vasopressin V_1 receptor subtype in Human Platelet Membranes:

In wells of 96 well format microtiter plate, add 100 µl of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 0.2% BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors (aprotinin, leupeptin etc.). Then add 20 µl of [^{3}H]Ligand (Manning or Arg^{8}Vasopressin), to give final concentrations ranging from 0.01 to 10.0 nM. Initiate the binding by adding 80.0 µl of platelet suspension (approx. 100 µg protein). Mix all reagents by pipetting the mixture up and down a few times. Non specific binding is measured in the presence of 1.0 µM of unlabeled ligand (Manning or Arg^{8}Vasopressin). Let the mixture stand undisturbed at room temperature for ninety (90) min. Upon this time, rapidly filter off the incubate under vacuum suction over GF/B filters, using a Brandel® Harvester. Determine the radioactivity caught on the filter disks by the addition of liquid scintillant and counting in a liquid scintillator.

Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V_2 Vasopressin Receptor

Membrane Preparation

Flasks of 175 ml capacity, containing attached cells grown to confluence, are cleared of culture medium by aspiration. The flasks containing the attached cells are rinsed with 2x5 ml of phosphate buffered saline (PBS) and the liquid aspirated off each time. Finally, 5 ml of an enzyme free dissociation Hank's based solution (Specialty Media, Inc., Lafayette, NJ) is added and the flasks are left undisturbed for 2 min. The content of all flasks is poured into a centrifuge tube and the cells pelleted at 300 x g for 15 min. The Hank's based solution is aspirated off and the cells

homogenized with a polytron at setting #6 for 10 sec in 10.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4 containing 0.25 M sucrose and 1.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 1500 x g for 10 min to remove ghost membranes. The supernatant fluid is centrifuged at 100,000 x g for 60 min to pellet the receptor protein. Upon completion, the pellet is resuspended in a small volume of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is determined by the Lowry method and the receptor membranes are suspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 0.1 mM phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) to give 2.5 mg receptor protein per ml of suspension.

Receptor Binding

For binding experiments, the following is added in µl volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0 µl of 100.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM $MgCl_2$ and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0 µl of [^{3}H] Arginine^8, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmole) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0 µl of tissue membranes (200.0 µg tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 min to reach equilibrium. Non specific binding is assessed in the presence of 1.0 µM of unlabeled ligand, added in 20 µl volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0 µl volume to a final incubation volume of 200 µl. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The

data are analyzed for IC_{50} values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

Oxytocin Receptor Binding

(a) Membrane Preparation

Female Sprague-Dawley rats weighing approximately 200-250 g are injected intramuscularly (i.m.) with 0.3 mg/kg of body weight of diethylstilbestrol (DES). The rats are sacrificed 18 hours later under pentobarbital anesthesia. The uteri are dissected out, cleaned of fat and connective tissues and rinsed in 50 ml of normal saline. The tissue pooled from six rats is homogenized in 50 ml of 0.01 mM Tris.HCl, containing 0.5 mM dithiothreitol and 1.0 mM EDTA, adjusted to pH 7.4, using a polytron at setting 6 with three passes of 10 sec each. The homogenate is passed through two (2) layers of cheesecloth and the filtrate centrifuged at 1000 x g for 10 min. The clear supernatant is removed and recentrifuged at 165,000 x g for 30 min. The resulting pellet containing the oxytocin receptors is resuspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl containing 5.0 mM $MgCl_2$ at pH 7.4, to give a protein concentration of 2.5 mg/ml of tissue suspension. This preparation is used in subsequent binding assays with $[^3H]$Oxytocin.

(b) Radioligand Binding

Binding of 3,5-$[^3H]$Oxytocin ($[^3H]$OT) to its receptors is done in microtiter plates using $[^3H]$OT, at various concentrations, in an assay buffer of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl, pH 7.4 and containing 5.0 mM $MgCl_2$, and a mixture of protease inhibitors: BSA, 0.1 mg; aprotinin, 1.0 mg; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg; trypsin, 10.0 mg; and PMSF, 0.3 mg per 100 ml of buffer solution. Non-specific binding is determined in the presence of 1.0 uM unlabeled OT. The binding reaction is terminated after 60 min., at 22°C, by rapid filtration through glass fiber filters using a Brandel® cell harvester (Biomedical Research and Development Laboratories, Inc.,

Gaithersburg, MD). Competition experiments are conducted at equilibrium using 1.0 nM [^{3}H]OT and varying the concentration of the displacing agents. The concentrations of agent displacing 50% of [^{3}H]OT at its sites (IC_{50}) are calculated by a computer assisted LUNDON-2 program (LUNDON SOFTWARE INC., Ohio, USA).

The results of this assay on representative examples are shown in Table 4.

When the compounds are employed for the above utility, they may be combined with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, for example, solvents, diluents and the like, and may be administered orally in such forms as tablets, capsules, dispersible powders, granules, or suspensions containing, for example, from about 0.05 to 5% of suspending agent, syrups containing, for example, from about 10 to 50% of sugar, and elixirs containing, for example, from about 20 to 50% ethanol, and the like, or parenterally in the form of sterile injectable solution or suspension containing from about 0.05 to 5% suspending agent in an isotonic medium. Such pharmaceutical preparations may contain, for example, from about 0.05 up to about 90% of the active ingredient in combination with the carrier, more usually between about 5% and 60% by weight.

The effective dosage of active ingredient employed may vary depending on the particular compound employed, the mode of administration and the severity of the condition being treated. However, in general, satisfactory results are obtained when the compounds of the invention are administered at a daily dosage of from about 0.5 to about 500 mg/kg of animal body weight, preferably given in divided doses two to four times a day, or in sustained release form. For most large mammals the total daily dosage is from about 1 to 100 mg, preferably from about 2 to 80 mg. Dosage forms

suitable for internal use comprise from about 0.5 to 500 mg of the active compound in intimate admixture with a solid or liquid pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. This dosage regimen may be adjusted to provide the optimal therapeutic response. For example, several divided doses may be administered daily or the dose may be proportionally reduced as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation.

These active compounds may be administered orally as well as by intravenous, intramuscular, or subcutaneous routes. Solid carriers include starch, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, microcrystalline cellulose, sucrose and kaolin, while liquid carriers include sterile water, polyethylene glycols, non-ionic surfactants and edible oils such as corn, peanut and sesame oils, as are appropriate to the nature of the active ingredient and the particular form of administration desired. Adjuvants customarily employed in the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions may be advantageously included, such as flavoring agents, coloring agents, preserving agents, and antioxidants, for example, vitamin E, ascorbic acid, BHT and BHA.

The preferred pharmaceutical compositions from the standpoint of ease of preparation and administration are solid compositions, particularly tablets and hard-filled or liquid-filled capsules. Oral administration of the compounds is preferred.

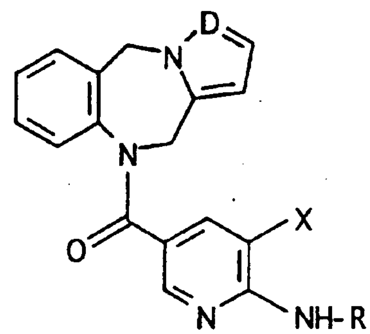
These active compounds may also be administered parenterally or intraperitoneally. Solutions or suspensions of these active compounds as a free base or pharmacologically acceptable salt can be prepared in water suitably mixed with a surfactant such as hydroxypropylcellulose. Dispersions can also be prepared in glycerol, liquid polyethylene glycols and mixtures thereof in oils. Under ordinary conditions of storage

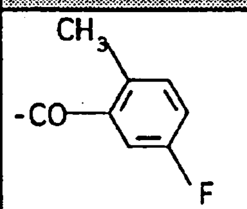
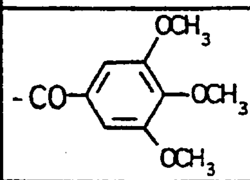
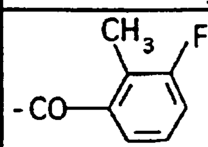
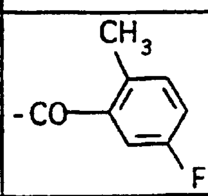
and use, these preparation contain a preservative to prevent the growth of microorganisms.

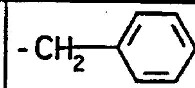
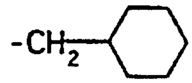
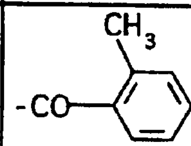
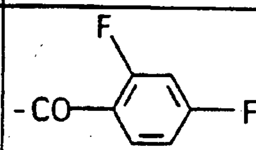
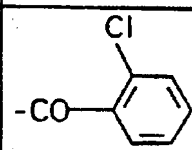
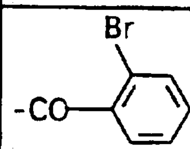
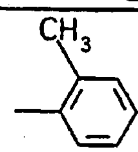
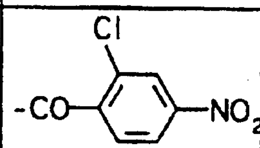
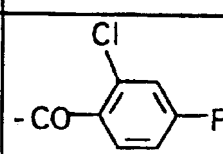
The pharmaceutical forms suitable for injectable use include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersions. In all cases, the form must be sterile and must be fluid to the extent that easy syringability exists. It must be stable under the conditions of manufacture and storage and must be preserved against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacteria and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol, polyol (e.g., glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oils.

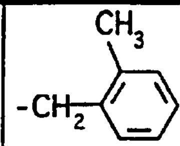
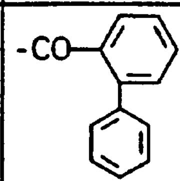
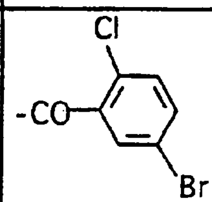
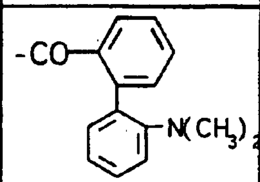
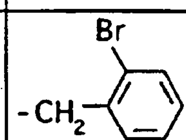
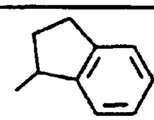
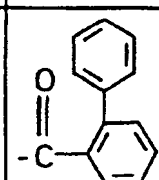
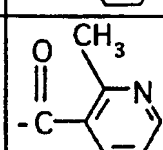
Table 1

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V_1 Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V_2 Receptors or *Binding to V_1 Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and **Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V_2 Receptor



Ex. No.	D	X	R	V_1 IC_{50} (μM)	V_2 IC_{50} (μM)
1	C	H		0.033 *0.020	0.004 **0.005
5	C	H		*51% at 10 μM	**47% at 10 μM
4	C	H		*0.044	0.001
261	C	H	$-CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$	65% at 1 μM	32% at 1 μM
208	N	H		0.087	0.011

Ex. No.	D	X	R	V1 IC50 (µM)	V2 IC50 (µM)
273	C	H		0.190	0.082
262	C	H	$-CH_2CH_2C(CH_3)_2$	64% at 1 µM	50% at 1 µM
263	C	H		0.200	0.360
12	C	Br		0.210	0.024
7	C	H		32% at 1 µM	58% at 10 µM
6	C	H		0.011	0.0018
8	C	H		0.007	0.0016
301	C	H		94% at 10 µM	91% at 10 µM
33	C	H		0.450	0.030
9	C	H		0.006	0.0011 **0.0009
261	C	H	$-CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$	89% at 10 µM	55% at 10 µM

Ex. No.	D	X	R	V1 IC50 (μM)	V2 IC50 (μM)
274	C	H		90% at 1 μM	97% at 10 μM
10	C	H		96% at 1 μM	95% at 1 μM
11	C	H		100% at 1 μM	93% at 1 μM
342	C	H			
352	C	H		0.088	0.059
348	C	H	$-C(CH_3)_3$	0.08	43% at 1 μM
350	C	H		0.015	0.034
245	N	H		0.019	0.001
329	C	H		0.31	0.07

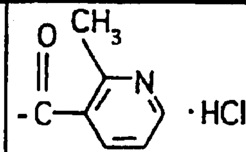
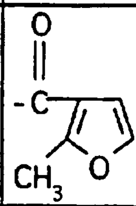
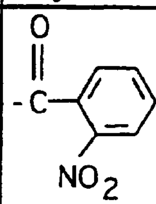
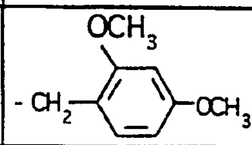
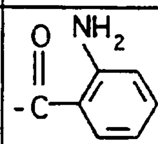
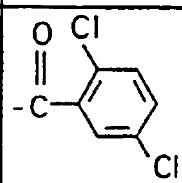
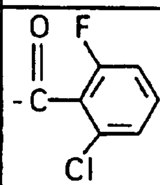
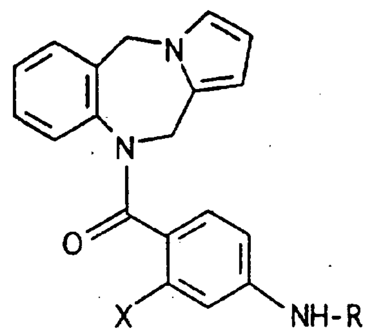
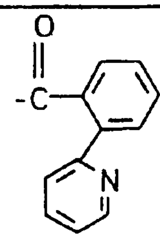
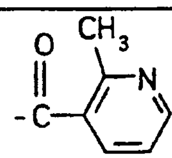
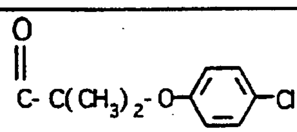
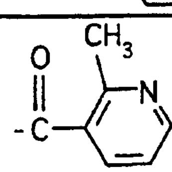
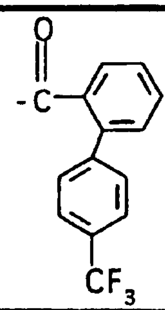
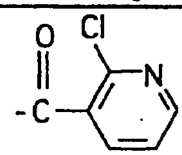
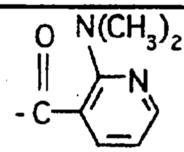
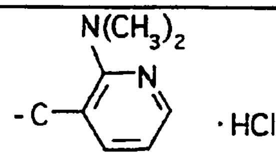
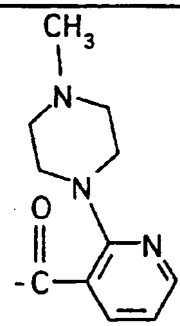
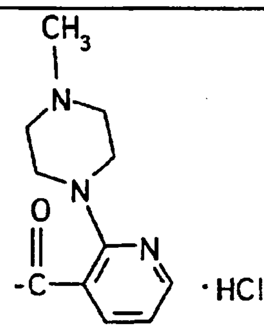
Ex. No.	D	X	R	V1 IC50 (μM)	V2 IC50 (μM)
330	C	H		89% at 1 μM	79% at 1 μM
353	C	H		93% at 1 μM	86% at 1 μM
43	C	H		93% at 1 μM	
351	C	H		73% at 1 μM	56% at 1 μM
354	C	H		29% at 1 μM	86% at 1 μM
14	C	H		100% at 1 μM	99% at 1 μM
18	C	H		98% at 1 μM	94% at 1 μM

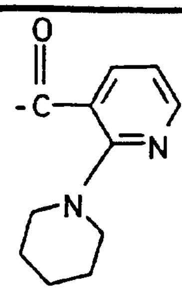
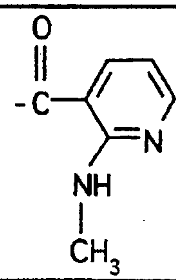
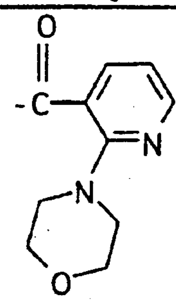
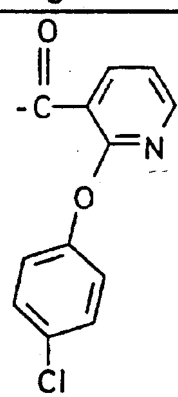
Table 1A

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V_1 Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V_2 Receptors or *Binding to V_1 Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and **Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V_2 Receptor



Ex.No.	X	R	V1 IC50 (µM)	V2 IC50 (µM)
341	H		0.02	0.004
327	H		0.35	0.028
347	H		0.18	0.42
328	Cl		3.3	0.019

Ex.No.	X	R	V1 IC50 (μM)	V2 IC50 (μM)
324	H		0.42	0.12
333	H		0.25	0.41
338	H		0.037	0.0048
332	H		0.031	0.0034
337	H		1.3	0.65
331	H		87% at 10 μM	43% at 1 μM

Ex.No.	X	R	V_1 IC_{50} (μM)	V_2 IC_{50} (μM)
336	H		99% at 1 μM	69% at 1 μM
334	H		15% at 1 μM	79% at 1 μM
339	H		41% at 1 μM	55% at 1 μM
346	H		44% at 10 μM	76% at 10 μM

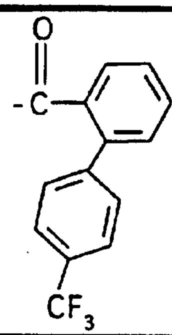
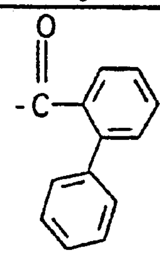
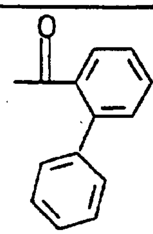
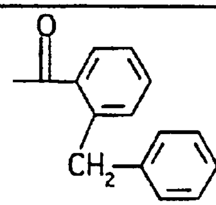
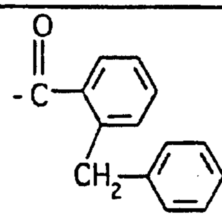
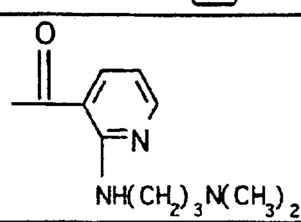
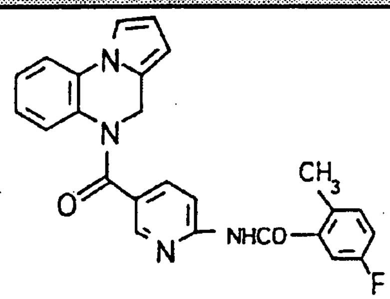
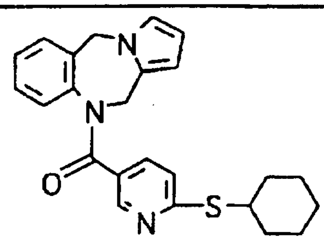
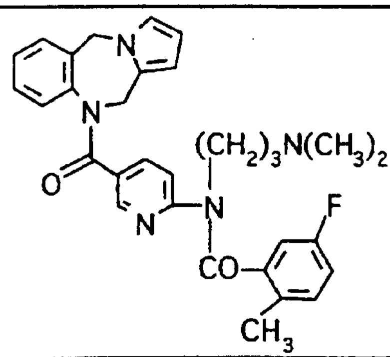
Ex.No.	X	R	V1 IC50 (μM)	V2 IC50 (μM)
326	Cl		41% at 10 μM	91% at 10 μM
319	Cl		0.016	0.0015
320	H		0.0034	0.0026
321	H		0.018	0.0051
322	Cl		0.67	0.011
335	H		*100% at 1 μM	60% at 1 μM

Table 2

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V_1 Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V_2 Receptors or *Binding to V_1 Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and **Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V_2 Receptor

Ex. No.	Structure	V1 IC50 (μM)	V2 IC50 (μM)
171		630	31
288		83% at 10 μM 49% at 1 μM	54% at 10 μM
131		66% at 10 μM	82% at 1 μM

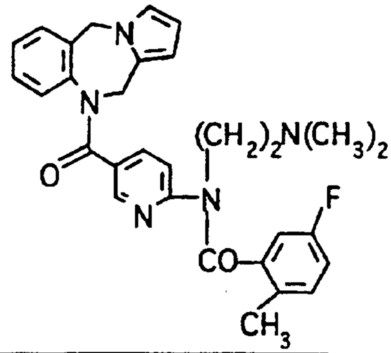
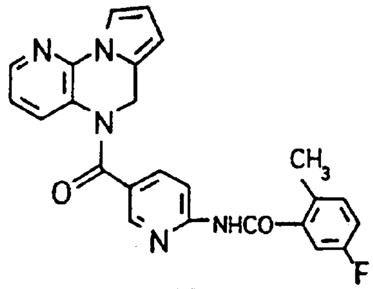
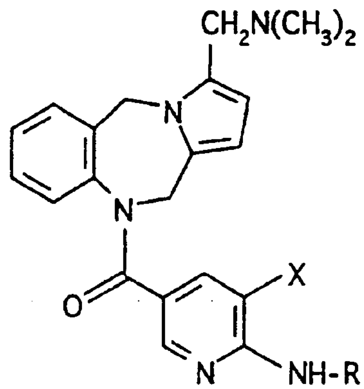
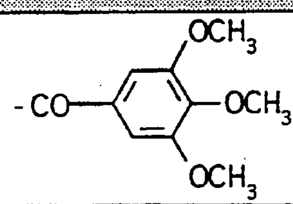
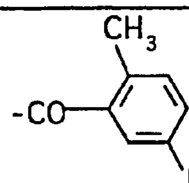
Ex. No.	Structure	V1 IC50 (μM)	V2 IC50 (μM)
130		98% at 10 μM	92% at 10 μM
134		23% at 10 μM	94% at 10 μM

Table 3

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V_1 Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V_2 Receptors or *Binding to V_1 Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and **Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V_2 Receptor



Ex. No.	X	R	V_1 IC50 (μM)	V_2 IC50 (μM)
133	H		*11% at 10 μM	21% at 10 μM
120	H		99	33

Ex. No.	Dose (µM)	% Inhibition	IC50 (µM)

Table 4

Oxytocin Binding Assay

Ex. No.	Dose (µM)	% Inhibition	IC_{50} (µM)
1	10	92	0.20
5	10	93	
344	1	58	3.8
4	10	100	0.67
133	10	59	
261			0.15
120	1	8	
208	10	95	0.73
273	2.5	95	0.056
262	10	76	1.6
263	10	98	0.38
171	10	73	1.1
12	10	98	0.8
7	10	66	
6	1	90	0.14
8	1	89	0.15
301	10	89	0.86
288	10	94	1.36
33	10	95	0.51
9	2.5	96	0.17
131	10	60	
130	10	57	
134	1	63	
341	1	74	
327	1	56	
347	10	86	
328	10	85	0.57
324	1	45	
333	10	98	0.88
338	10	98	0.72

Ex. No.	Dose(µM)	% Inhibition	IC50(µM)
332	10	98	0.83
337	1	16	
331	1	13	
336	10	94	1.63
334	1	5	
339	10	48	8.56
346	1	0	
326	1	0	
352	1.25	96	0.105
348	10	95	0.71
350	10	95	0.205
240	10	98	0.61
329	10	91	0.19
330	10	93	0.99
353	10	83	2.05
43	10	99	0.92
351	1	0	
354	1	7	
14	10	96	0.58
18	5	97	0.31

Effects on the Antagonism of Endogenous Arginine Vasopressin Antidiuretic (V_2) Response in Conscious Rats with Free Access to Water Drinking Before but not During the Experiment:

Male or female normotensive Sprague-Dawley rats (Charles River Laboratories, Inc., Kingston, NY) of 400-450 g body weight were supplied with Laboratory Rodent Feed #5001 (PMI Feeds, Inc., Richmond, IN) and water ad libitum. On the day of test, rats were placed individually into metabolic cages equipped with stainless steel screens (to separate the feces from the urine) and funnels for collection of urine. Vehicle or reference agent was given at various oral doses. During the test, rats were not provided with water or food. Urine was collected for four hours after dosing of the test compound. At the end of four hours, urine volume was measured. Urinary osmolality was determined using a Fiske One-Ten Osmometer (Fiske Associates, Norwood, MA 02062) or an Advanced CRYOMATIC Osmometer, Model 3C2 (Advanced Instruments, Norwood, MA). Determinations of Na^+, K^+ and Cl^- ion were carried out using ion specific electrodes in a Beckman SYNCHRON EL-ISE Electrolyte System analyzer. In the following results, increased urine volume and decreased osmolality relative to AVP-control indicates activity. The results of this test on representative compounds of this invention are shown in Table 5.

TABLE 5

Rat Urine Volume Data* and Binding Assay to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V2 Receptor

Example Number	Urine Volume (ml/4 hrs) 10 mg/kg rat p.o.	Vasopressin Binding Human V2 Receptor nM
372	30.3	15.9
373	15.6	
374	16.5	
375	44.2	
376	23.8	
377	13.2	4.5
378	11.7	69.1
379	18.9	12.3

*Volume of urine produced in a 4 hour time perion by the oral administration of 10 mg/kg dose to rats.

The compounds of the present invention can be used in the form of salts derived from pharmaceutically or physiologically acceptable acids or bases. These salts include, but are not limited to, the following: salts with inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, phosphoric acid and, as the case may be, such organic acids as acetic acid, oxalic acid, succinic acid, and maleic acid. Other salts include salts with alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, potassium, calcium or magnesium or with organic bases. The compounds can also be used in the form of esters, carbamates and other conventional "pro-drug" forms, which, when administered in such form, convert to the active moiety *in vivo*.

When the compounds are employed for the above utilities, they may be combined with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, for example, solvents, diluents and the like, and may be administered orally in such forms as tablets, capsules, dispersible

powders, granules, or suspensions containing, for example, from about 0.05 to 5% of suspending agent, syrups containing, for example, from about 10 to 50% of sugar, and elixirs containing, for example, from about 20 to 50% ethanol, and the like, or parenterally in the form of sterile injectable solutions or suspensions containing from about 0.05 to 5% suspending agent in an isotonic medium. Such pharmaceutical preparations may contain, for example, from about 25 to about 90% of the active ingredient in combination with the carrier, more usually between about 5% and 60% by weight.

The effective dosage of active ingredient employed may vary depending on the particular compound employed, the mode of administration and the severity of the condition being treated. However, in general, satisfactory results are obtained when the compounds of the invention are administered at a daily dosage of from about 0.5 to about 500 mg/kg of animal body weight, preferably given in divided doses two to four times a day, or in a sustained release form. For most large mammals the total daily dosage is from about 1 to 100 mg, preferably from about 2 to 80 mg. Dosage forms suitable for internal use comprise from about 0.5 to 500 mg of the active compound in intimate admixture with a solid or liquid pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. This dosage regimen may be adjusted to provide the optimal therapeutic response. For example, several divided doses may be administered daily or the dose may be proportionally reduced as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation.

These active compounds may be administered orally as well as by intravenous, intramuscular, or subcutaneous routes. Solid carriers include starch, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, microcrystalline cellulose, sucrose and kaolin, while liquid carriers include sterile water, polyethylene glycols, non-ionic surfac-

tants and edible oils such as corn, peanut and sesame oils, as are appropriate to the nature of the active ingredient and the particular form of administration desired. Adjuvants customarily employed in the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions may be advantageously included, such as flavoring agents, coloring agents, preserving agents, and antioxidants, for example, vitamin E, ascorbic acid, BHT and BHA.

The preferred pharmaceutical compositions from the standpoint of ease of preparation and administration are solid compositions, particularly tablets and hard-filled or liquid-filled capsules. Oral administration of the compounds is preferred.

These active compounds may also be administered parenterally or intraperitoneally. Solutions or suspensions of these active compounds as a free base or pharmacologically acceptable salt can be prepared in water suitably mixed with a surfactant such as hydroxypropylcellulose. Dispersions can also be prepared in glycerol, liquid, polyethylene glycols and mixtures thereof in oils. Under ordinary conditions of storage and use, these preparations contain a preservative to prevent the growth of microorganisms.

The pharmaceutical forms suitable for injectable use include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersions. In all cases, the form must be sterile and must be fluid to the extent that easy syringability exits. It must be stable under conditions of manufacture and storage and must be preserved against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacterial and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol (e.g., glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oil.

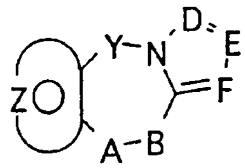
The new tricyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists of this invention are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

In particular, the vasopressin antagonists of this invention are therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

In particular, the oxytocin antagonists of this invention are useful in the prevention of preterm labor and premature birth which is a significant cause of infant health problems and infant mortality.

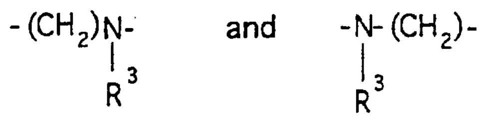
What is claimed is:

1. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

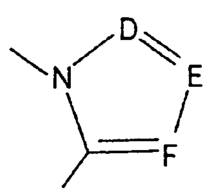
A-B is a moiety selected from



and the moiety:

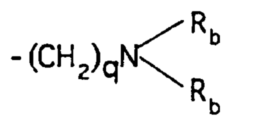
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

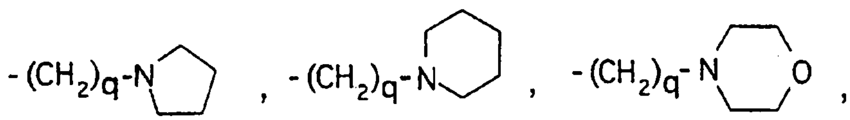
the moiety:



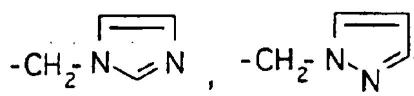
is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are selected from carbon and nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

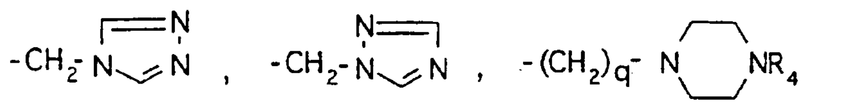
$-CH=CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,

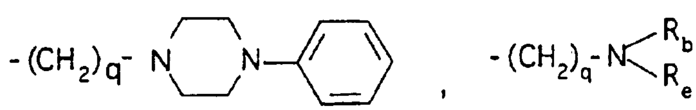
$-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), 

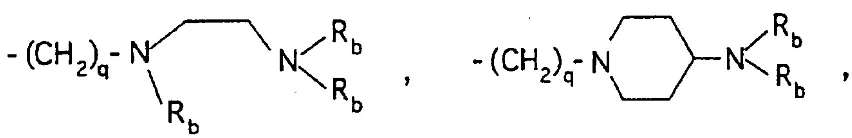


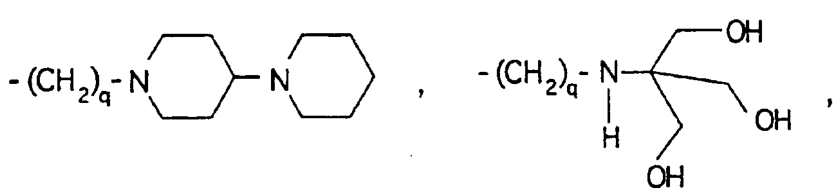
$-(CH_2)_q-O-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-(CH_2)_qOH$,

$-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), 



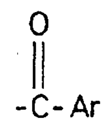




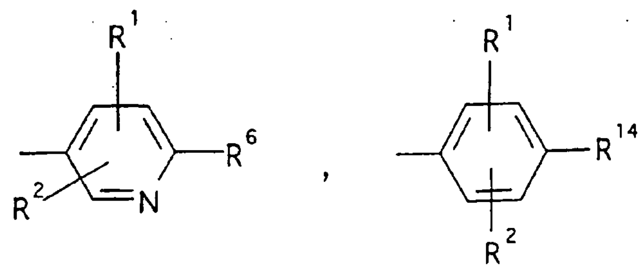


-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]2; q is one or two;

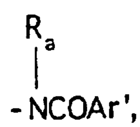
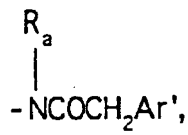
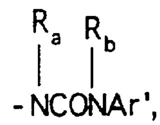
R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;
R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

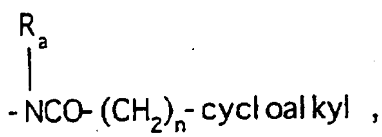
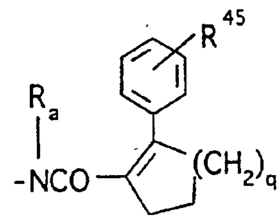


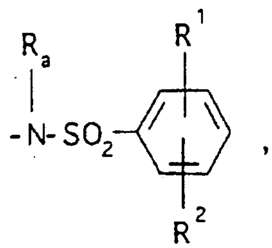
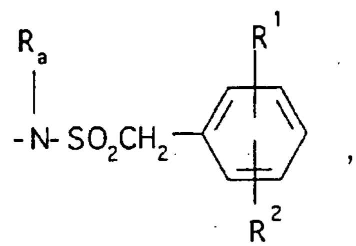
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

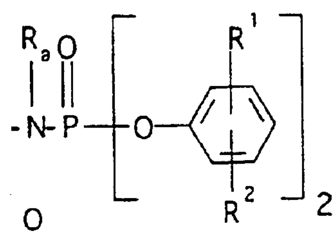
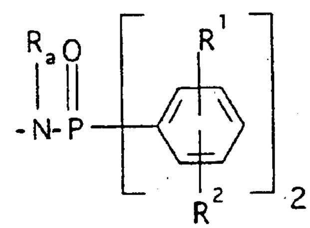


R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

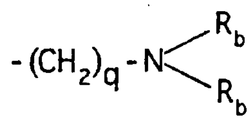
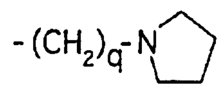
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

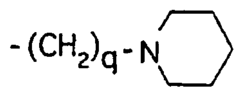
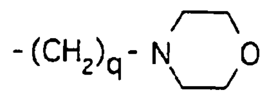
$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NHSO_2-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

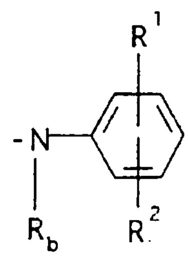
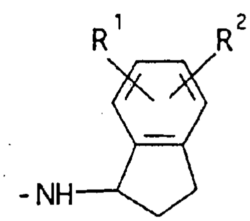
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

 ,  ,

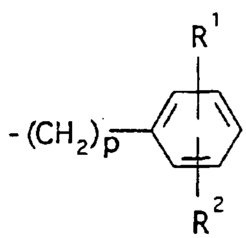
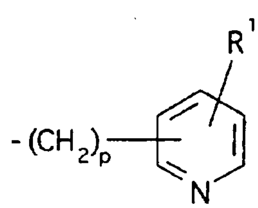
 ,  ,

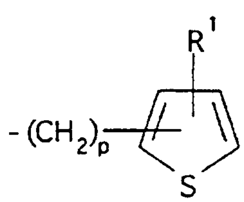
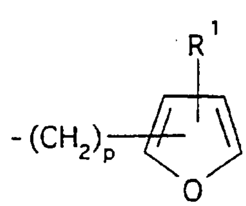
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

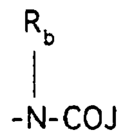
$-X-R^7$,  , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

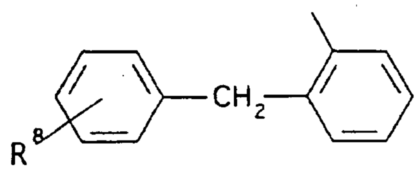
 ,  ,

 , 

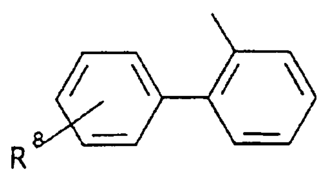
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



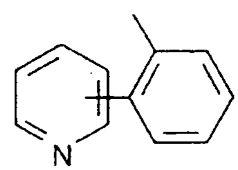
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:



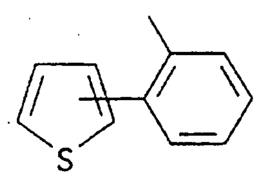
,



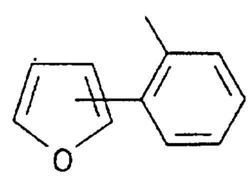
,



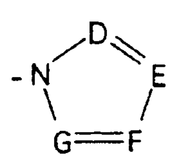
,



,



or $-CH_2$-K' wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2$-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$\begin{array}{l} R_a \\ | \\ -N-COCHAr' \\ \quad\quad\quad\;\; | \\ \quad\quad\quad\;\; R_c \end{array}$$

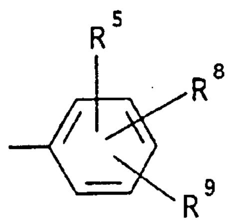
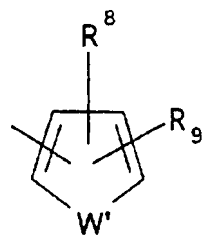
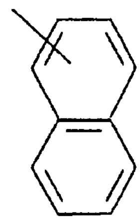
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

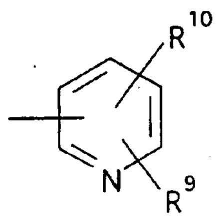
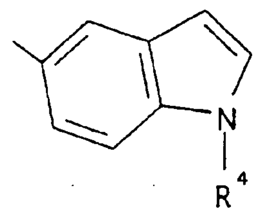
$$-O-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),\ -S-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),$$

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix},\quad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix},$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix},\quad -O-(CH_2)_2N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

, , ,

, and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

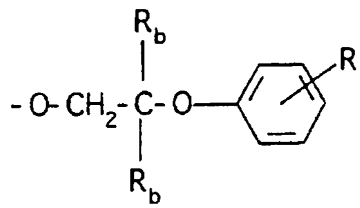
$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

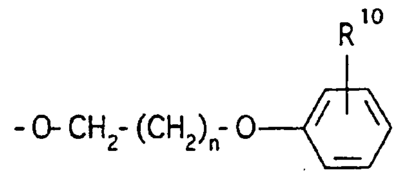
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^{14} is

-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

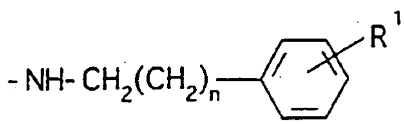


,

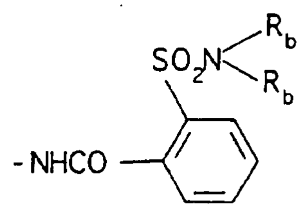


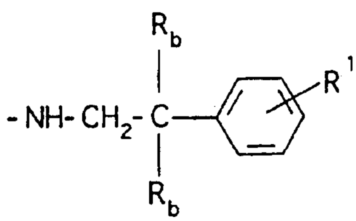
,

-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

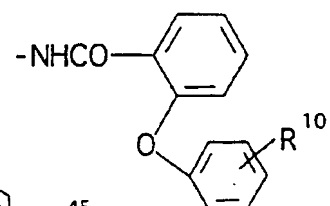


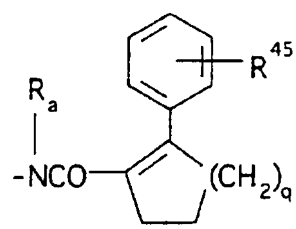
,



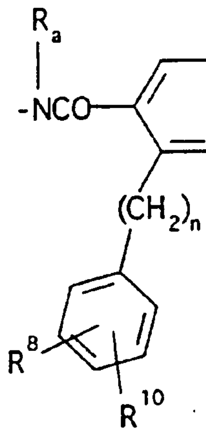


,

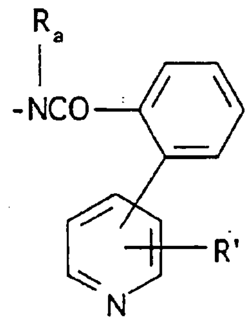




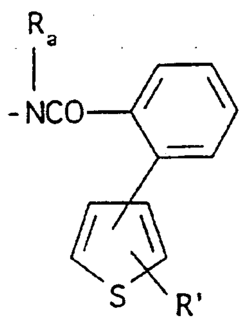
,



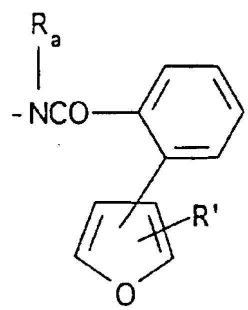
,



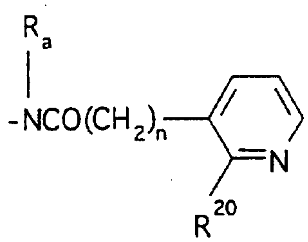
,



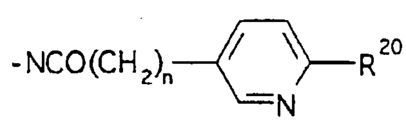
,

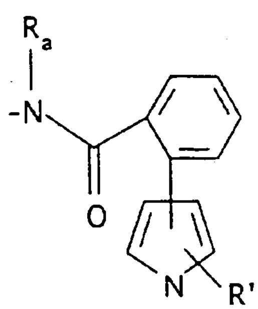


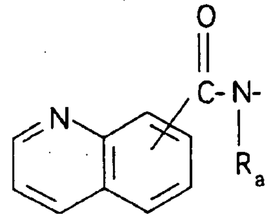
,



,





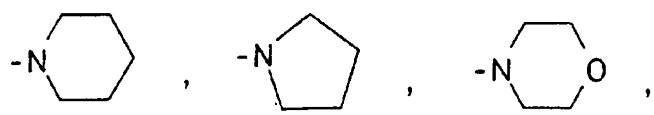


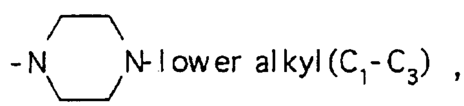
;

q is 1 or 2;

wherein n is 0 or 1;

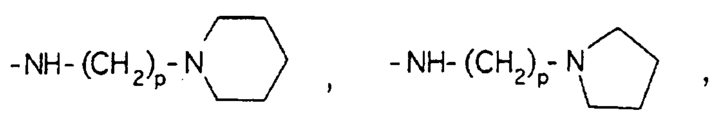
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

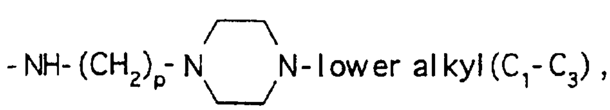


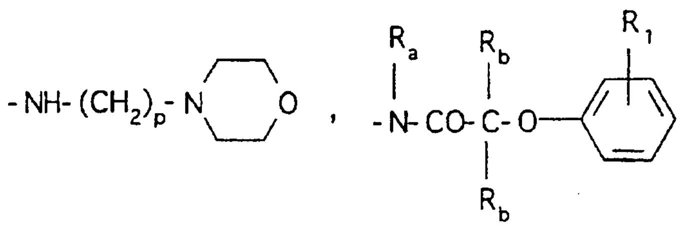


$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$N[lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,

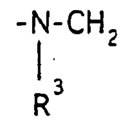






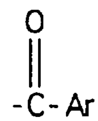
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

2. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety A-B is:

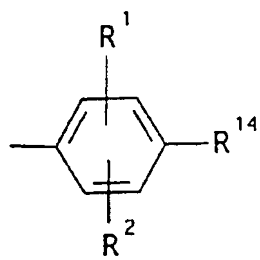


wherein R^3 is as defined in Claim 1.

3. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein R^3 is the moiety:

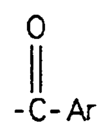


and Ar is

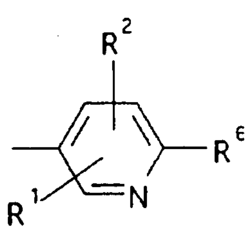


wherein R^1, R^2 and R^{14} are as defined in Claim 1.

4. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein R^3 is the moiety:

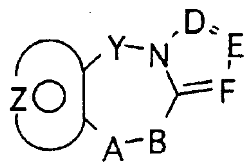


and Ar is



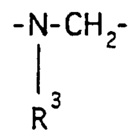
wherein R^1, R^2, and R^6 are as defined in Claim 1.

5. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

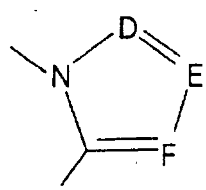
A-B is a moiety selected from



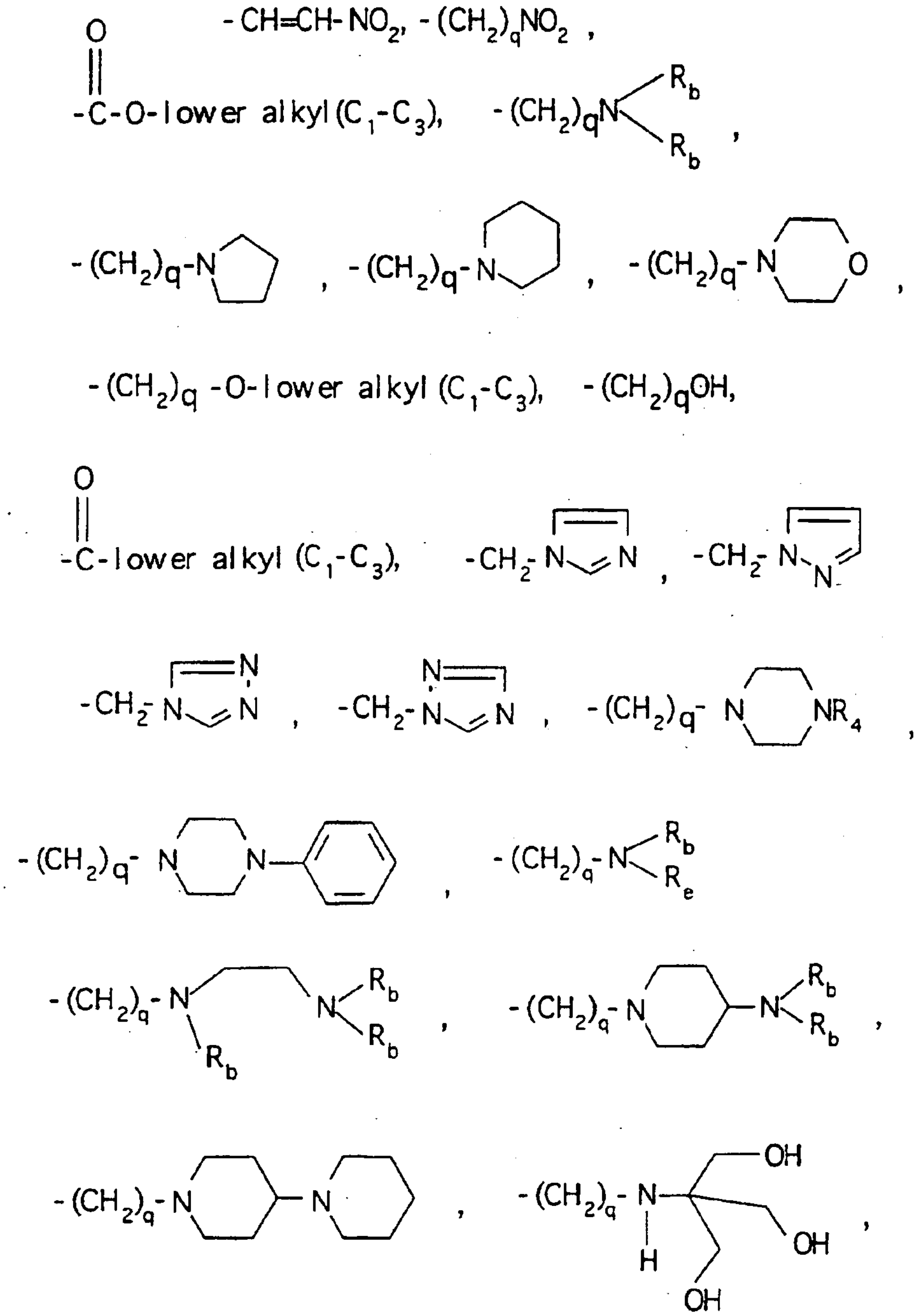
and the moiety:

represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

the moiety:

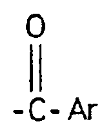


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

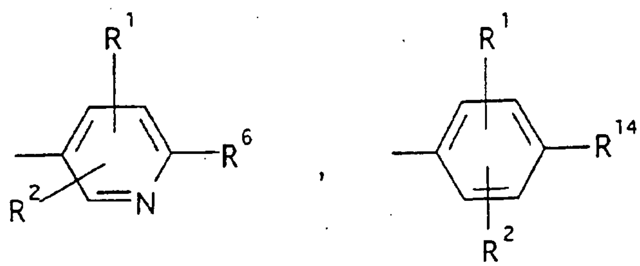


-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$; q is one or two;

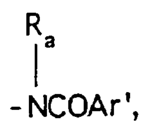
R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;
R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

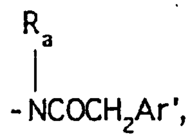


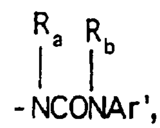
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

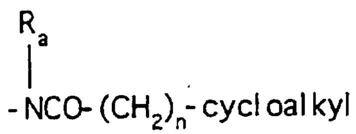


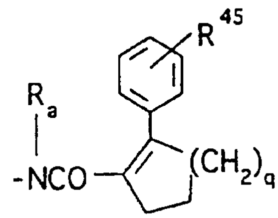
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

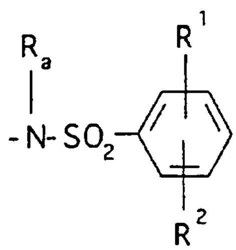
,

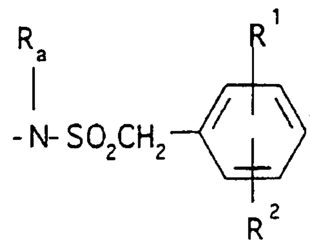
,

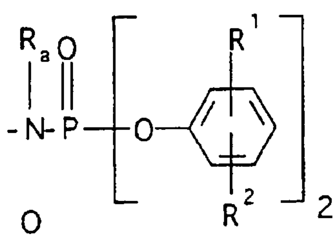
,

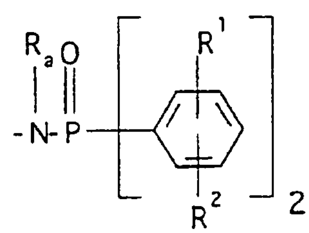
,



,

,

,

,

-NH-C(=O)-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

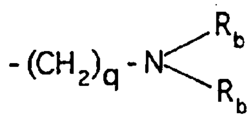
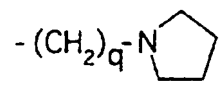
$-NHSO_2$-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

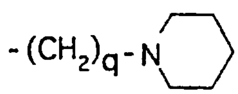
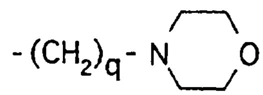
-NH-C(=O)-O-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NHSO_2$-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

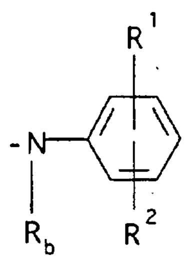
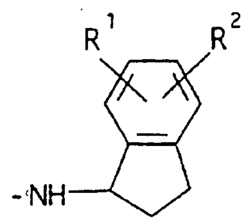
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

 ,  ,

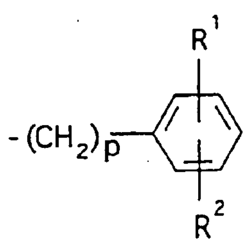
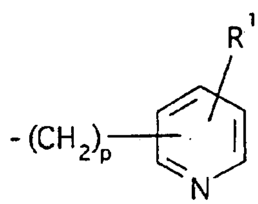
 ,  ,

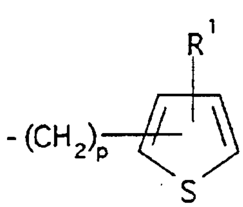
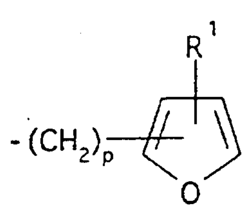
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

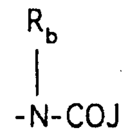
$-X-R^7$,  , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

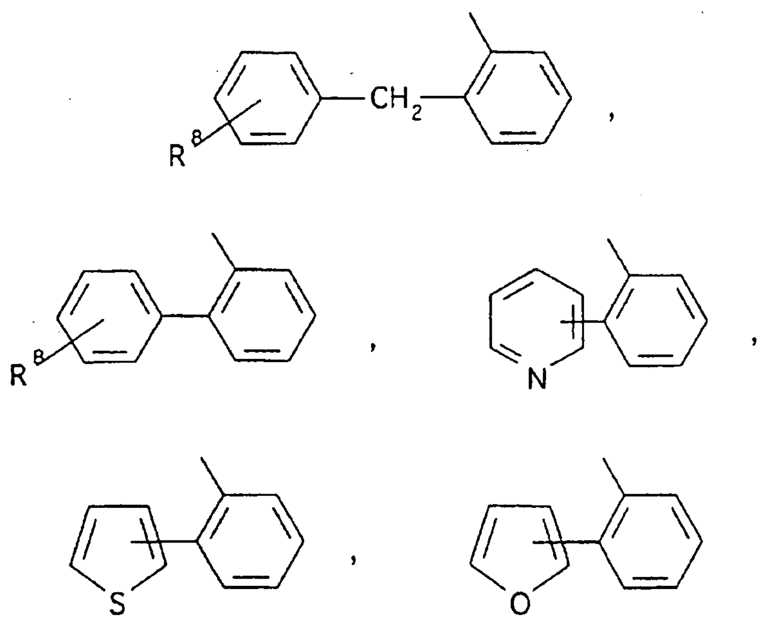
 ,  ,

 , 

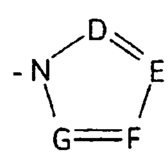
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:



or $-CH_2$-K' wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, -CO_2-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$-\underset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{}{N}}\text{-CO}\underset{\displaystyle R_c}{\text{CH}}\text{Ar}'$$

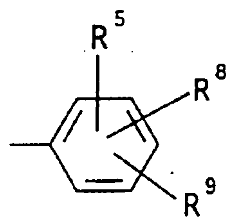
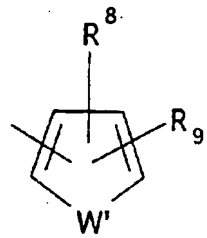
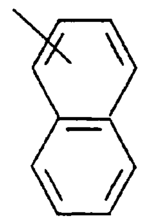
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

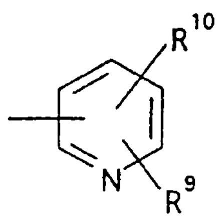
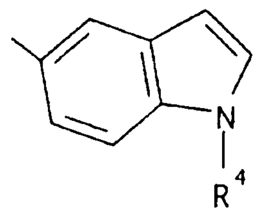
-O-C(=O)-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix}, \quad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix},$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix}, \quad -O-(CH_2)_2N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

, , ,

, and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

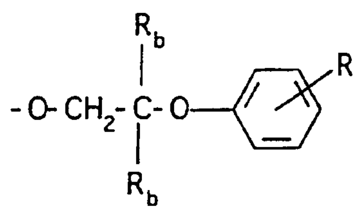
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-O-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3) \quad ,$$

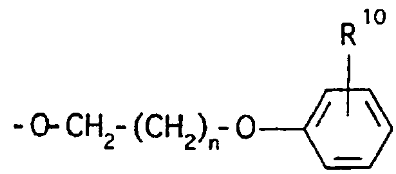
$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); R^{14} is

-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched ,

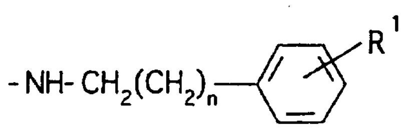


,

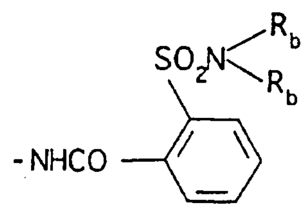


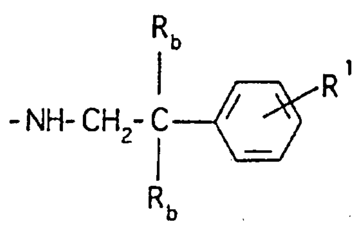
,

-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched ,

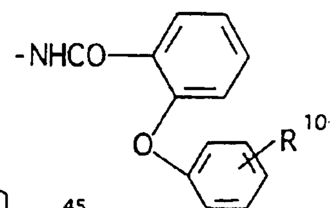


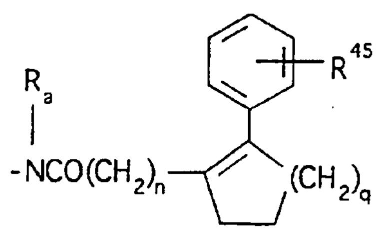
,



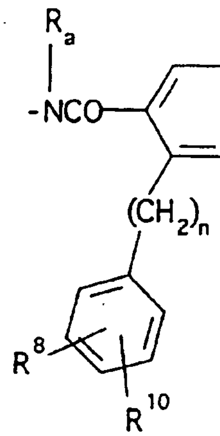
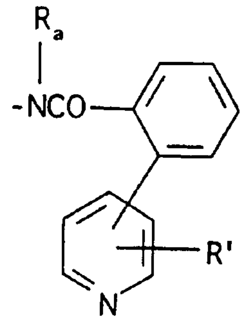


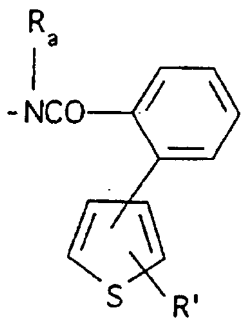
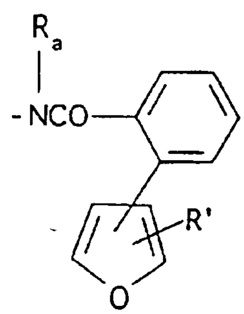
,

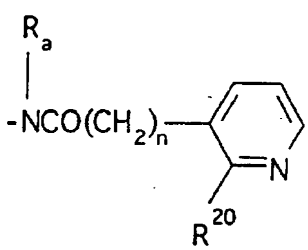
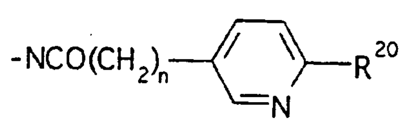


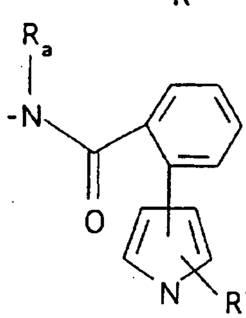
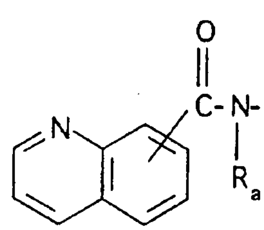


,

 ,  ,

 ,  ,

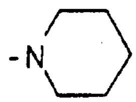
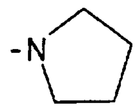
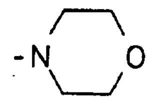
 , 

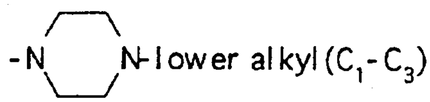
  ;

q is 1 or 2;

wherein n is 0 or 1;

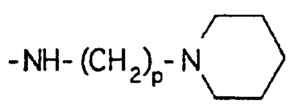
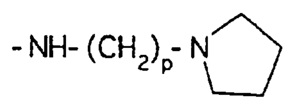
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, -NH(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, -N-[(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl]$_2$,

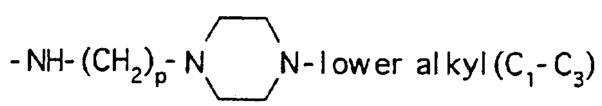
 ,  ,  ,

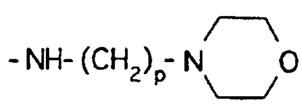
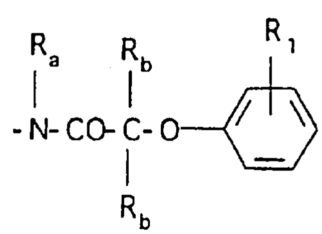
 ,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-NH$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) ,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,

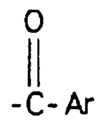
 ,  ,

 ,

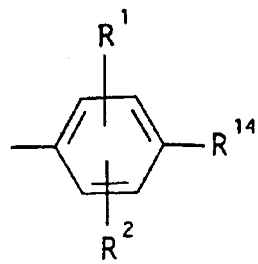
 , 

and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

6. A compound according to Claim 5 wherein R^3 is the moiety:

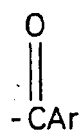


and Ar is

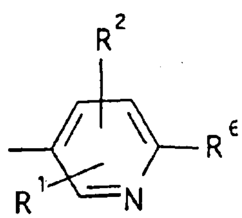


wherein R^1, R^2 and R^{14} are as defined in Claim 5.

7. A compound according to Claim 5 wherein R^3 is the moiety:

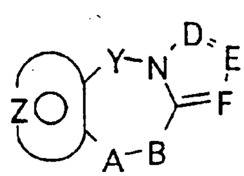


and Ar is



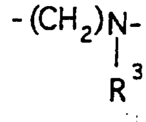
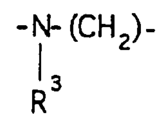
wherein R^1, R^2 and R^6 are as defined in Claim 5.

8. A compound selected from those of the formulae:



wherein Y is CH_2;

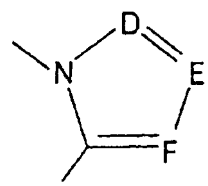
A-B is a moiety selected from

 and 

and the moiety:

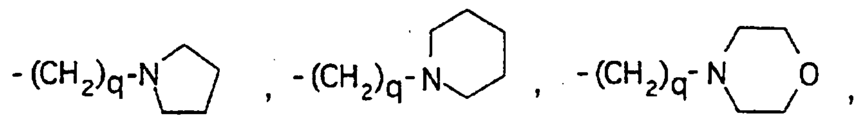
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

the moiety:



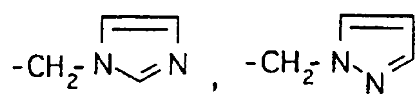
is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

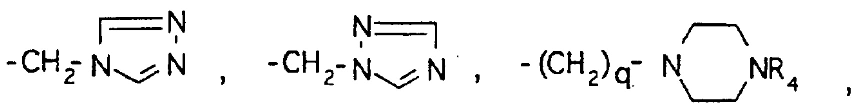
$-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), $-CH{=}CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,

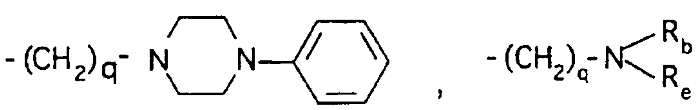


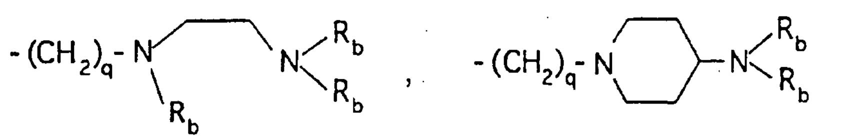
$-(CH_2)_q-O-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-(CH_2)_qOH$,

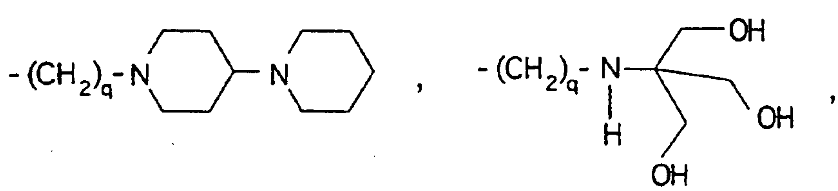
$-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3),











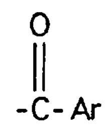
-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$; q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

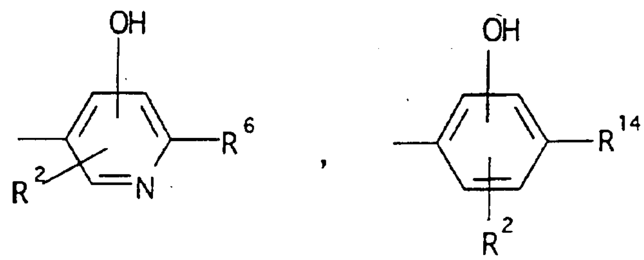
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;

R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



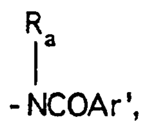
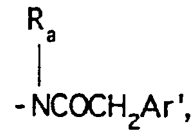
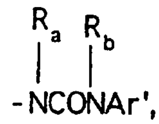
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

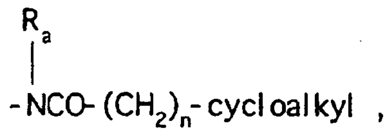
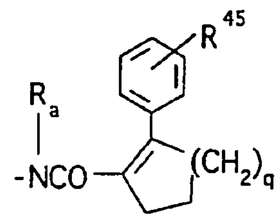


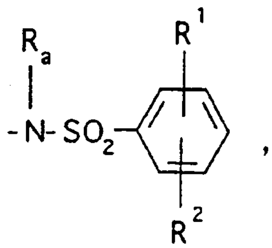
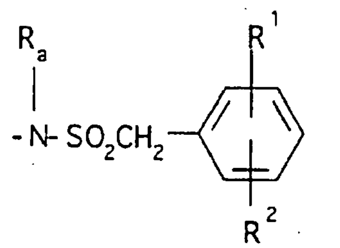
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

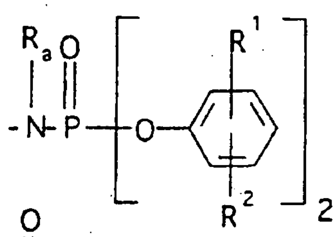
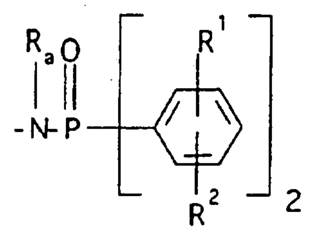
R^2 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

-NH-C(=O)-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

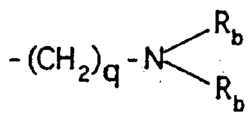
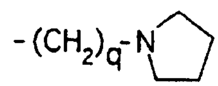
-$NHSO_2$-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

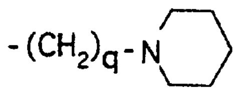
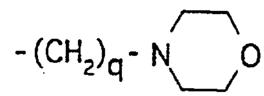
-NH-C(=O)-O-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

-NH-C(=O)-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

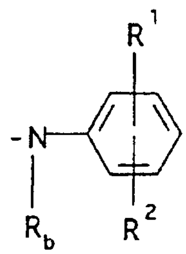
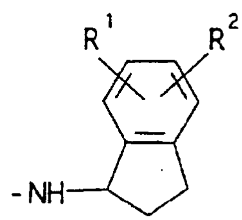
-$NHSO_2$-lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

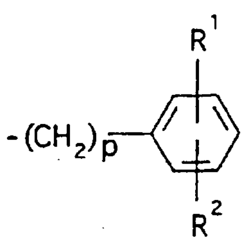
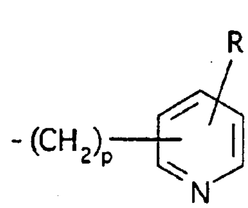
 ,  ,

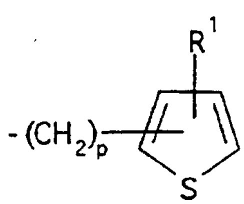
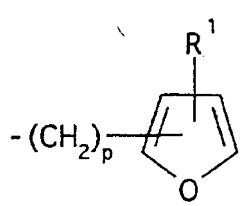
 ,  ,

$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;
(b) moieties of the formula:

$-X-R^7$,  , 

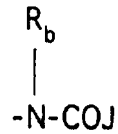
wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

 ,  ,

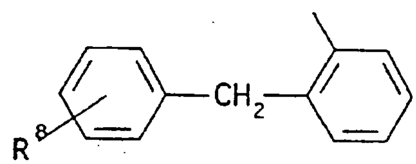
 , 

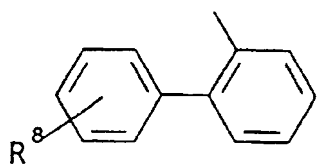
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined;

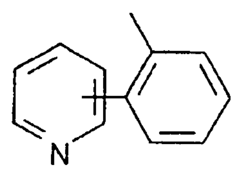
(c) a moiety of the formula:

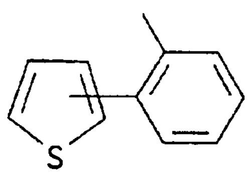


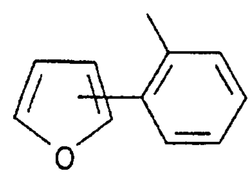
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:


,

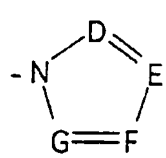

,


,


,

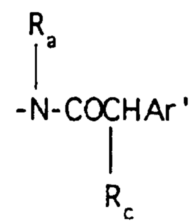


or $-CH_2$-K' wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



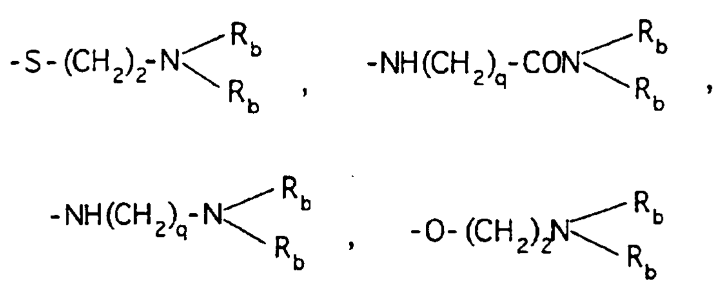
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2$-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

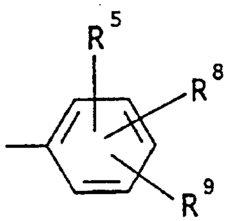
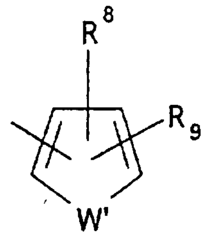
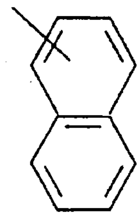


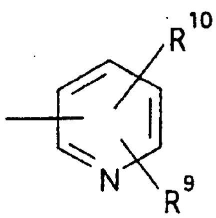
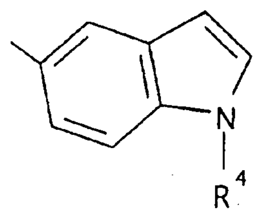
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

-O-C(=O)-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),



and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

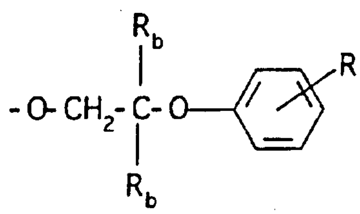
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3) \quad ,$$

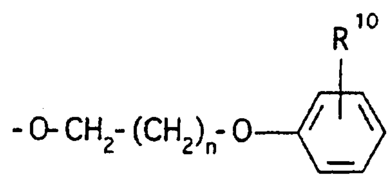
$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); R^{14} is

-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

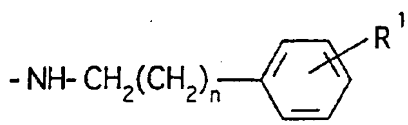


,

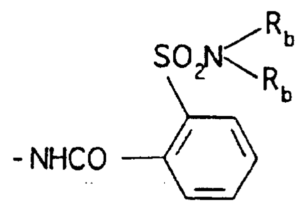


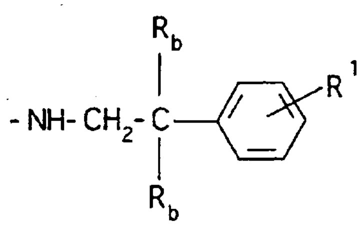
,

-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

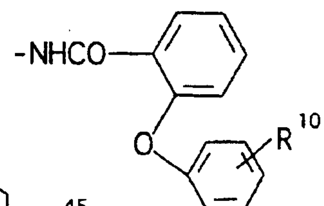


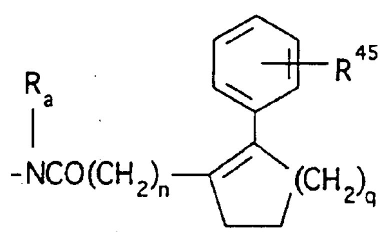
,



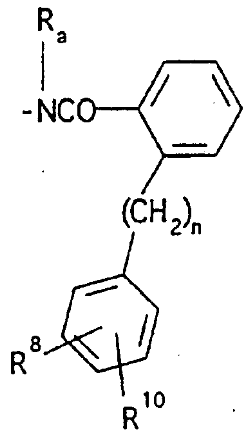
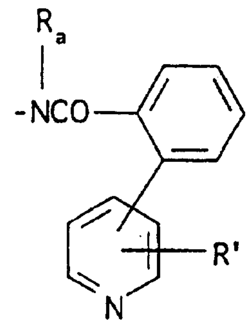


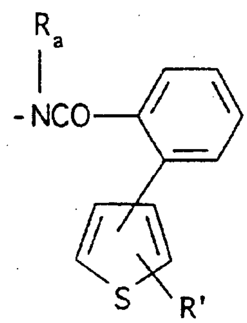
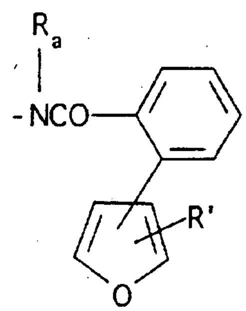
,

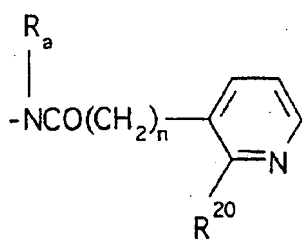
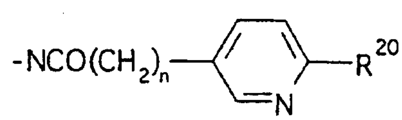


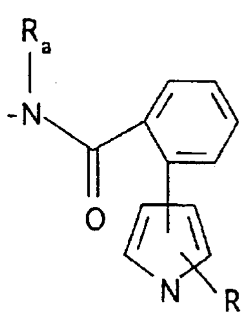
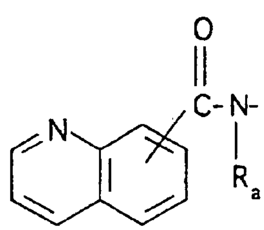


,


,

,


,

,


,




;

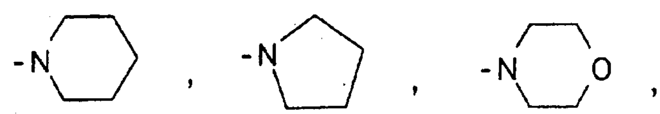
q is 1 or 2;

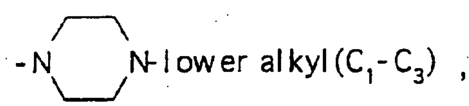
wherein n is 0 or 1;

R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

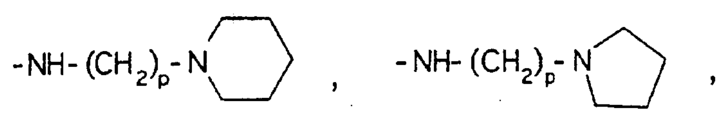
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

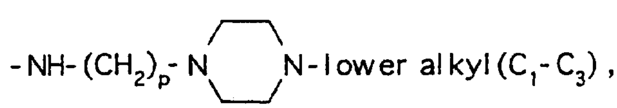


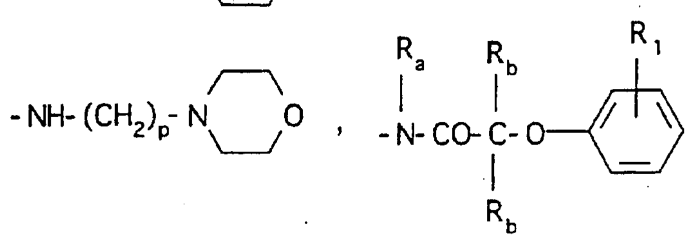


$-NH-(CH_2)_p-NH$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,

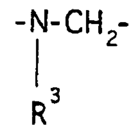






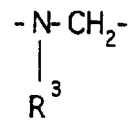
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

9. A compound according to Claim 8 wherein A-B is a moiety:

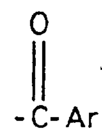


where R^3 is as defined in Claim 8.

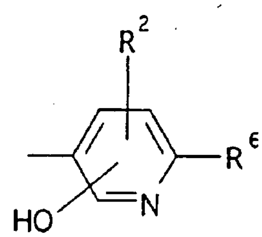
10. The compound according to Claim 8 wherein A-B is the moiety:

 ;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

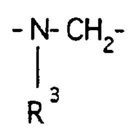


wherein Ar is:



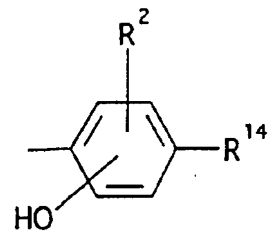
wherein R^2 and R^6 are defined in Claim 8.

11. The compound according to Claim 8 wherein A-B is the moiety:

 ;

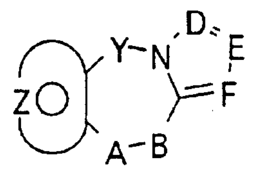
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

wherein Ar is:



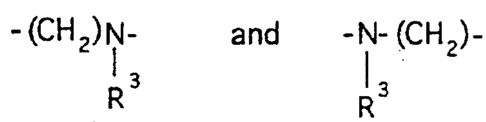
wherein R^2 and R^{14} are defined in Claim 8.

12. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

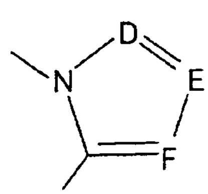
A-B is a moiety selected from



and the moiety:

represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

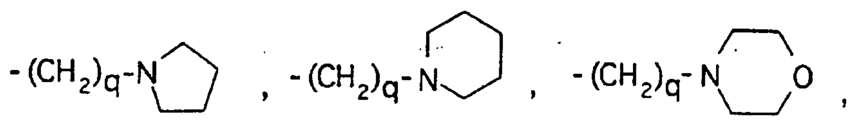
the moiety:



is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring where D is carbon and E and

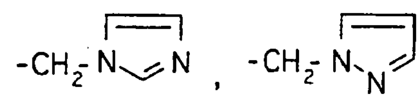
F are selected from carbon and nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, $-COCCl_3$, $-COCF_3$,

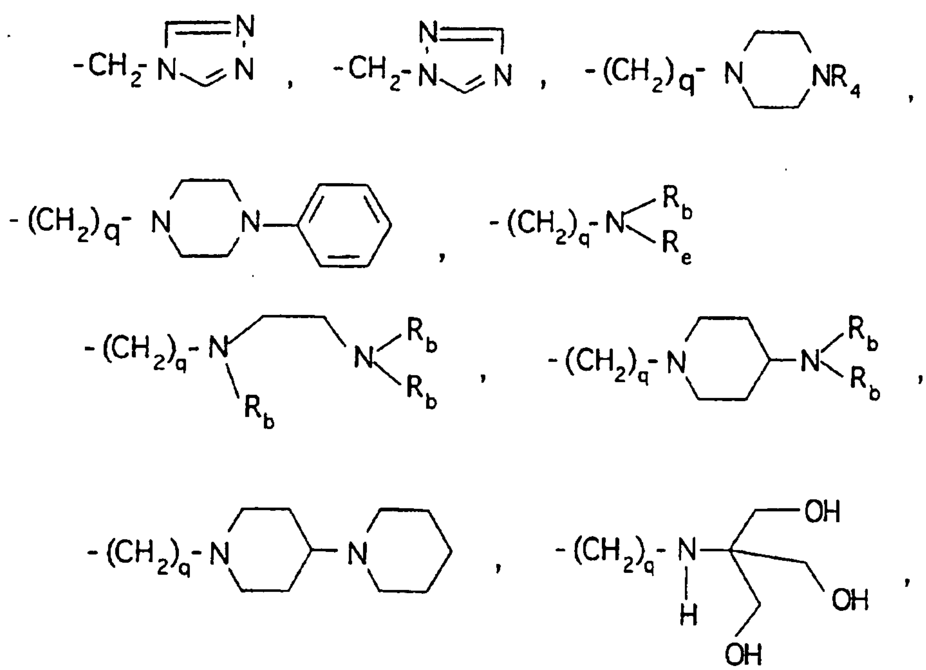
$-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-O-$lower alkyl($C_1$-$C_3$), $-CH{=}CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,



$-(CH_2)_q-O-$lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-(CH_2)_qOH$,

$-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-$lower alkyl ($C_1$-$C_3$),





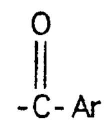
-CHO, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino, CONH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and -CON[lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$; q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

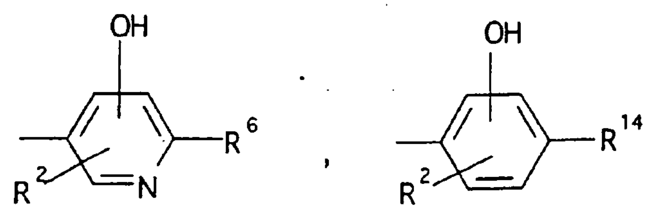
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;

R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



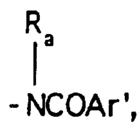
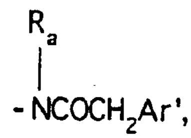
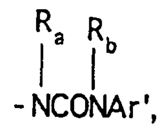
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

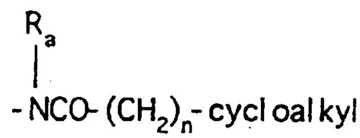
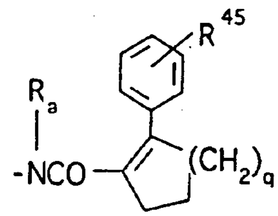


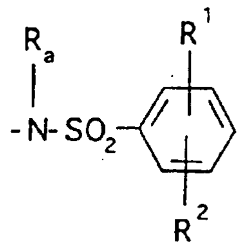
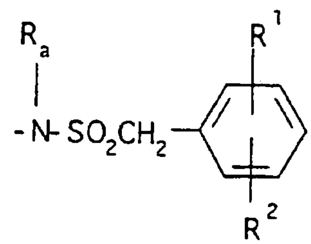
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

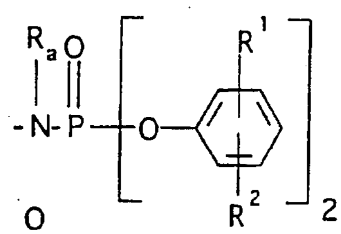
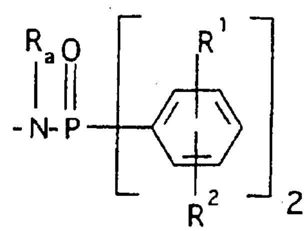
R^2 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

, , ,

, 

, ,

, ,

$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

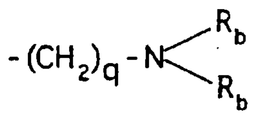
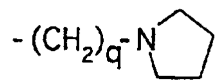
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

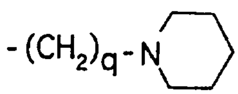
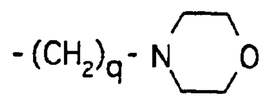
$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

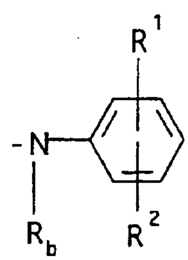
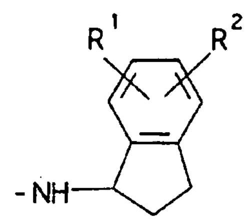
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

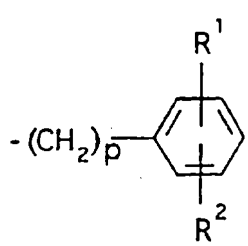
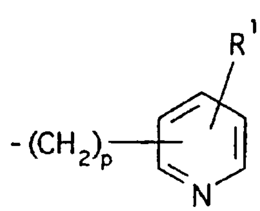
 ,  ,

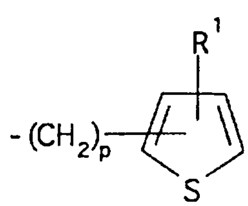
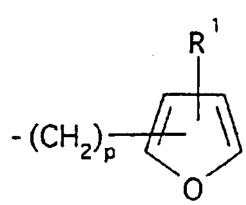
 ,  ,

$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;
(b) moieties of the formula:

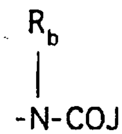
$-X-R^7$,  , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

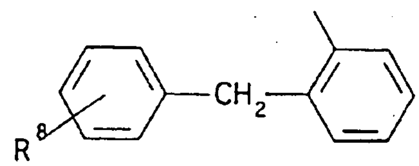
 ,  ,

 , 

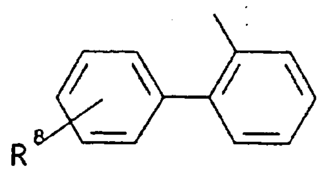
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



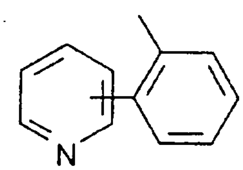
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:



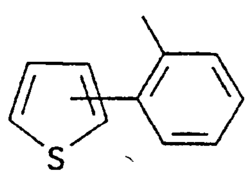
,



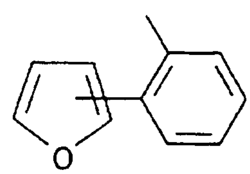
,



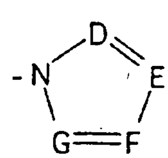
,



,



or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$\begin{array}{l} R_a \\ | \\ -N-COCHAr' \\ \quad\quad\;\; | \\ \quad\quad\;\; R_c \end{array}$$

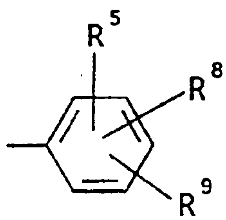
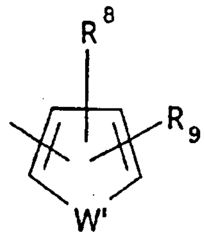
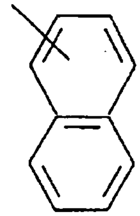
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

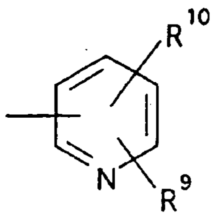
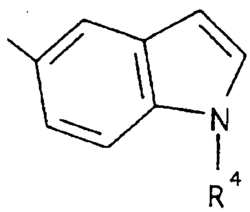
$$-O-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),\ -S-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),$$

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ ,\qquad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ ,$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}\ ,\qquad -O-(CH_2)_2N{<}^{R_b}_{R_b}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

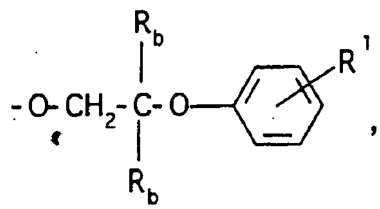
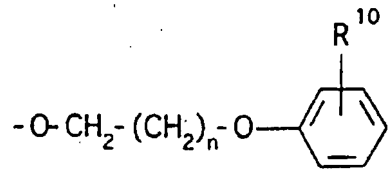
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

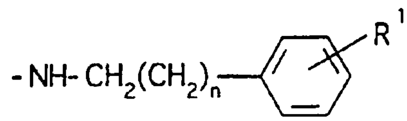
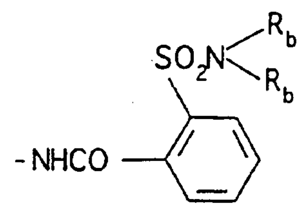
$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

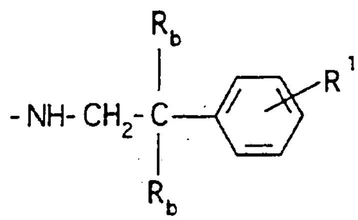
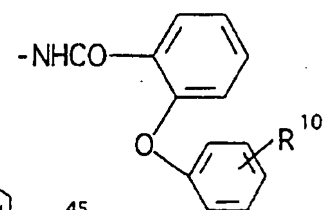
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); R^{14} is

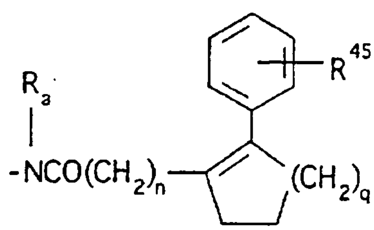
-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

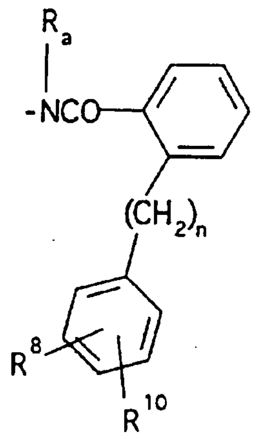
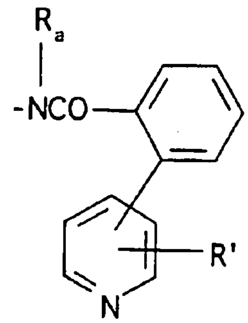

,

,

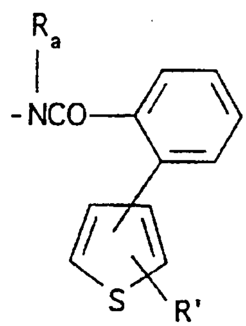
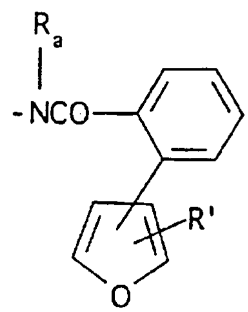
-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

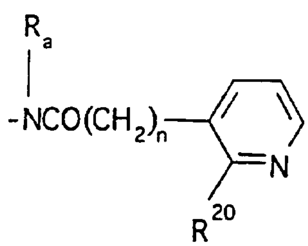
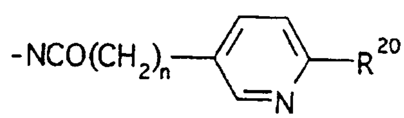

,


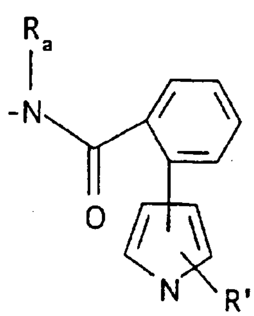

,


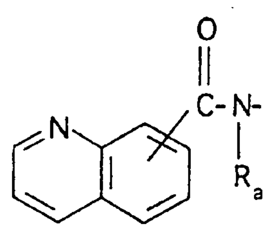

,


,

,


,

,


,


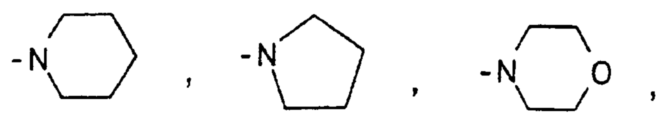


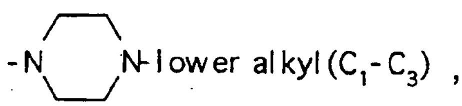


q is 1 or 2;

wherein n is 0 or 1;

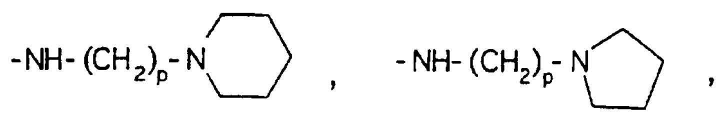
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1-C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

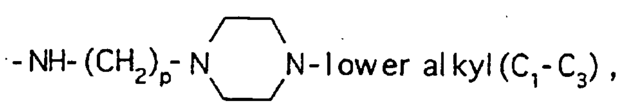


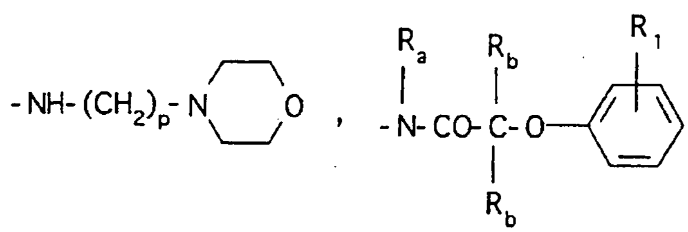


$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-$N[lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,

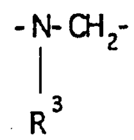




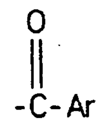


and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

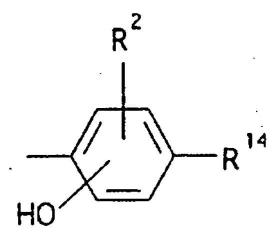
13. The compound according to Claim 12 wherein A-B is the moiety:

 ;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

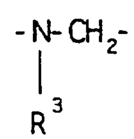


wherein Ar is:



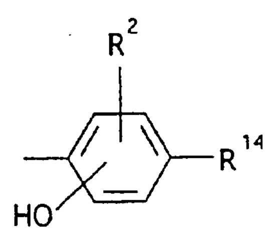
wherein R^2 and R^{14} are defined in Claim 12.

14. The compound according to Claim 12 wherein A-B is the moiety:

 ;

R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

wherein Ar is:



wherein R^2 and R^{14} are defined in Claim 12.

15. The compound according to Claim 1, [4-(3-Dimethylaminomethyl-3-hydroxy-5H,11H-pyrrolo [2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

16. The compound according to Claim 1, [4-(3-[1,4']Bipiperidinyl-1'-ylmethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-chloro-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

17. The compound according to Claim 1, (3-Chloro-4-(3-[(2-hydroxy-1,1-bis-hydroxymethyl-ethylamino)-methyl]-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzo-diazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl)-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

18. The compound according to Claim 1, [3-chloro-4-(3-{[(2-dimethylamino-ethyl)-methyll-amino]-methyl}-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

19. The compound according to Claim 1, (3-chloro-4-[3-(4-dimethylamino-piperidin-1-ylmethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl)-biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid amide.

20. The compound according to Claim 1, N-[3-Chloro-4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo{2,1-c][1,4]benzo-diazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl]-2-pyrrol-1-yl-benzamide.

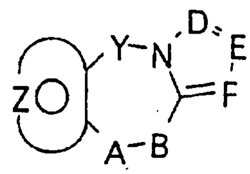
21. The compound according to Claim 1, Quinoline-8-carboxylic acid [4-(5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-3-phenyl]-amide.

22. The compound according to Claim 1, [3-Chloro-4-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c] [1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl)-phenyl}-2-phenyl-cyclopent-1-enecarboxylic acid amide.

23. The compound according to Claim 1,

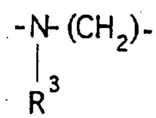
Biphenyl-2-carboxylic acid {3-chloro-4-[3-(2-nitro-ethyl)-5H,11H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-10-carbonyl]-phenyl}-amide.

24. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

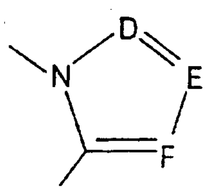
A-B is



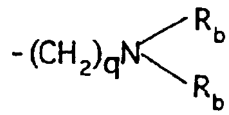
and the moiety:

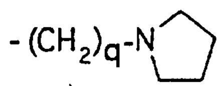
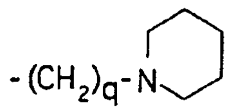
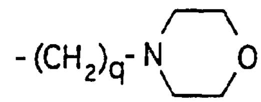
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

the moiety:

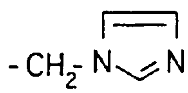


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from

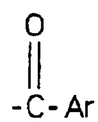
$-CH{=}CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,  ,

 ,  ,  ,

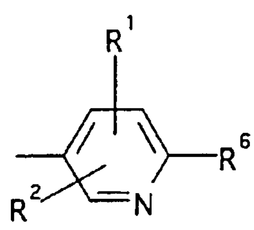
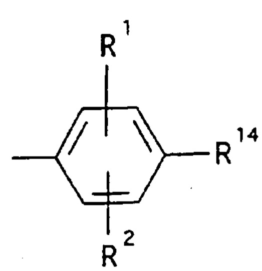
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-(CH_2)_qOH$,

 ,

-CHO, and (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino; q is one or two; R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



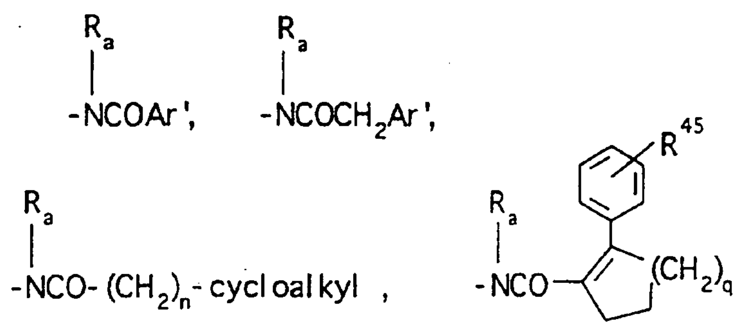
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

 , 

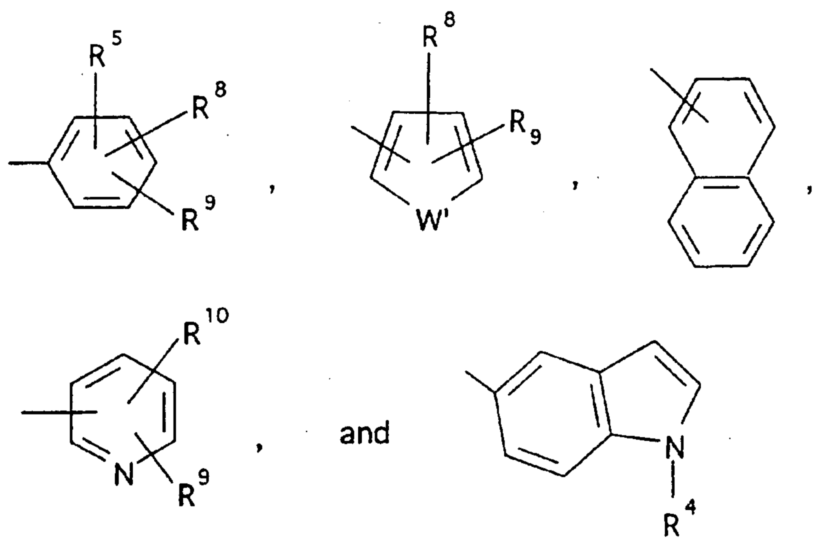
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

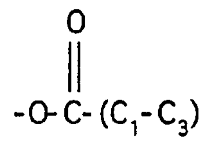


Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

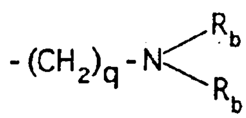
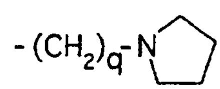
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

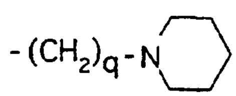
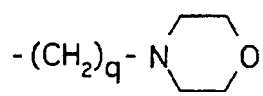
 ,

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

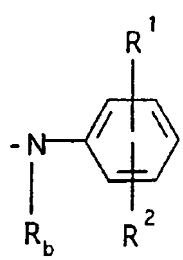
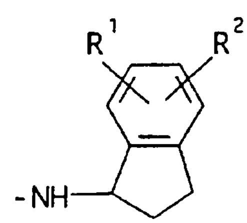
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

 ,  ,

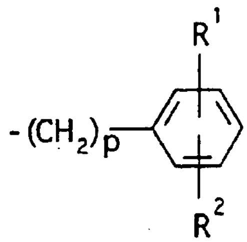
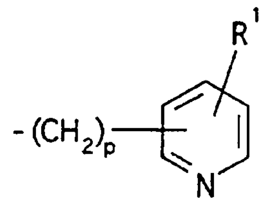
 ,  ,

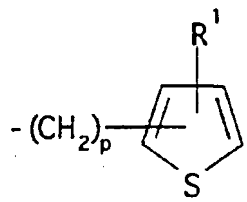
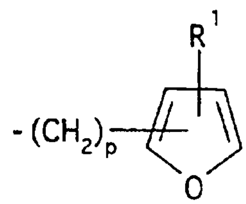
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

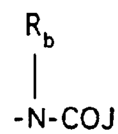
$-X-R^7$,  , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

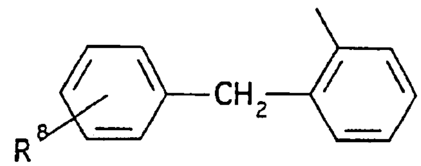
 ,  ,

 , 

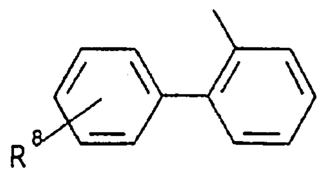
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



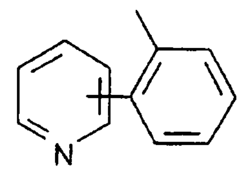
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:



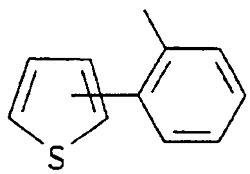
,



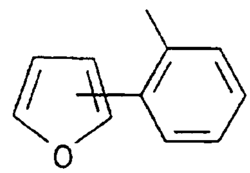
,



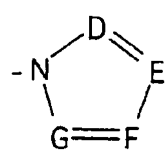
,



,

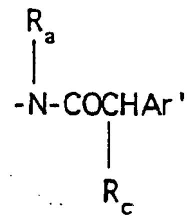


or $-CH_2-K'$ wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



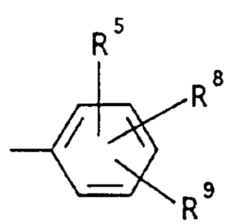
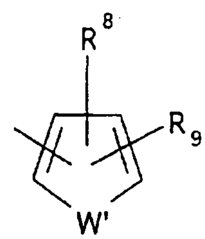
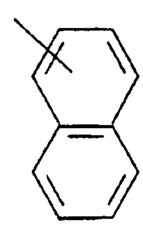
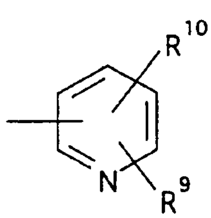
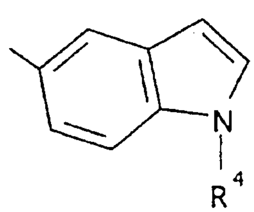
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

$-O-C(=O)-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$-S-(CH_2)_2-N(R_b)R_b$, $-NH(CH_2)_q-CON(R_b)R_b$,

$-NH(CH_2)_q-N(R_b)R_b$, $-O-(CH_2)_2N(R_b)R_b$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;


,

,

,

, and


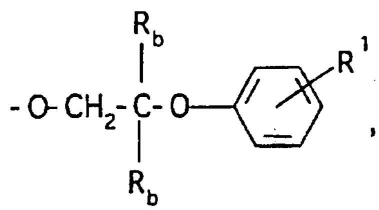
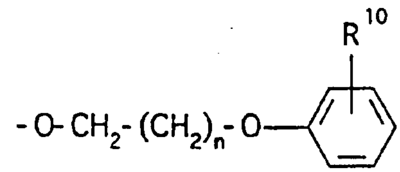
wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3) \quad ,$$

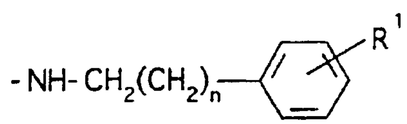
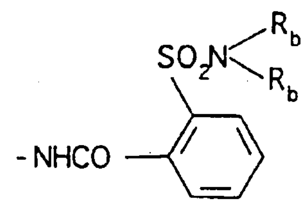
$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and; R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

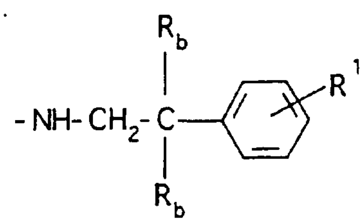
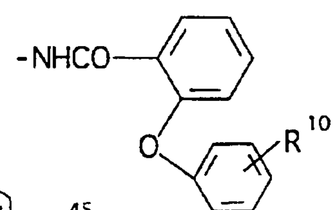
R^{14} is

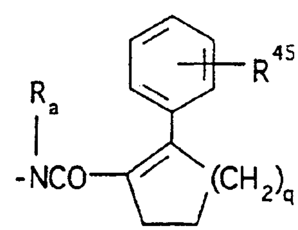
-O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

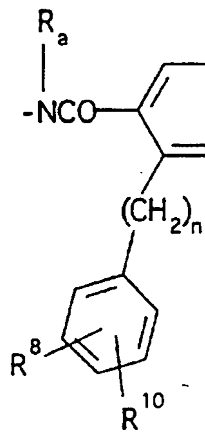
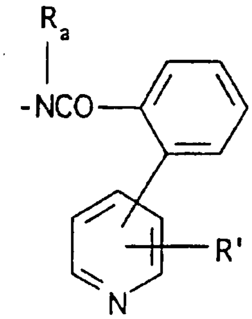
, ,

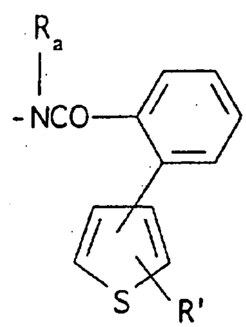
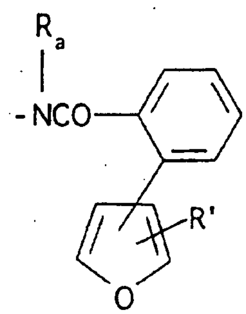
-NH lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

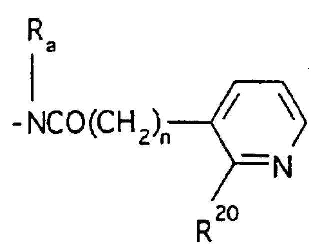
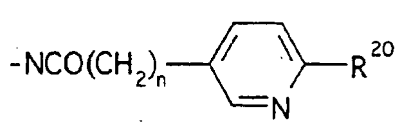
, 

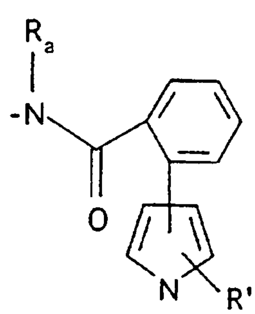
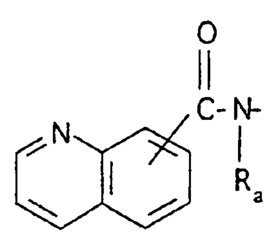
, 

,

 ,  ,

 ,  ,

 , 

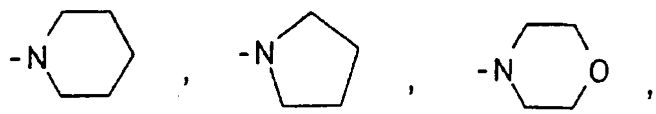
q is 1 or 2;

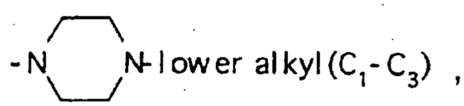
wherein n is 0 or 1;

R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

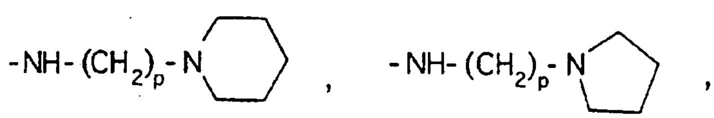
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

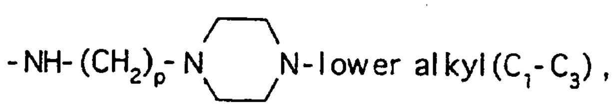


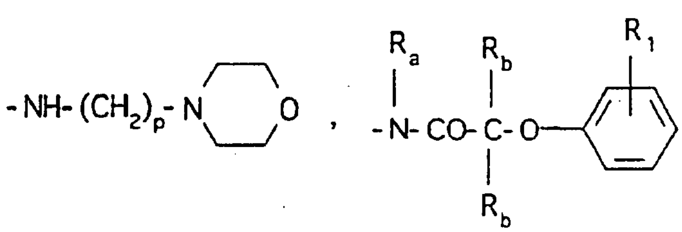


$-NH-(CH_2)_p-NH$lower alkyl$(C_1$-$C_3)$,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1$-$C_3)]_2$,

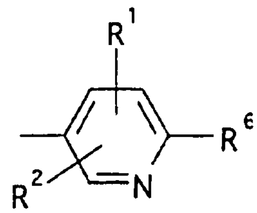






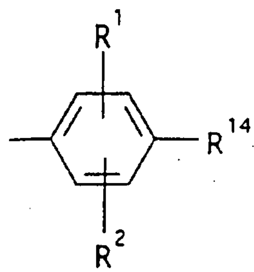
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

25. The compound according to Claim 24 wherein Ar is:



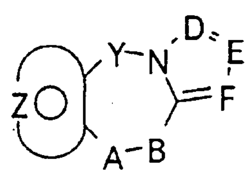
wherein R^1, R^2 and R^6 are defined in Claim 24.

26. The compound according to Claim 24 wherein Ar is:



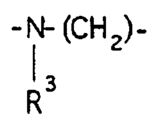
wherein R^1, R^2 and R^{14} are defined in Claim 24.

27. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

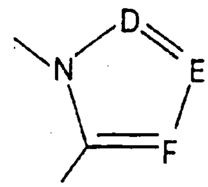
A-B is



and the moiety:

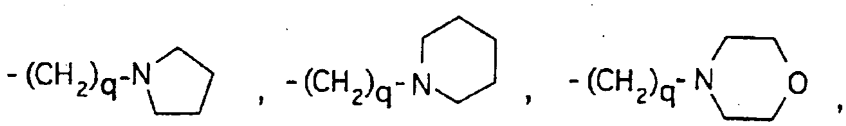
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from

(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;
the moiety:

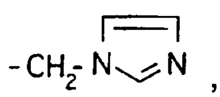


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from

$-CH{=}CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R_b)(R_b)$,



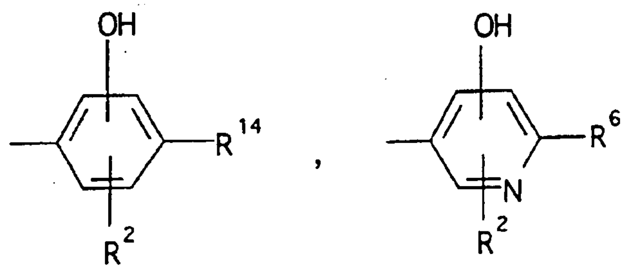
$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-(CH_2)_qOH$,



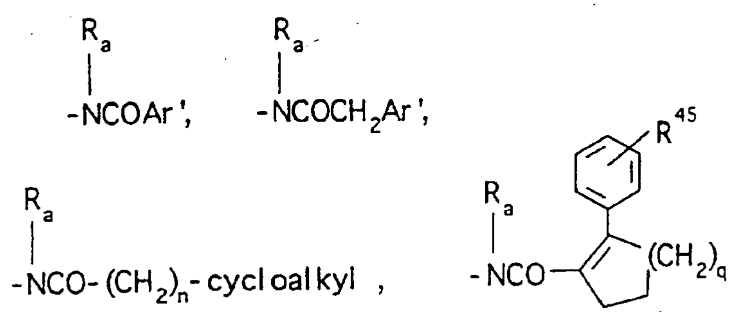
-CHO, and (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;
q is one or two;
R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:

$$-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-Ar$$

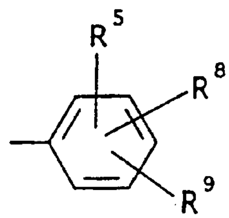
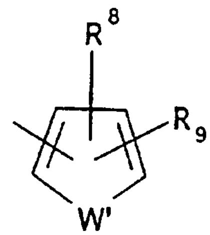
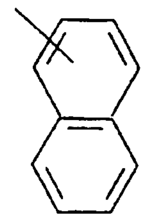
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

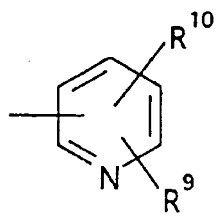
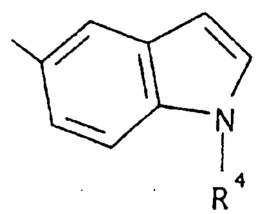


R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

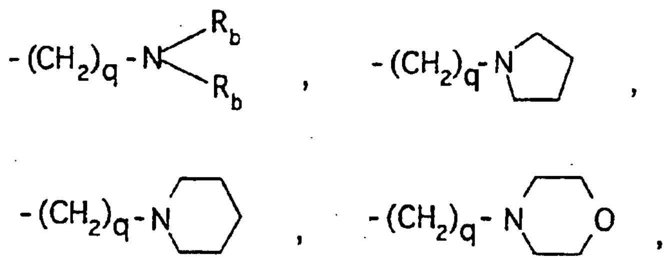
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-O-\overset{\overset{\large O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3) \quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

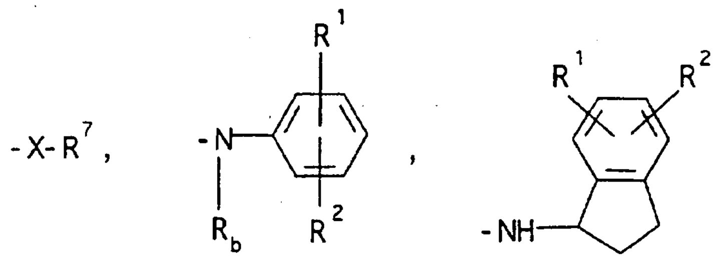
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

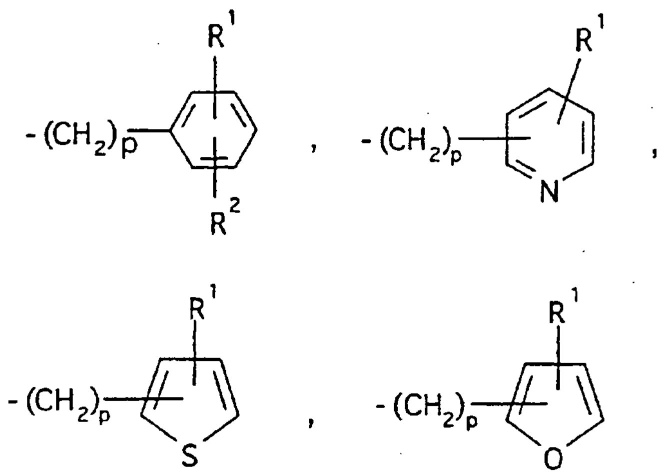


$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(b) moieties of the formula:

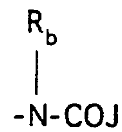


wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

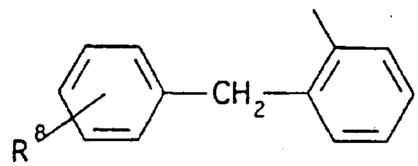


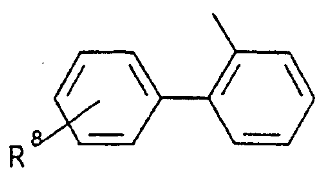
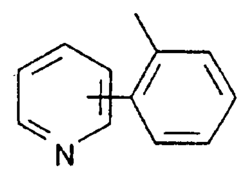
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined;

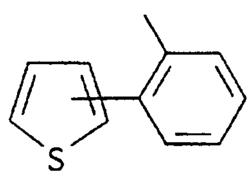
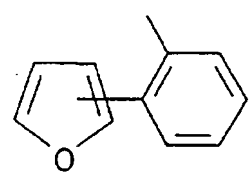
(c) a moiety of the formula:



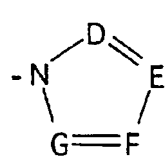
wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:

 ,

 ,  ,

 , 

or -CH_2-K' wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy,

-CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, -CO_2-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$-\overset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}-CO\underset{\displaystyle R_c}{\underset{|}{C}}HAr'$$

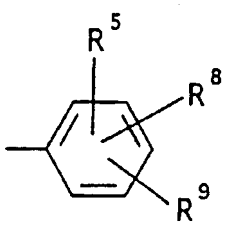
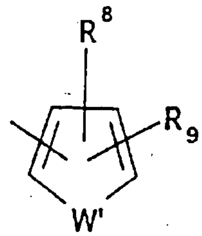
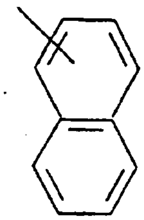
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

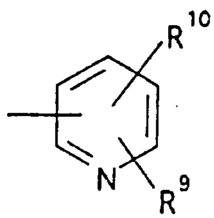
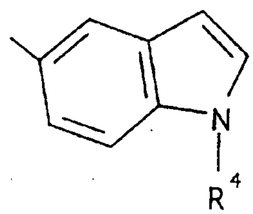
$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-$lower alkyl($C_1$-$C_3$), -S-lower alkyl($C_1$-$C_3$),

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N\genfrac{}{}{0pt}{}{R_b}{R_b}\ , \quad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON\genfrac{}{}{0pt}{}{R_b}{R_b}\ ,$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N\genfrac{}{}{0pt}{}{R_b}{R_b}\ , \quad -O-(CH_2)_2N\genfrac{}{}{0pt}{}{R_b}{R_b}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

 ,  ,  ,

 , and 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

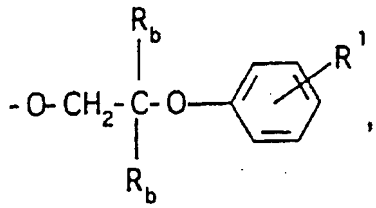
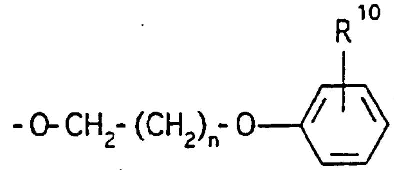
$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

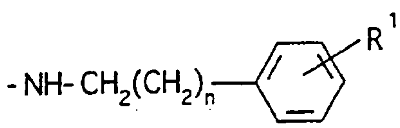
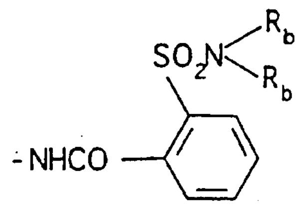
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

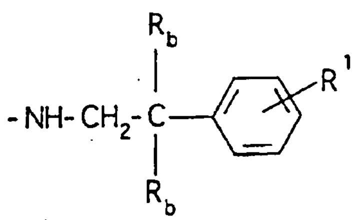
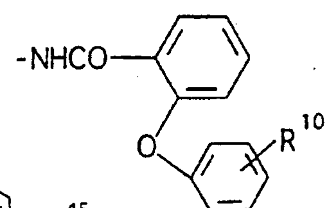
R^{14} is

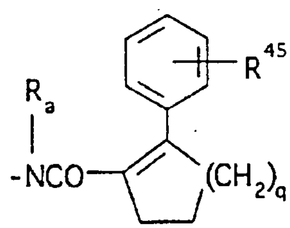
-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched ,

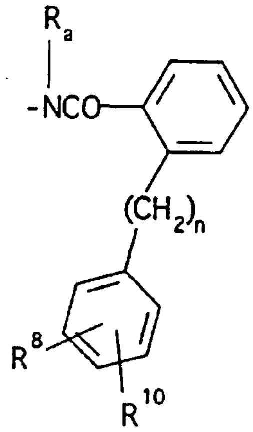
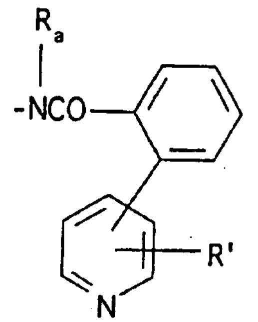

,

,

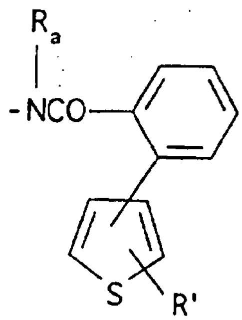
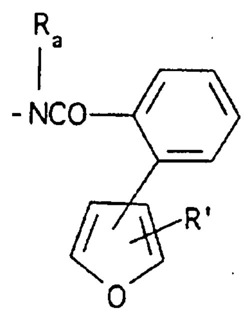
-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched ,

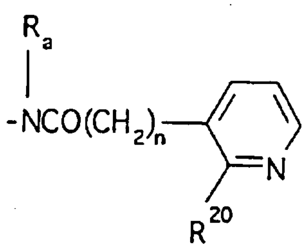
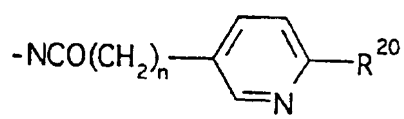

,


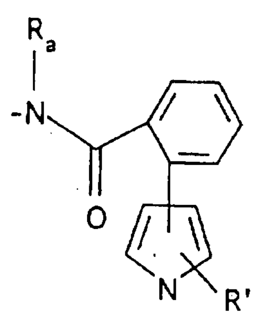
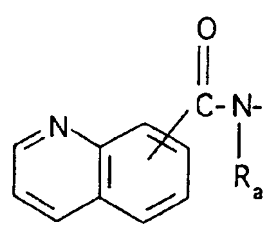

,



,

 ,  ,

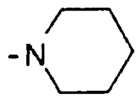
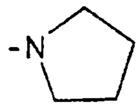
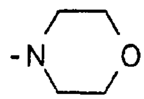
 ,  ,

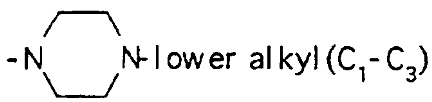
 , 

q is 1 or 2;

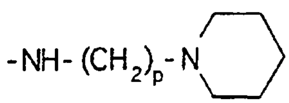
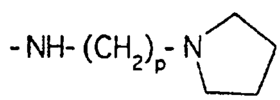
wherein n is 0 or 1;
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, -NH(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, -N-[(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl]$_2$,

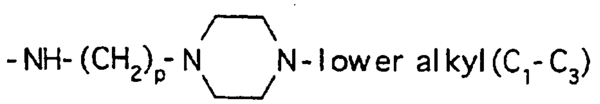
 ,  ,  ,

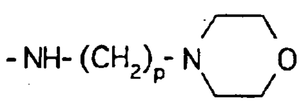
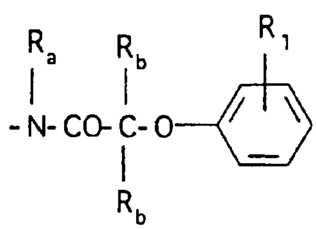
 ,

-NH-$(CH_2)_p$-NHlower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

-NH-$(CH_2)_p$-N[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$,

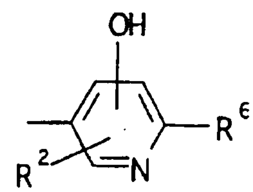
 ,  ,

 ,

 , 

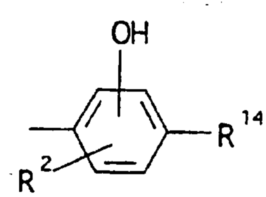
and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

28. The compound according to Claim 27 wherein Ar is:



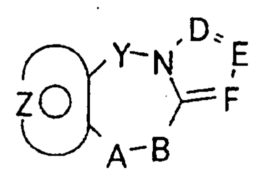
and R^2 and R^6 are defined in Claim 27.

29. The compound according to Claim 27 wherein Ar is:



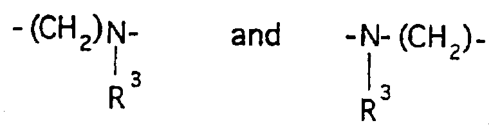
and R^2 and R^{14} are as defined in Claim 27.

30. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is CH_2;

A-B is a moiety selected from

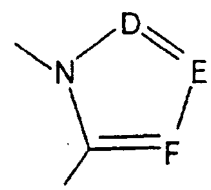


and the moiety:

represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from

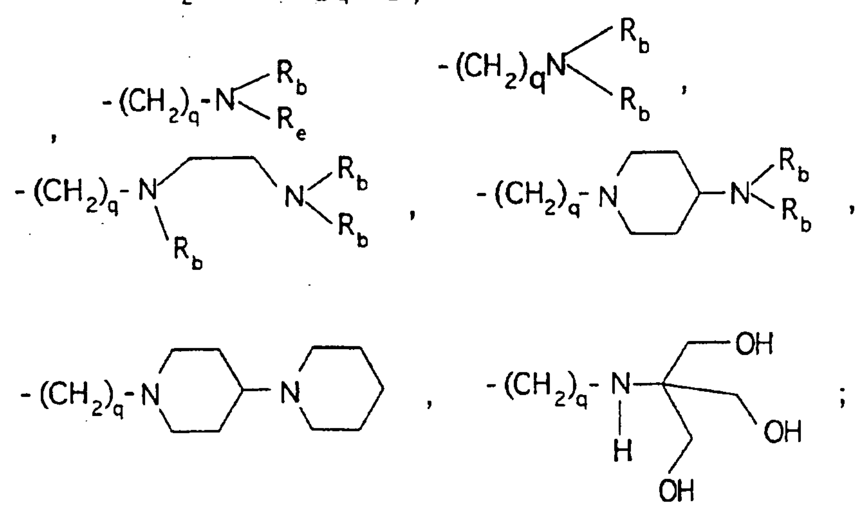
(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;

the moiety:



is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, E and F are carbon and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from ,

$-CH{=}CH-NO_2$, $-(CH_2)_qNO_2$,



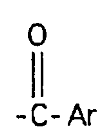
q is one or two;

R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

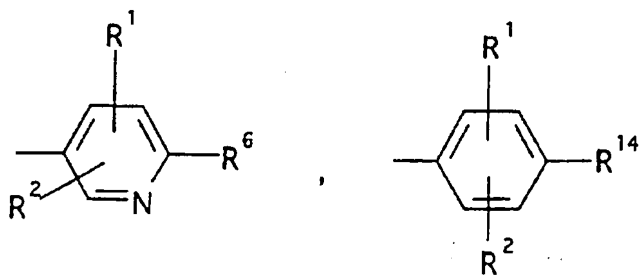
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;

R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);

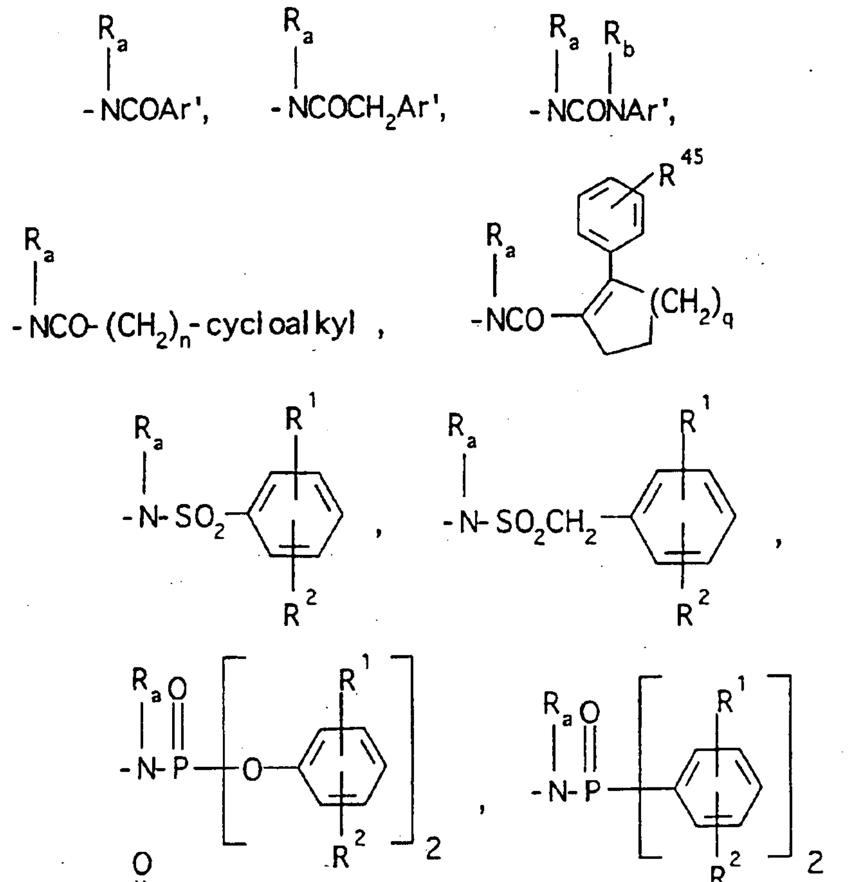
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of



R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

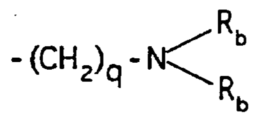
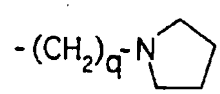
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

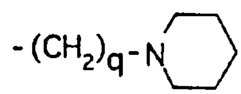
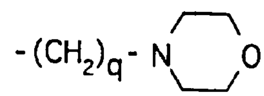
$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

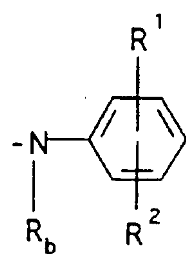
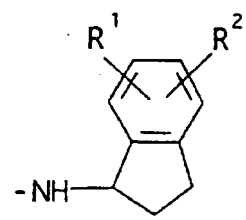
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

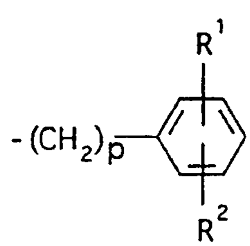
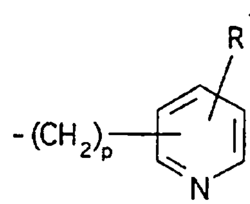

,

,

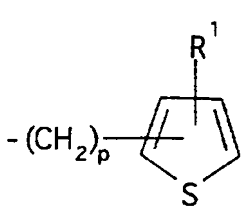
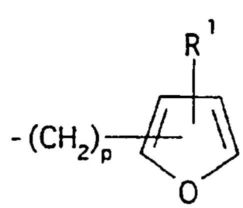

,

,

$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;
(b) moieties of the formula:

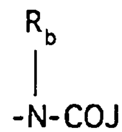
$-X-R^7$,

,


wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

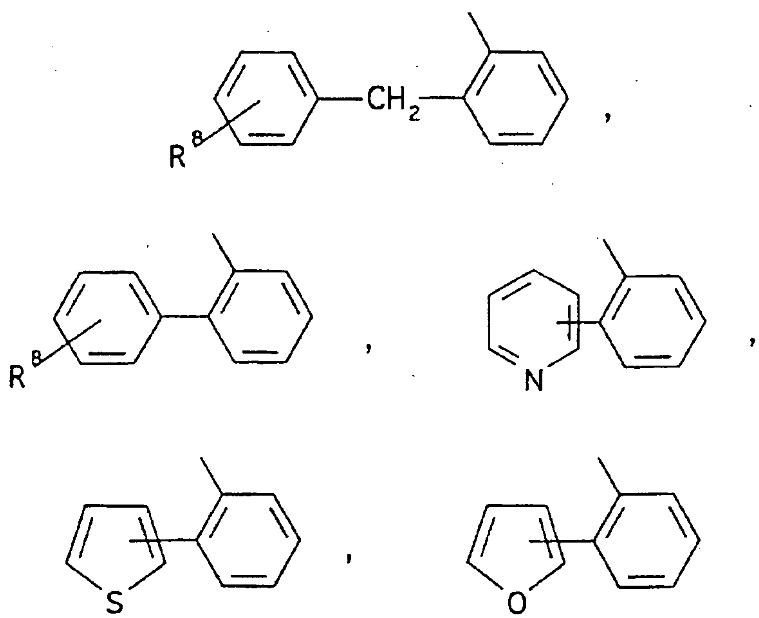

,

,


,


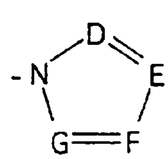
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:

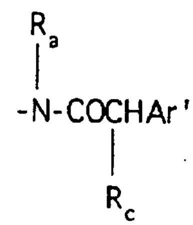


or $-CH_2$-K' wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



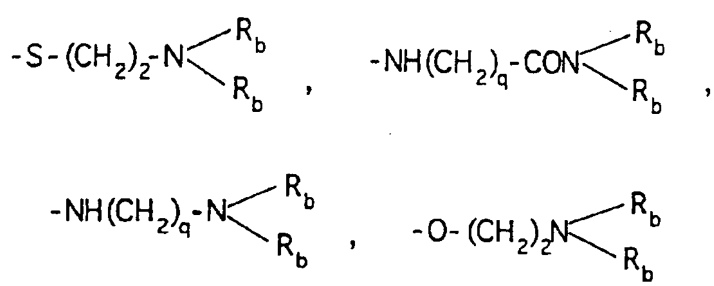
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2$-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

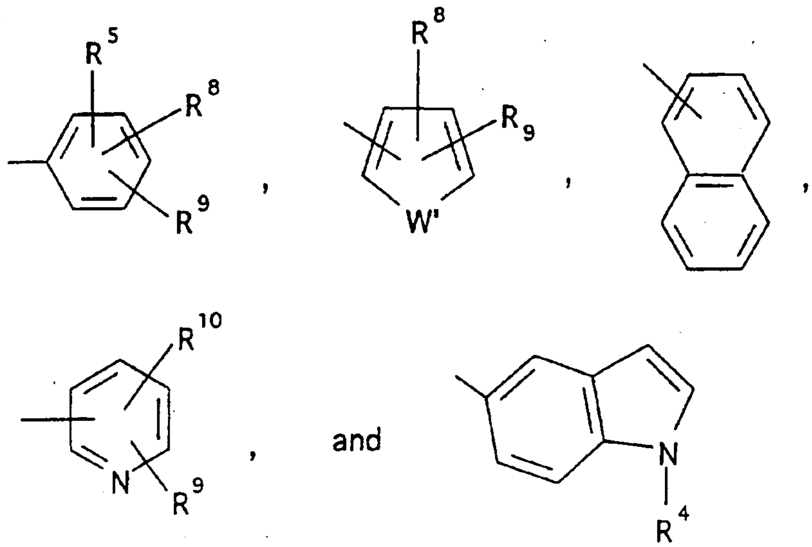


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

$-O-\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-$lower alkyl($C_1$-$C_3$), -S-lower alkyl($C_1$-$C_3$),



and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



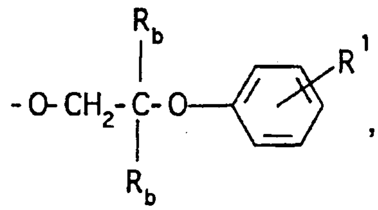
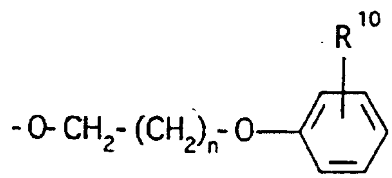
wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, -OCF_3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF_3, -NO_2, -NH_2, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

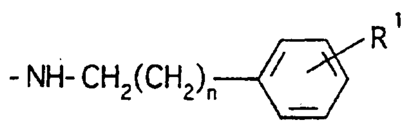
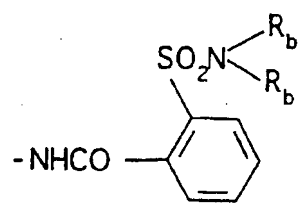
-N(R_b)(CH_2)$_v$N(R_b)$_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

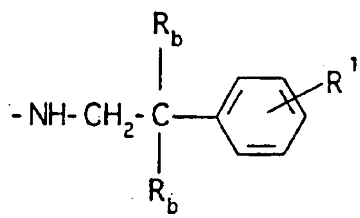
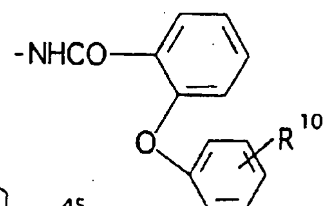
R^{14} is

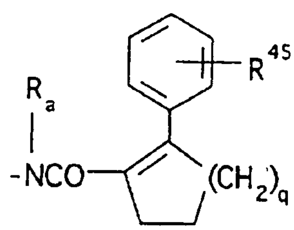
-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

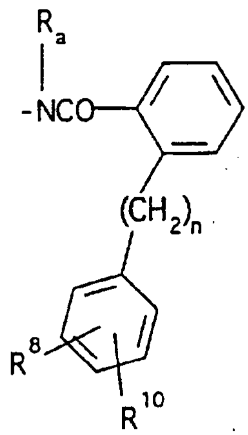
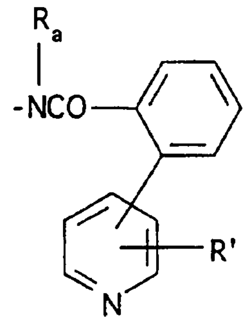
, ,

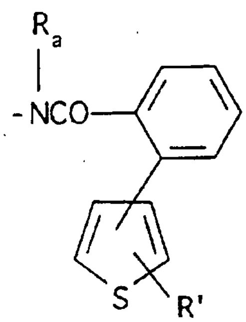
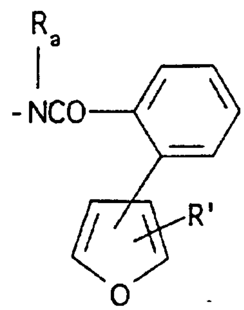
-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

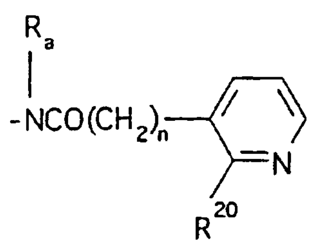
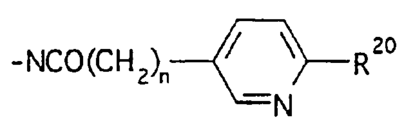
, 

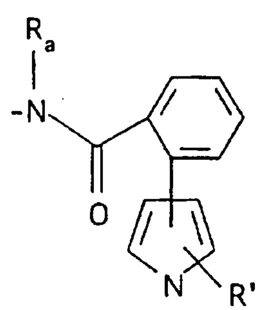
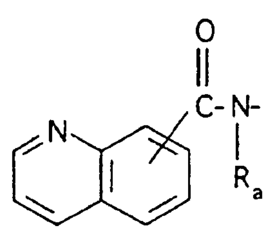
, 

,

 ,  ,

 ,  ,

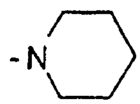
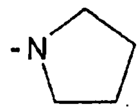
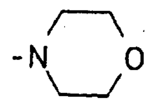
 , 

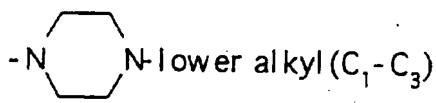
  ;

q is 1 or 2;

wherein n is 0 or 1;

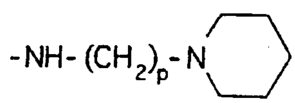
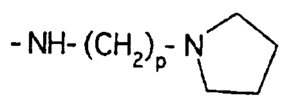
R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, -NH(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, -N-[(C_1-C_3)lower alkyl]$_2$,

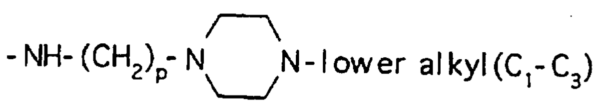
 ,  ,  ,

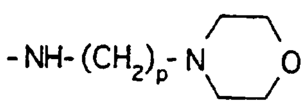
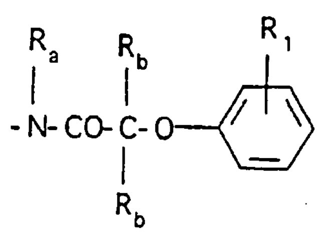
 ,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-NH$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) ,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1-C_3)]_2$,

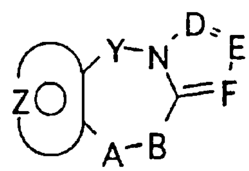
 ,  ,

 ,

 , 

and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

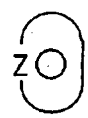
31. A compound selected from those of the formula:



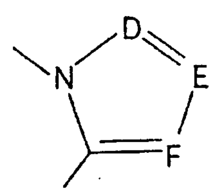
wherein Y is CH_2;
A-B is a moiety selected from

$$-(CH_2)N(R^3)- \quad \text{and} \quad -N(R^3)-(CH_2)-$$

and the moiety:



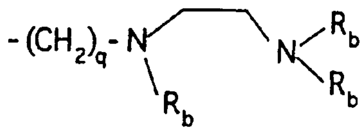
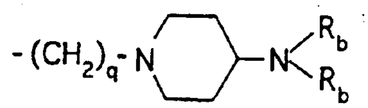
represents phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy or (C_1-C_3)lower alkylamino;
the moiety:

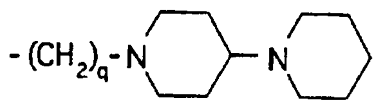
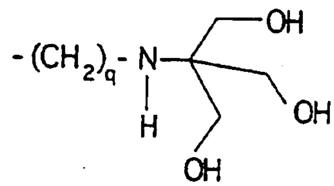


is a five membered aromatic (unsaturated) nitrogen containing heterocyclic ring wherein D, is carbon and E and F are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted by a substituent selected from

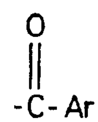
$$-CH{=}CH-NO_2,\ -(CH_2)_qNO_2\ ,$$

$$-(CH_2)_q-N\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_e\end{matrix}\ ,\quad -(CH_2)_qN\begin{matrix}R_b\\R_b\end{matrix}\ ,$$

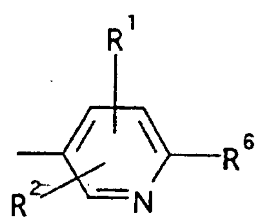
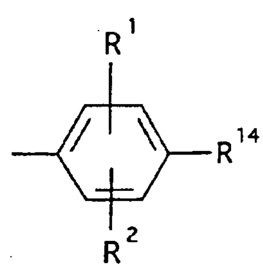
 ,  ,

 ,  ;

q is one or two;
R_b is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;
R_e is H, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), hydroxyethyl, $-CH_2CO_2R^{50}$, $-CH_2C(CH_2OH)_3$;
R^{50} is H or lower alkyl(C_1-C_4);
R^3 is a moiety of the formula:



wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of

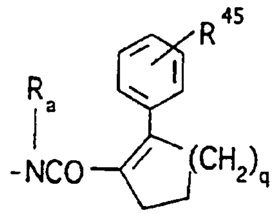
 , 

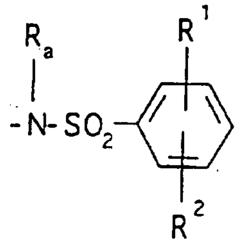
R^4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3); -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);
R^1 and R^2 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, hydroxy and

halogen; R^5 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;
R^6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

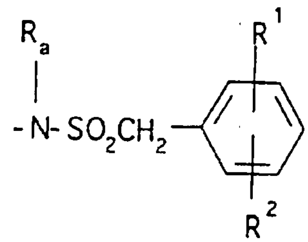
$-N(R_a)COAr'$, $-N(R_a)COCH_2Ar'$, $-N(R_a)CON(R_b)Ar'$,

$-N(R_a)CO-(CH_2)_n$-cycloalkyl ,

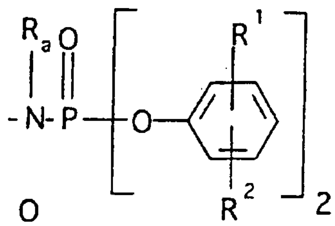




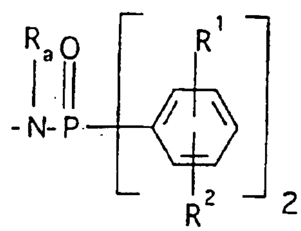
,



,



,



,

$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

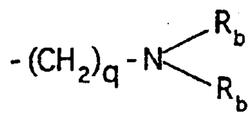
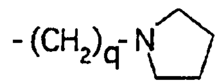
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

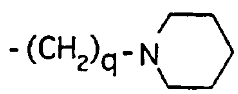
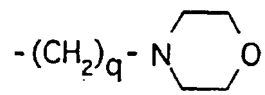
$-NH-C(=O)-O-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

$-NH-C(=O)-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

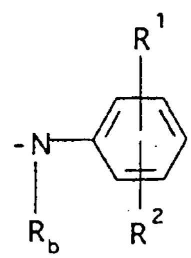
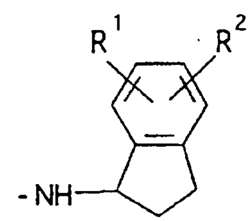
$-NHSO_2-$lower alkenyl (C_3-C_8) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C_3 to C_6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$,

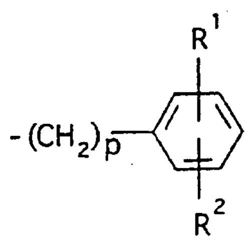
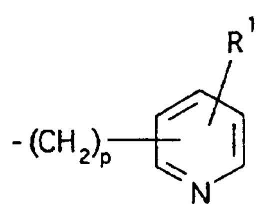
 ,  ,

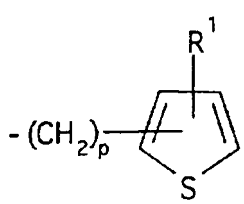
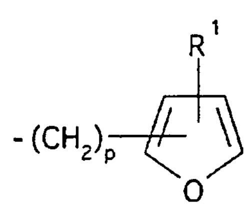
 ,  ,

$-(CH_2)_q$-O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) and $-CH_2CH_2OH$, q is one or two, and R_1, R_2 and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;
(b) moieties of the formula:

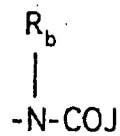
$-X-R^7$,  , 

wherein R^7 is lower alkyl(C_3-C_8), lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8), $-(CH_2)_p$-cycloalkyl(C_3-C_6),

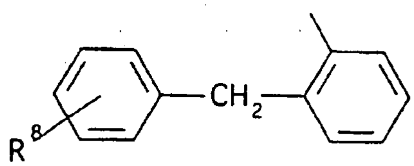
 ,  ,

 , 

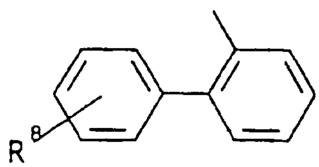
wherein p is one to five and X is selected from O, S, NH, NCH_3; wherein R^1 and R^2 are as hereinbefore defined; (c) a moiety of the formula:

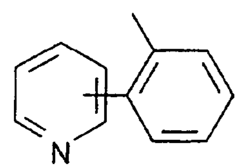


wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties:

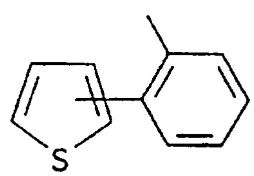


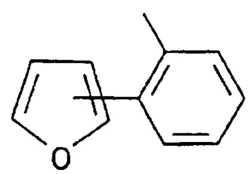
,



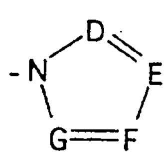
,


,



,


or $-CH_2$-K' wherein K' is (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), CHO, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, $-CO_2-$lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

$$-\underset{\displaystyle |}{\overset{\displaystyle R_a}{\overset{|}{N}}}-CO\underset{\underset{\displaystyle R_c}{|}}{C}HAr'$$

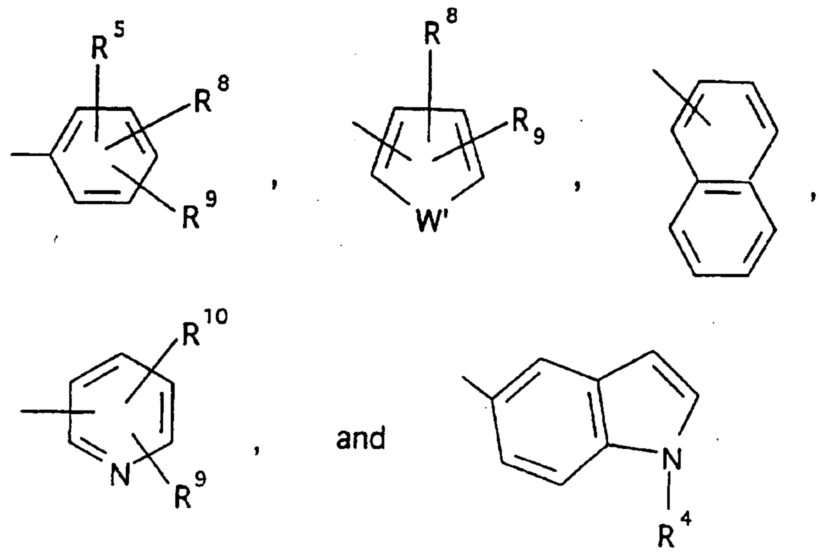
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), OH,

$$-O-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),\ -S-\text{lower alkyl}(C_1-C_3),$$

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix},\qquad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix},$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix},\qquad -O-(CH_2)_2N\begin{matrix} R_b \\ R_b \end{matrix}$$

and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), NHCO-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), and NSO_2lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R^8 and R^9 are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -S-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl(C_1-C_3)]$_2$, $-OCF_3$, -OH, -CN, $-S-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-NH_2$, O-lower alkyl(C_1-C_3),

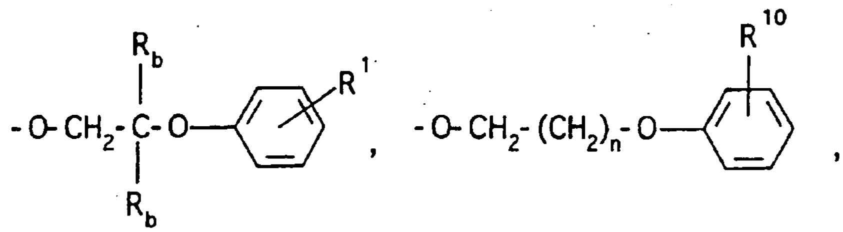
$$-O-\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}-(C_1-C_3)\quad ,$$

$-N(R_b)(CH_2)_vN(R_b)_2$, and CF_3 wherein v is one to three and;

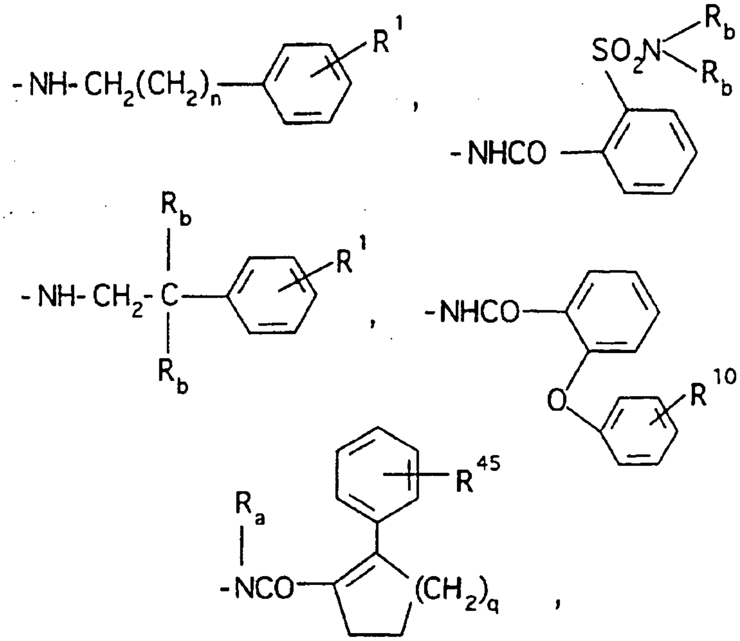
R^{10} is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

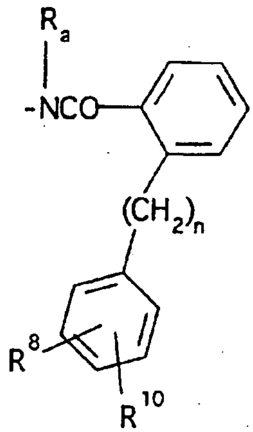
R^{14} is

-O-lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

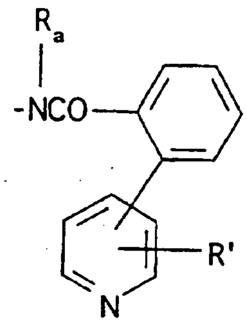


-NH lower alkyl (C_3-C_8) branched or unbranched,

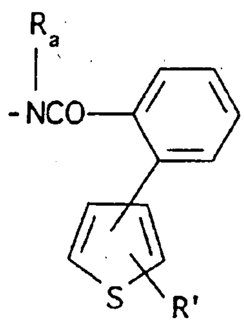




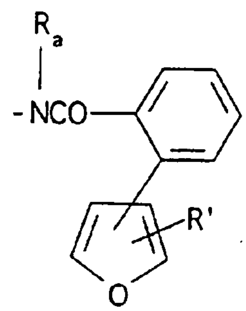
,



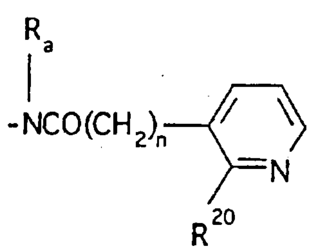
,



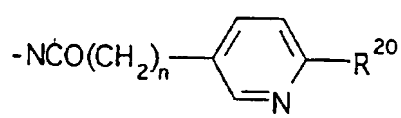
,

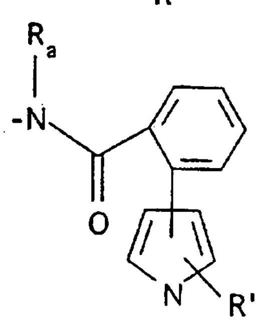


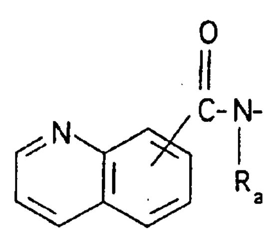
,



,







;

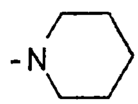
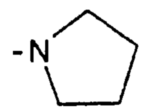
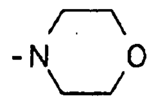
q is 1 or 2;

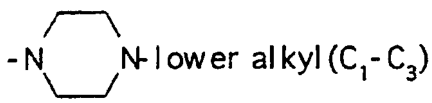
wherein n is 0 or 1;

R_a is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; R' is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R^{45} is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy and halogen;

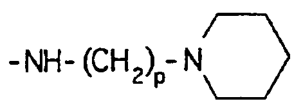
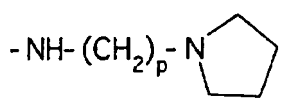
R^{20} is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3)lower alkoxy, NH_2, $-NH(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl, $-N-[(C_1$-$C_3)$lower alkyl$]_2$,

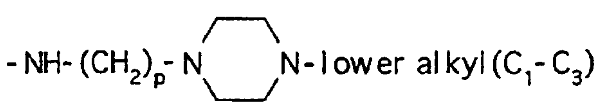
 ,  ,  ,

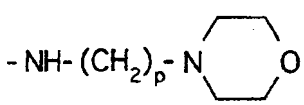
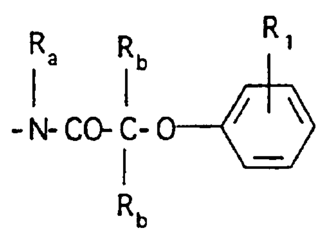
 ,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-NH$lower alkyl$(C_1$-$C_3)$,

$-NH-(CH_2)_p-N[$lower alkyl$(C_1$-$C_3)]_2$,

 ,  ,

 ,

 , 

and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

32. A pharmaceutical composition useful for treating disease in a mammal characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water, the pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, ester or prodrug form thereof, and a suitable pharmaceutical carrier.

33. The pharmaceutical composition of Claim 32 wherein the disease in a mammal characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water is congestive heart failure, nephrotic syndrome, hyponatremia, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, or cerebral hemorrhage-stroke.

34. A method for treating disease in a mammal characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, ester or prodrug form thereof, and a suitable pharmaceutical carrier.

35. The method of Claim 34 wherein the disease in a mammal characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water is congestive heart failure, nephrotic syndrome, hyponatremia, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, or cerebral hemorrhage-stroke.

36. A compound as claimed in any one of Claims 1 to 31 for use in the treatment of disease characterised by excess renal reabsorption of water.

37. The use of a compound as claimed in any one of Claims 1 to 31 in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of disease characterised by excess renal reabsorption of water.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 97/10736

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 6 C07D487/04 A61K31/55 //(C07D487/04,243:00,209:00),
(C07D487/04,243:00,231:00)

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 6 C07D A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	EP 0 636 625 A (AMERICAN CYANAMID) 1 February 1995 see claims 1,9 ---	1,32
A	US 5 521 173 A (VENKATESAN) 28 May 1996 see claims 1,26 ---	1,32
P,X	US 5 536 718 A (ALBRIGHT) 16 July 1996 see claims 1,34 -----	1,32

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
14 October 1997	24.10.97

Name and mailing address of the ISA	Authorized officer
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Alfaro Faus, I

1

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No
PCT/US 97/10736

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 636625 A	01-02-95	AU 6877794 A	09-02-95
		CA 2128956 A	30-01-95
		CN 1106812 A	16-08-95
		CZ 9401799 A	15-02-95
		FI 943543 A	30-01-95
		HU 71495 A	28-11-95
		JP 7157486 A	20-06-95
		NO 942816 A	30-01-95
		PL 304498 A	06-02-95
		SK 88194 A	12-04-95
		US 5516774 A	14-05-96
		US 5624923 A	29-04-97
		ZA 9405603 A	09-03-95
US 5521173 A	28-05-96	AU 4656696 A	07-08-96
		WO 9622292 A	25-07-96
US 5536718 A	16-07-96	AU 4769896 A	07-08-96
		WO 9622293 A	25-07-96
		US 5610156 A	11-03-97
		US 5612334 A	18-03-97